

# SHRI VISHNUDHARMOTTARA

(A TEXT ON ANCIENT INDIAN ARTS)

**Dr. P<sup>r</sup>iya<sup>b</sup>bala Shah**

M.A , Ph.D. (Bom ). D Litt (Paris)



**The New Order Book Co.**

Ahmedabad-380 006

**Viṣṇudharmottara Purāṇa**  
**(A Text on Ancient Indian Arts)**

**© Dr. PRIYABALA SHAH**

**Published by**  
**THE NEW ORDER BOOK CO.**  
**Ahmedabad-380 006**

**Printed by :**  
**KRISHNA PRINTERY**  
**Harjibhai N. Patel**  
**966, Narasapura Old Village, Ahmedabad-380 013**

*Gratefully Dedicated  
To  
The Sacred Memory  
of  
BA ( Smt. HIRALAXMI )  
and  
BAPAJI ( JAMNADAS KINARIWALA )  
Whose tender Care  
and  
Solicitude inspired me  
in  
my educational and cultural  
endeavours.*

पुष्पनैवेद्यदानेभ्यो नृत्तशानं विशिष्यते ॥ 25

[Ad. 34]



नृत्तं गीतं तथा वाद्यं दत्त्वा देवाय विष्णवे ।

सर्वकामसमृद्धस्य यज्ञस्य फलमभ्युते ॥ 27

[Ad. 34]



कलानां प्रवरं चित्रं घर्मे कामार्थमोक्षदम् ।

मङ्गल्यं परमं ह्येतद् गृहे यत्र प्रतिष्ठितम् ॥ 38

[Ad. 43]

यथा क्षुमेरुः प्रवरो नगानां यथाण्डजानां गरुडः प्रधानः ।

यथा जनानां प्रवरः क्षितीशस्तथा कलानामिहचित्रकल्पः ॥ 39

[Ad. 43]



प्रासादकरणं पुण्यं देवार्चाकरणं तथा ।

सुरार्चापूजनं पुण्यं तत्र पुण्या नमस्क्रिया ॥ 11

[Ad. 1]



॥ श्री विष्णुधर्मोत्तर ॥-खण्ड ३ ।

## FOREWORD

1

It gives me great pleasure in presenting this English translation of Visnudharmottara Purāna Khanda III before the scholars of fine arts painting, dancing sculpture, architecture, Indology and general culture and history of fine arts architecture, painting and sculpture in India. The Visnudharmottara Purāna Vol I Ad s 1 to 118 (Khanda III) critically edited by Dr Priyabala Shah with critical Notes Text etc (1958) and Vol II Summary translation in English introduction, Appendices etc (1961) were published as G O Series (no s 130 & 137) from the Oriental Institute, Baroda under the general editorship of the undersigned.

This translation of the critically edited text is a mile-stone in the studies of Ancient Indian practice of Fine Arts specially Music, Dancing Painting, Sculpture, Architecture etc and provides an edition on historical principles.

Dr Priyabala Shah an eminent scholar and presently working in this field deserves congratulations for her dedicated scholarship and devotion to knowledge which has brought out this monumental work.

Her scholarly publication of the Sanskrit text and notes (vol I & II) is out of print for the last many years and not available to the scholars or the readers. Its usefulness is well recognised. This valuable translation of original text an epoch-making section on Fine Arts, is a well known addition that would fill up this lacuna.

I trust that this new and important portion of a Puranic text of immense scholarly impression will be specially useful for the students of Indian fine arts and to the students and scholars of

Indian Culture I hope that it will be specially useful to the Indian scholars and also research workers working in the above-mentioned field

Baroda,  
25-12-90

Dr B J Sandesara  
Ex Director Oriental Institute  
and  
Professor and Head of the  
Department of Gujarati  
M S University of Baroda

## PREFACE

The importance of the third khanda of Visnudharmottara for the study of fine arts in India is well known. Its translation contains the topics of the arts including literature, drama, poetry, etc -Music, Dancing, Painting (chitra) Sculpture (Pratimā), Architecture (temple building) etc. I hope this text on Indian Arts will be useful to the students of Indian Arts and Culture.

I am regretfully aware of the fact that inspite of best care a few mistakes of proof-reading, particularly of diacritical marks have crept into the work. I crave the indulgence of the scholars for these lapses.

### Acknowledgements-

My heart-felt thanks to

Dr. I. J. Bhatt, Dr. R. N. Mehta, Dr. R. C. Jamindar, Dr. P. C. Parikh, Dr. B. J. Sandesara, Shri Dinkarbhai Trivedi, Shri Vijay Solanki and Shri Harjibhai N. Patel

For their continued interest and help

Ahmedabad-9

Priyabala Shah

Date 20-12-90

## CONTENTS

	Pages
Introduction	
(a) Importance of Visnudharmottara	xi
(b) Origin of Image-making, temple-building and the Interdependence of Arts	xiii
(c) The work, its age and authorship	xvii
(d) Visnudharmottara and some of the remains of Ancient Indian Painting and Sculpture	xxvii
(e) Interpretations of signs and Symbols of the deities	xxxviii
I Ad 1 (1) Origin of Image making	3-4
(2) Interdependence of Arts	
II Ad 2-17 Varieties of Literature	5-49
Tantragunadośa, Tantrasūddhi	
Literary Arts • Chandas, Alamkāras,	
Prahalikā, Mahākāvyalakṣana,	
Dvādasarupa, Sandhis Nāyikās,	
Rasa, The endings of the Proper	
Names, Forms of address	
III Ad 18-19 Music	50-53
Vocal Music, Instrumental Music	
IV Ad 20-34 Nr̥ttasūtra	53-134
Lying-down postures, sitting	
postures and seats for different	
characters, seats (Āsanas),	
standing postures Gaits, Gaits	
expressing sentiments (Rasagatis),	
Movements of Limbs-Head,	
Neck, Mouth, Chest, Sides,	
stomach, waist, Thigh, Shank, Foot	



Glances (Dr̥ṣṭis)-Rasadr̥ṣṭis  
 (Glances to express sentiments-  
 Movements of Eyelids, Eyaballs,  
 Sight, Eye-brows Cheeks, Nose,  
 Teeth, Lower lip-Hastābhinaya-  
 Asamyuta Hastas, Samyuta  
 Hastas, Nṛttahastas Mudrās-  
 Rahasya Mudrā, Significance,  
 Sāmānya Mudrā Sāmānyābhinayas  
 Rasas and Sthāyī bhāvās,  
 sañcāribhāvās, Sāttvika bhāvās  
 Āhāryābhinaya  
 Rasas-Number of Rasas The  
 colours of Rasas, Deities of Rasas,  
 Rasas with their Sthāyins, Sañcārī,  
 Sāttvika Rasas and their Bhāvās  
 Classification of Rasas

V	Ad 35-43	Citrasūtra	135-166
		Origin of Painting, Nṛtta and Citra, Measurements, characteristics of Great men, Postures The technique of Painting, Plaster, Manibhūmis Instructions-regarding time and ritual of Painting Chavis or colours of skin based upon Primary colours-Primary colours, mixing of colours, making of pigments The classification of Painting Modes of applying Paint (Vartanā), Critical analysis of Citra, Objects usually depicted in Painting, Citra-Rasas The place of Painting in Arts, Marks of Good and bad Painting	

VI Ad.	44-85	Pratimā laksana Images and their worship, Trimūrti, Brahman, Viṣṇu, Mahādeva, Agni, Varuna, Kubera, Yama, Grahās, Āditya, Soma, Kumāra, Bhadrakālī, Ananta, Tumburu, Maṇi (The Earth-goddess), Ākāśa (Gagana), Vyoman, Sarasvatī, Lakṣmī, Manu, Vīrūpākṣa, Vāyu, Dharma, Vairāgya, Narasimha, Varāha, Hayagrīva, Sakra, Padmanābha, The two Nāsatyas, Viṣṇu- dhvaja, Vasu, Naranārāyana, Linga, Padma, Viśvarūpa, Saṃkarsana, Pra- dyumna, Aniruddha, Tārksya, Miscella- neous gods and goddesses, Aṇḍika	167-242
VII Ad	86-93	Temple-building Material and Sites Wood, stone, Brick, Vajralepa, Sites Varieties of Temples-General characteristics of a temple, Sāmānya- prāśāda-lakṣanam, The hundred temples, Sarvatobhadra, classification, Temples and Gods, Sarvatobhadra and Gods, Benefits of building a Sarvatobhadra	243-279
VIII Ad.	94-108	Spiritual Significance of Āvāhana- vibodhana, Induction of Deities into images.	280-361
IX Ad.	109-118	Rites and rituals various forms of worship, sacrifice and ceremonies connected with the building of temples and installation of images. (1) Devayātrā Vidhi (2) Desire and Deity.	362-380

## IMPORTANCE OF THE THIRD KHAṆḌA OF THE VIṢṆUDHARMOTTARA

Most of the Purāṇas<sup>1</sup> and Upapurāṇas narrate the subject-matter of various arts such as Town-planning, Architecture<sup>2</sup>, Sculpture, Painting, Music, Dance and Similar other topics. But only eight<sup>3</sup> of them have treated the subject more systematically and in greater detail.

None of these, however, have treated the topics of fine arts in the way in which the third khaṇḍa of Viṣṇudharmottara has done. The treatment is comprehensive and systematic, so that one can call it a treatise of the Fine arts of Ancient India. Moreover, it throws a flood of light on various symbols used in the ancient arts. These important descriptions serve as a reliable guide to the study parts of the tradition of fine arts in Ancient India.

In spite of this importance, the Viṣṇudharmottara has not attracted the attention it deserves. The text of Viṣṇudharmottara was first published by Venkateśvara Press, Bombay, in Samvat 1969 (i.e. A.D. 1913). Dr. Stella Kramrisch, Professor of Fine

1. The Brahmavaivarta, the Liṅga, the Vāmana, the Varāha, the Brahma, the Harivaṁśa, the Kālikā, the Devī Bhāgavata, the Kalki, the Śiva, the Nīlamata and the Sāmba Purāṇas only briefly touch the arts of Architecture and sculpture.
2. For example, the Agni and the Garuda Purāṇas describe 45 varieties of temples under five heads. The Matsya and the Bhaviṣya Purāṇas describe 20 varieties under three heads. It is only Viṣṇudharmottara which describes 101 types of temples.
3. The Matsya Purāṇa, the Agni Purāṇa, the Brahmāṇḍa Purāṇa, the Nāradiya Purāṇa, the Garuda Purāṇa, the Skanda Purāṇa, the Bhaviṣya Purāṇa and the Vāyu Purāṇa.

Arts at Calcutta University was probably the first one to draw attention to the importance of this work. She published an English translation of the portion pertaining to Painting in 1924

A study of the printed text of the *Viṣṇudharmottara* published by the Venkateśvara Press shows that many of its readings are corrupt and unintelligible and therefore the necessity of an attempt to prepare, as far as possible, a critical and reliable edition of this portion with the help of available manuscripts,\* so as to serve as a reliable source for understanding arts in Ancient India

---

\* *Viṣṇudharmottara Purāṇa* (khanda III) critically edited by Dr Priyabala Shah is published in Gaekward's Oriental Series (no 130), Baroda

## ORIGIN OF IMAGE-MAKING AND TEMPLE-BUILDING AND INTERDEPENDENCE OF ARTS

### (i) Origin of image-making

As noted in the introduction (p xi) the importance of Khanda III of Visnudharmottara lies in the incorporation of traditions regarding arts as they were practised in Ancient India. This information makes it a good work on Arts in interesting way. The subject of fine arts is introduced as an important subject of study. It is related to the primary urge of man seeking happiness here and hereafter and avoid pain. The whole work is a dialogue of the ruler Vajra and the Sage Mārkaṇḍeya. The questions are raised by the ruler and answers are provided by the sage. They constitute the text in the tradition of Mahābhārata, Purāṇas, Kathāsaritsāgara, Pañcātānta and such type of literature.

King Vajra puts the question 'What would obtain for him, great happiness in this and the other world (Ad 1, Slo 1)? Without hesitation Mārkaṇḍeya answers the question 'Any one desiring the best of the two worlds must worship gods (Devatā pujaṇam). Then he dilates upon it. There are two ways of worship, one 'Antarvedī', the other 'Baharvedī'. The first is concerned with the sacrificial cult, the other with vows of abstinence, fasting etc. 'All those heavens which are attained by sacrificial acts (iṣṭa) and charitable deeds (āpūrta), if desired can be obtained by building a temple for gods'. The merit of Iṣṭa and āpūrta is to be found in the single act.

Mārkaṇḍeya then emphasizes the importance of building temples, particularly in the Kali age. "In the former three ages Kṛta, Tretā and Dvāpara men were able to see a god directly but in the Kali age men have lost that faculty, therefore they have to worship them (gods) in an image (V D III Ad 93 ślo 1 to 6). Even in former ages when a god was visible, men used to wor-

ship him in a particular image. So a man of learning should worship a well-formed (*surūpā*) image because it is to such an image that a deity becomes proximate. Anyway he must avoid an image uncanonically made.

An image of divinity has to be installed in a temple and so temple-building itself becomes a meritorious act. So Mārkaṇḍeya declares

“To build a temple is meritorious, so is the making of an image of a deity. Meritorious is the worship of a divine image and so is its adoration” (V D Ad 1 Slo 11)

Thus the social motive of seeking happiness here and the religious motive of hereafter or rather the religious motive of seeking happiness here and hereafter becomes a motive force in the development of the arts of image-making and temple-building in other words of Sculpture and Architecture. This tradition is amply corroborated by the monumental remains and history of architecture and sculpture in India.

Another part of this tradition leads to some historical speculation. The statement that there was not much of image making and temple-building in *Kṛta*, *Dvāpara* and *Tretā* ages, might suggest a belief of the Rsis like Mārkaṇḍeya that image-worship did not prevail in earlier times. This would accord well as far as the earlier Vedic cult of sacrifice is concerned. In fact this is the *Antarvedī* worship. The image worship, temple building etc are the method of *Bahirvedī* worship, which is comparatively easy to practice with its festivals and other aspects, it is a socio religious activity with great attraction. This activity deals to an interdependence of various arts of literature, music, painting, sculpture, architecture, etc.

#### (ii) Interdependence of Arts

In *Adhyāya* 2, *Vajra* in due course requests Mārkaṇḍeya to teach him such an important art which brings happiness in this

as well as the other world. But Mārkaṇḍeya would not let him have the knowledge of sculpture so easily. As it turns out, the knowledge of this art makes it necessary to have the knowledge of other arts upon which it is dependent. In this way, we are introduced to a belief of the interdependence of arts.

The importance of this Adhyāya 2 cannot be over emphasized. It gives a tradition conscious of the relation and interdependence of various arts. From sculpture we are led step by step to painting, dancing and vocal as well as instrumental music. Singing involves literary compositions. This leads us to literary arts and the knowledge of languages current in India at that time, i.e. Sanskrit, Prakṛit and the unending variety of the Apabhraṃśa.

This interrelation of arts is corroborated by two historical facts. A comparative study of the monumental remains of sculpture and painting on one hand and Sanskrit texts on dancing on the other would show that they are closely interrelated in their subject-matter, so much so that these monuments serve as visual illustrations of the verbal explanations of the text. In fact, it is very difficult to understand one without the aid of the other.

The other corroboration comes from the fact that in Ancient India a temple was the centre of all arts.<sup>1</sup> The temple itself was an embodiment of architecture. It was decorated with sculptures and paintings. It had halls for music and dancing as well as for the recitation of the Kathā Kāvya and the acting of dramas. In fact, all arts came there and fulfilled the needs of devotional worship that required aesthetic tastes of high order. The temples were open to all their followers and consequently served as institutions of popular artistic culture. In addition to the palaces of Kings, mansions of merchant-princes, Sarasvatī Bhavanas of cities were alike places where all these arts were to be found in company. They were presented for entertainment and examination which made their comprehensive knowledge, a necessary item of the edu-

---

1. Kumāravihāraśataka by Ramchandra

cation of a Nāgaraka \* The famous verse attributed to Bhartrhari  
 Sāhityasangīta Kalāvihīnah Sāksātpaśuh Pucchaviśānahīnah//12  
 (Nītiśataka) is thus not an empty euphemism, but reflects the opinion  
 of the cultured society of Ancient India

Thus this tradition of Mārkaṇḍeya of the interdependence of  
 arts and the consequent educational necessity of learning them  
 preserves what was a living trait of the ancient civilization of  
 India

---

\* कामसूत्रम् (आधि १, अ ४ पृ ४९) (C S S) 1912.



## THE WORK, ITS AGE AND AUTHORSHIP

### (1) Viṣṇudharmottara

Viṣṇudharmottara is divided into three khandas. The first khanda contains 269 adhyāyas and begins with the well-known verse of Mahābhārata ॥

नारायणं नमस्कृत्य नरं चैव नरोत्तमम् ।  
देवी सरस्वती व्यास ततो जयमुदीरयेत् ॥

This Khanda very much resembles the first khanda of other purāṇas. It describes creation of the world, gives the usual puranic accounts of geography, astronomy, chronography as well as genealogies of kings and sages and legends about them. It also contains 'what is known as Sankaragītā. Among the legends, a long account of love of Pururavas and Urvastī is to be specially noted (adhyāyas 130-137), as it comes a little closer to Kalidāsa's story than the other known versions. It contains rules about Śrāddha and Vratas, and stotras to various deities are collected. This is followed by the descriptions of Ayodhyā and the story of Rāma.

The second Khanda is composed of 183 adhyāyas. It is said to have been originally revealed by Vāruṇ Puskara to Paraśurāma. It mainly contains short treatises on Dharma and Rājani. The rules and regulations regarding four Āśramas are given in full details. The section on astronomy, which is mainly in Prose, bears the separate title Paitāmaha-Siddhānta. The preamble states that it was originally communicated by Brahman to Bhṛgu. Next Vāruṇ Puskara revealed it to Paraśurāma and finally Mārkaṇḍeya to Vajra. It consists of nine adhyāyas. It further shows a close connection with the section on Time in the first Khanda. There are a few Adhyāyas on medicine.

The third Khanda contains short treatises on Sanskrit and Prakrit grammar, on lexicology, metrics, poetics, dancing, singing

and instrumental music as well as detailed instructions for sculptors and painters and architects. These instructions cover the fields of Iconography and temple-architecture. It also discusses materials for building temples preparing ground for painting etc. It also describes invocation ceremonies for the installation of images and gives instructions for priests consecrating images or sacred buildings.

(ii) *Viṣṇudharma*, *Viṣṇudharmottara* and *Viṣṇupurāṇa*—

*Viṣṇudharmottara* belongs to the *Purāṇa*\* type of literature. It is, however, not found mentioned in the usual lists of *Mahāpurāṇas* and *Upapurāṇas*. The question, therefore, arises to what is its place in Sanskrit literature?

Before editing the text published in G O Series, Baroda, I had to collect and study different manuscripts of the *Viṣṇudharmottara*. It was found the manuscripts from Adyar and Jammu library are different works from the one which I was editing. This goes to show that two different works bear the titles beginning with *Viṣṇudharma*. Dr Buhler<sup>1</sup> in his learned review of Alberuni's *India* states that Alberuni also quotes from two different works<sup>2</sup> bearing the title *Viṣṇudharma*.

---

\* 'The language shows the slipshod sanskrit, common to all *Purāṇas* and the author does not shrink from coining the most absurd forms, when they suit his convenience'

—*Indian Antiquary* Vol XIX (P 383)

1 "It is evident that in the beginning of the eleventh century two works with the title *Viṣṇudharmottara* or *Viṣṇu-Dharma* existed and that both were considered to be canonical by Beruni's Pandits who one and all, were Vaisnavas' —*Indian Antiquary* (P 407) Vol XIX

2 "The remaining three passages in which Beruni quotes the *Viṣṇudharma*, have been taken from a work, which, though likewise a production of the *Bhāgavata* sect and though likewise called both *Viṣṇu-Dharma* and *Viṣṇudharmottara*, has nothing to do with the tripartite *Viṣṇudharmottara*"

—*Ibid* (P 402)

Thus in Alberuni's time there were also two different Viṣṇudharmas. What is, however important for our purpose is that Alberuni quotes passages which Dr. Bühler has identified with the passages of our Viṣṇudharmottara. It appears that Alberuni either to be brief or being confused has referred to two different works by the same name, Viṣṇudharma<sup>1</sup>

But it is quite clear that the name of our work is not Viṣṇudharma but Viṣṇudharmottara<sup>2</sup>

We find a reference to Viṣṇudharmottara in the Nāradya Purāṇa<sup>3</sup> where various religious stories, vows, rules of conduct etc are called Viṣṇudharmottarābhayaḥ i.e. having the name Viṣṇudharmottara. This Viṣṇudharmottara material along with Dharmaśāstra, Arthaśāstra, Vedānta, Jyotiṣa, Vamśākhyaṇa etc are taken by Nāradya as constituting Viṣṇupurāṇa. Thus according to this tradition Viṣṇudharmottara becomes a section of Viṣṇupurāṇa.

- 1 For further discussion of this interesting topic, the reader is referred to the learned article of Dr. Bühler in Indian Antiquary (PP. 381-410) Vol. XIX

- 2 इति धर्मिष्णुपमे तेषु मार्गदेवप्रसवाद् (४ २, ५)

G O Series Baroda, Vol I

- 3 केशिध्वजेन चैव्येय पटोऽद्याः परिकीर्तितः ।

अतः ११' सुतेन दौनकादिभिरादरात् ॥ १७

दृष्टेन बोदिताः शशद्विष्णुपमेतादयाः ।

नानाधर्मव्याः पुण्या मृतानि नियमा यमाः ॥ १८

धर्मशास्त्रं धर्मशास्त्र वेदान्तं उद्योतिषं तथा ।

वैशामन्येन प्रकरणात् स्तोत्राणि मन्त्रस्तथा ॥ १९

नानाविधान्तया प्रोक्ताः सर्वलोकेऽकारिकाः ।

पठद्विष्णुराजं वै सर्वमान्यार्थं समग्रम् ॥ २०

(द्वैपायन भ. १४)

Mr Kale T G in his Marathi work Purānanirīksana supports the view of Nāradiya purāna by saying that Visnupurāna,<sup>1</sup> which consists of 7000 verses should according to the Matsya, the Bhāgavata and the Nāradiya consist of 23,000 verses According to Mr Kale the remaining 16000 verses are those of Visnudharmottara The Venkateswara<sup>2</sup> Press edition also seems to regard Visnudharmottara as a part of Visnumahāpurāna

We have, however, seen that Alberuni quotes passages from our Visnudharmottara under the name of Visnudharma as if it were an independent work, similarly, we also, find that not only Hemādri, Aparārka and Samkara's commentaries on Visnusahasranāma and Sanatsujātiya refer to this work as if it were independent but also do it under the title of Visnudharmottara This would go to show the independent character of Visnudharmottara But on account of its glorification of Visnu and subject matter, Visnudharmottara might have been regarded as forming a part of Visnupurāna It might have been probably for this reason that it was not mentioned in the usual lists of the Purānas and Upapurānas

- 1 Wilson and Aufrecht are of the opinion that Visnupurāna in its present form consists of 7000 verses

धृणु वत्स प्रवक्ष्यामि पुराण वैष्णव महत् ।  
 त्रयोविंशतिसाहस्र सर्वपातकनाशनम् ॥ १  
 नारदीयपुराण (पू खण्ड) अ-१४  
 त्रयोविंशतिसाहस्र तत्प्रमाण विदुर्बुधा ॥ १७  
 मत्स्यपुराण (अ ५६)  
 श्रीवैष्णव त्रयोविंशच्चतुर्विंशति शैवकम् ॥ ४  
 भागवतपुराण (स्क १२) अ १३

- 2 In the beginning of printed text of the Venkateswara Press the following lines occur—

अथ श्रीविष्णुमहापुराणे २ भागे विष्णुधर्मोत्तरे तृतीयखण्डप्रारम्भः । and also at the end it is stated "इति श्री विष्णुधर्मोत्तर समाप्तम् । समाप्तं चेद विष्णुमहापुराणम् ॥

## (iii) Age of Viṣṇudharmottara

Now we come to the problem of the age of Viṣṇudharmottara. Evidently it is earlier than Alberuni as well as Nāradyapurāṇa Hemādri and Aparārka, as they refer to it by name. There is another work called Adbhutasāgara which also similarly refers to it. Dr P V Kane<sup>1</sup> places Adbhutasāgara and Hemādri's Catuṣvarga cintāmaṇi<sup>2</sup> in 1168 A D (śaka 1090) and 1260 A D respectively.

The date of Alberuni is 973-1048 A D.<sup>3</sup> This takes the age of Viṣṇudharmottara before eleventh century A D.

As to the date of Nāradya there is a difference of opinion. Mr T G Kale assigns it to the period from 500 to 600 A D. But this view is controverted by Shri Durgashankar Shastri in his Gujarati work Purāṇa Vivecana.<sup>3</sup> After giving cogent reasons Shri Shastri comes to the conclusion that Nāradya Purāṇa cannot be placed earlier than the 12th cent. A D so the reference to Viṣṇudharmottara in Nāradyapurāṇa cannot help us in carrying its date earlier than eleventh cent. A D.

An attempt is sometimes made to push back the date Viṣṇudharmottara on the strength of identity of or similarity between certain passages and the subject matter of Viṣṇudharmottara and other Sanskrit works.

Mr Sudhakar Dvivedi in his commentary on Brahmasphuṭasiddhānta states—

भगणादीनां मानिक्यादयमगुप्तेन विष्णुधर्मोत्तरपुराणान्तर्गतवद्वसिद्धान्त आगम  
त्वेनास्तीकृतः ।

---

1 History of Dharmasāstra Vol. 1 (pp. 299, 357) by P V Kane

2 See also Purāṇic Records on Hindu Rites and Customs (pp. 20, 21 and 90 (footnote 31)) by R C Hazra

3 Purāṇa Vivecana (p. 233)

Dr. Bühler is of the opinion that the *Pañāmaha Siddhānta* given in the *Viṣṇudharmottara* is certainly that on which Brahmagupta in 628-29 A.D. founded the passages, quoted by the commentators of the *Sūryasiddhānta* and published by Mr. Colebooke. On this point Winternitz<sup>1</sup> is in agreement with Bühler. But Shri Dixit, in his Marathi work, *Bhāratiya Jyotiṣaśāstra*<sup>2</sup> proves that the *Viṣṇudharmottara*, *Brahmasiddhānta* and the *Brahmagupta Siddhānta* have no similarity in their astronomical and mathematical contents. So the two *Siddhāntas* are not identical.

Thus the argument based upon *Brahma-siddhānta* also does not by itself warrant the pushing back of the date of *Viṣṇudharmottara*.

In the opinion of Dr. Kane, the following śloka of *Viṣṇudharmottara* is taken from *Parāśarasmṛiti* (3.40) :

अनाथं ब्राह्मणप्रेतं ये वहन्ति द्विजातयः ।

पदे पदे ऋतु (१ त) फलं चानुपूर्वाद्भिभन्ति ते ॥

(द्वि. खं. अ. ७६ श्लो. २)

This would place *Viṣṇudharmottara* after *Parāśarasmṛiti*. It is dated according to Dr. Kane is 500 A.D. But on a comparison of both the texts, where this verse occurs, I find that it is in better context and has a more natural position in *Viṣṇudharmottara* than it has in *Parāśarasmṛiti*. Also, traditionally, it is more usual for the *smṛiti*s to quote from the *Purāṇas* rather than the other way. If, therefore, the śloka referred to above does not belong to a third source from which *Parāśara* and *Viṣṇudharmottara* might have

1. "In *Viṣṇudharmottara*, there is a prose section with the special title '*Pañāmaha Siddhānta*'. If, as is probable, this is an extract from the *Brahmasphuṭa Siddhānta* written by Brahmagupta in 628 A.D., the *Viṣṇudharmottara* must have been compiled between 628 and 1000 A.D."

—History of Indian Literature Vol I (P.580), Winternitz

2. विष्णुधर्मोत्तरब्रह्मसिद्धांताचे ब्रह्मगुप्तसिद्धांताशी साम्य नाही...या वेदाद्वहन निराळा असला पाहिजे । (पृ. १५२).

borrowed it, but really belongs to Visnudharmottara as suggested above, we can place Visnudharmottara before Pārāśarasmṛiti i.e. before 500 A.D. But how far such stray verses can serve as evidence is doubtful<sup>1</sup>

Now let us examine some other lines of evidence in order to solve the problem of the date of Visnudharmottara

*The portion of the text of Visnudharmottara given in this volume describes such arts as Kāvya Nāṭya, Gīta, Nr̥tta Citra, Pratimā and Prāsāda. There are other works also which treat these subjects as their own. A comparison with these has shown that there is considerable similarity between what has been given in our text and such works as the Nāṭyaśāstra of Bharata, Kāvya-lamkāra of Bhāmaha and Kāvya-darsa of Dandin.*

But from mere similarity of the subject-matter, it is difficult to assign chronologies of the works. It is also not possible to know that both may have a common source. However, a closer examination of our text with the Nāṭyaśāstra inclines me to think that our text must have borrowed its material from it, especially the version of the म and म manuscripts mentioned in the edition of Gaeckwar Oriental Series.

The adhyāyas of Visnudharmottara dealing with Prahelikās (Ad 16) and Alamkāras (Ad 14) show a great similarity in their contents with the corresponding subject-matter in Bhāmaha's Kāvya-lamkāra and Dandin's Kāvya-darsa. The definitions of Alamkāras have also a considerable similarity with those given by Bhāmaha and Dandin. But the variations are more important for our purpose.

- 
1. Dr. R. C. Hazra in his valuable work, *Puranic Records* (P. 21) says 'It is not at all safe to use in determining the date of any particular work, any verses which have been quoted without any express mention of the sources even if those quoted verses are traceable in that particular work.'

Our text gives only 18 Alamkāras while Bhāmaha gives 39 and Dandin gives 35, in the matter of Prahelikās our text gives 24 while Dandin gives only 16. If we carefully study the history of Alamkāra literature, we shall find that in the matter of Alamkāras there is a general tendency to increase<sup>1</sup> the number, while in the matter of Prahelikās to lessen its importance in poetry so much so that Mammaṭa pays no attention to it. On both these counts we can conclude that our text represents a stage in poetics which is earlier than the one represented by Bhāmaha and Dandin.

If the above view is correct, we can place Viśnudharmottara or at least this portion between Bharata on one side and Bhāmaha and Dandin on other.

The earlier limit of its age is given by the Nāṭyasāstra. As to its date there is also a great difference of opinion. In fact the present text embodies strata of different ages. As Dr De says "Bharata's Nāṭyasāstra cannot possibly be put even in its present version at a date lower than the 6th cent A.D. He goes further and says that the portion dealing with music and other portions also 'were put into their present shape about the 4th cent A.D. He would shift back the lower limit of Bharata's work to the 4th or the 5th cent A.D.<sup>2</sup>

According to Dr Keith<sup>3</sup> "the date of that text (Nāṭyasāstra) is uncertain but we cannot with any assurance place it before the 3rd cent A.D.' Dr Kane<sup>4</sup> is of the opinion that the Nāṭyasāstra cannot be assigned to a later date than about 300 A.D.<sup>5</sup>

- 1 Hemacandra recognises only 33 Alamkāras but this is in reaction to the tendency of increasing Alamkāras
- 2 Sanskrit Poetics Vol I (pp 21, 32, 36) by S K De
- 3 The Sanskrit Drama (pp 13-81) by A B Keith
- 4 History of Sanskrit Poetics (p 45) by P V Kane
- 5 Dr Manomohan Ghosh places the Nāṭyasāstra in the 2nd cent A.C. See Introduction (p LXXXVI) to his translation of Nāṭyasāstra



As to the dates<sup>1</sup> of Bhāmaha and Dandin Dr Kane is of the opinion that they should be placed between 600 to 750 A D , Dandin between 660 and 680 A D and Bhāmaha 700-750 A D , Dr S K De would place Bhāmaha between the last quarter of the 7th and the last quarter of the 8th cent A D. and Dandin in the first half of the 8th cent A D. Professors Batuknath Sharma and Baladeva Upadhyaya place Bhāmaha between 400 and 600 A C Thus, taking the later dates of these authors, we may reasonably place the lower limit of the age of our text in the first half of the 7th cent A D i.e. before circa 650 A D

But the age of Visnudharmottara cannot be placed earlier than 300 A D is shown by another piece of evidence In Adhyāya 67 Slo 2, 3, & 6 of our text, mention is made of Udicayavesa and of Aviyānga or Viyānga in the description of the image of Surya According to Sir R G Bhandarkar,<sup>2</sup> 'this Magian influence from Persia is to be dated about the 3rd cent of the christian era' So in no case our text can be placed earlier than the 3rd cent A D which is its upper limit

Accepting the view of Dr De that the date of the present text of Nāṭyaśāstra cannot be pushed beyond the 4th cent A D we may put the date of our text after the 4th cent A D

Thus in the present state of our knowledge, it would be safe to put Visnudharmottara somewhere between the first or rather the second half of the 5th cent A D and the first half of the 7th<sup>3</sup>

---

1 History of Sanskrit Poetics (pp 108 120, 113) by P V Kane (1951), Sanskrit Poetics Vol I (P 49) by S K De

2 Vaisnavism, Saivism and minor religious systems (P 151)

3 According to the references given in Ad 9 slo 3 the day of the vernal equinox was the day when the sun entered the sign Mesa This would take our text sixteen hundred years back from the present time that is about the 4th cent A D I have not specifically utilized this criterion in the above discussion because our text may as well be referring to an earlier traditional view and not to a contemporary event

cent A D i e between circa 450 and 650 A D An earlier date after the third century A D however is not altogether excluded by the evidence<sup>1</sup>

#### (iv) Authorship

The authorship of a work of Purāṇa type of literature is difficult to discover Tradition would attribute all of them to Vedavyāsa

Mr Chandradhar Guleri<sup>2</sup> on the authority of a reference in Pṛthvirājamahāvijayakāvya, however, would regard Bhāsa as the author of a poem called Viṣṇudharmāḥ<sup>3</sup> This Bhāsa is called by the commentator Bhāsamuni But there is nothing to show that this Viṣṇudharma is identical with our Viṣṇudharmottara

---

1 I have not discussed the problem of the uniformity of the whole of Viṣṇudharmottara Like other Purāṇas some of its parts may be older and some later What I have said about the date of Viṣṇudharmottara above applies mainly to the portion of the text, Khanda III which I have presented in this volume It is possible that some portion of the text presented (e g the portion describing the images of the Vedic Pantheon) may bear a date earlier than the date fixed for the work in general

2 Indian Antiquary (pp 52-53) Vol XLII

3 भासस्य काव्य खलु विष्णुधर्मात्सो [रत्सो] प्याननात्वारतवमुमाच ॥

## VISNUDHARMOTTARA (KHANDA III) AND SOME OF THE REMAINS OF ANCIENT INDIAN PAINTING AND SCULPTURE

Here it is proposed to discuss how much of the information derived from our text of Visnudharmottara regarding painting and sculpture can be corroborated by the monumental remains

### Painting

#### Mural Painting—

We have seen that Adhyāya 40 which is called Rangavyatikāra opens with prescriptions as to how the surface of the walls have to be prepared for painting because a good base is essential for long life of a painting. The first place<sup>1</sup> given to wall-painting shows the great importance attached to it, is an object of aesthetic enjoyment and communication. On account of this fact that was realised in ancient times probably Mr Percy Brown<sup>2</sup>, after describing the Jogimāra cave says 'it is more than likely that other rockcut halls and chambers were originally also adorned with frescoes'. Mr Havell<sup>3</sup> says a citrasālā or gallery of mural paintings was an indispensable annexe to a Hindu palace until quite modern times<sup>4</sup>. The practice was given up for sometime but is revived in new forms.

The oldest examples of Murals are of Prehistoric age. This tradition in concrete example of datable historical painting is to be found on the walls of Jogimāra cave of the Rāmgarh hill in

- 
- 1 For literary reference see Indian Painting by Percy Brown (pages 19 to 24) and Indian Sculpture and Painting (revised edition 1928) by Havell (pages 154 to 163)
  - 2 Indian Painting—Percy Brown (Page 17)
  - 3 Indian Sculpture and Painting—Havell (Page 156)
  - 4 See also History of Indian and Indonesian Art (pp 87-91)

Sirguja in Madhya Pradesh. The wall-paintings in the Buddhist cave-temples at sigirra in Ceylon, Ajanta and Bagh are well known. In the Rockcut temple at Sittanavāsāl<sup>1</sup> in the ancient Pallava country not far from Pudukkotai fresco-paintings were discovered in 1920 These paintings<sup>2</sup> are regarded as Jain by Prof Dubreuil and Dr Coomaraswamy There are remains of Brahmanical frescoes at Ellora also which may be of the 12th cent or earlier<sup>3</sup>

'The devastating influence of the Indian climate has been responsible for the destruction of the mural paintings' But from what has been said above it becomes clear that from very ancient times mural painting was practised in Brahmanical, Buddhist and Jain rock-cut and structural temples, royal palaces and mansions of nobles and wealthy merchant princes etc

The Jogimāra<sup>4</sup> cave-paintings are presumed to have been executed about the first century before the christian era The Ajanta caves have been classified into the following periods of time in longer chronology -

5(A) Caves 9 and 10	Circa A D 100
(B) Pillars, in cave 10	„ A D 350 (Perhaps later)
(C) Caves 16 and 17	„ A D 500
(D) Caves 1 and 2	„ A D 626-628

---

1 Indian Sculpture and Painting-Havell (Page 173-7)

2. History of Indian and Indonesian Art-A K Coomaraswamy (Page 89)

The figure of Ardhanārīswara, however, from this cave cannot be called Jain Mr N C Mehta is of the opinion that it is impossible to say whether the Sittanavāsāl pictures are Jain in their subject-matter unless more is known of these pictorial remains (studies in Indian Painting-Mehta N C Pages. 11 and 12)

3 Indian Painting-Percy Brown (Page 42)

4 Indian Painting Percy Brown (P 17)

5 „ „ „ P 30 see also  
Archæology in India

The paintings of *sīgiriya*<sup>1</sup> and *Bagh* are supposed to belong to the 5th cent A D those of *Sittanavāsai* to the 7th cent A D and those of *Ellora* to the 12th cent. or earlier  
The technical process—

The technique of the paintings at *Ajanta* and *Bagh* has been a matter of discussion Sir John Marshall says that it is *Tempera* painting not *Fresco* *Buono* but as Mr E B Havell<sup>2</sup> says that there cannot be any doubt that the true *fresco* process has been practised in India for many centuries Its technique also has been inferred from the existing remains by scholars such as Havell<sup>3</sup>, Dr Coomaaswamy and Mr Percy Brown and others Some scientists may as well study and chemically test the prescriptions regarding the preparation of wall surface, paints, mixture etc given in (V D) Ad 40 slokas 1 to 9 Any way history has more or less confirmed the claim अपि वर्षशतस्यान्ते न प्रणश्येत्तु कर्हिचित् । that the painting thus made will not disappear even after a hundred years

Some details—

Eventhough our text is Brahmanical while the monumental remains are mainly Buddhist, as far as the technique of Painting and its secular matter are concerned it may be noted that there could be no religious distinction in them The depiction of mythological matter will have the religious over-tones, but in its artistic mode of expression there will be a fair amount of equality It is a well—

- 1 History of Indian and Indonesian Art—Dr A K coomaraswamy (Pages 77, 87, 163)
- 2 Indian Sculpture and Painting—Havell (Page 171 and also appendix page 278)
- 3 Compare also the last verse of this Adhyāya—

मातङ्गद्वारसप्तशृङ्गे सस्तम्भित विब्रमुदारपुच्छैः ।

घोत जलेनापि न नाशयत [१ क्व] तिष्ठत्यनेकावपि वत्सराणि ॥३०॥

known fact that many basic features of art cut across Countries and beliefs they would be applied by different workers for different needs and might be described by some scholars or works. The distinction of religious secular of the artist work at the most reflect the ideas of their patrons and not the basic techniques.

In fact we can by comparing the information of our text with the actual paintings at Ajanta and Bagh find many items of our text illustrated in them. For example the five types of men described in Adhyaya 35 Characteristics of cakravartins like webbed fingers of hands and feet a tuft of hair between the two eye-brows can also be illustrated in paintings and sculptures of Gupta period. Similarly a study of the Paintings would show that the instructions of our text regarding the postures mudrās or hand-poses rasadrstis-sentiments and moods expressed by eyes and many such artistic observations are almost universally followed.

### Sculpture

As we have seen our text employs the word citra to cover both painting and sculpture. Therefore many things said about painting in citrasutra apply also to Pratima. In fact the Pratimā lakṣaṇī taking for granted the technique described in Citrasutra mainly devotes itself to the description of a great number of deities male and female their vehicles and symbols and insignia.

Now I will try to show how some of the images described in our text resemble in a more or less degree to some of the existing images of the corresponding deities.

Padmanābha-on the wall of the Gupta temple at Deogarh a composite image of Ananta-Sāyī Narāyaṇa is shown. This image agrees with the description given in our text (Adhyaya 81).

Sesa-sayin Viṣṇu (from shahabād) has disc and conch in his two hands.

Lakṣmī (Ad 82) The images of Lakṣmī are commonly seen in the pictures as well as in the Museums.

Saraswati-(Ad. 64) In the provincial Museum, Lucknow, there is an image of Saraswati with four hands and seated on the vehicle of a peacock. It, however, differs in some respects from the description given in our text. In our text, she holds in her four hands, rosary, book, vinā and a water-vessel, while in this image Saraswati holds Vinā in two hands and in one a book but the remaining hand is damaged. So in the fourth hand there might be water-vessel or rosary. No vehicle of Saraswati is mentioned in our text.

Sūrya (Ad. 67)-According to Sir. R. G. Bhandarkar the images of the sun that are found in the extant 'remains of the temples of Sūrya from Multan down to Cutch, have boots reaching upto the knees and a girdle round the waist with one end hanging downwards.<sup>1</sup>

As Dr. V. S. Agarwala says in his work 'Gupta Art' Sūrya images of ancient Indian type with a chariot of four horses are known in the early art of Bodhi-gaya, Bhājā and Anantaguphā. A new type of Sūrya clad in Northern dress (Udīcyaveśa) and wearing long buskined boots became the usual feature in Kusāna images influenced by the Magian Sun worship from Persia. The Persian influence is even more strongly marked in the Gupta images not only of the Sun-god but also of his two attendants Danda and Pingala; the latter a pot-bellied figure holding a pen and an ink-pot.

"At khair khaneh near Kabul Mon. Hackin discovered a remarkable image of Sūrya dressed like a Sassanian king and wearing a round apron like tunic fringed with pearls. The Sassanian kings had a special liking for pearls set in the dress Bāna also refers to the fashion of pearl-spangled tunics worn by kings in the train of Harsha (Tāramuktā-phalopactyamāna Vārabāna). Some of the statues bearing close Sassanian influence lead us to infer that the intercourse between India and Persia in the Gupta-Sassanian epoch was much more intimate than is often imagined."

**Kumāra**—In the Indian Museum at Calcutta there is an image of Kumāra or Skanda. It is in damaged condition. Out of his four hands two are damaged. His one hand is resting on a Peacock and another holds a bell. So it is difficult to find out what his two other hands contain. But we can guess from the description given in our text (Ad 71) that there must be a flag and a spear in the two damaged hands.

**Ekānamśā**—The image of goddess Ekānamsā between Balarāma and Kṛṣṇa is in the Lucknow Museum (G 58). The description given in our text (Ad 85, slo 72) agrees with this image.

**Kubera**—The image of Kubera of Mathura Museum more or less agrees with the description given in our text (Ad. 53).

**Agni** (Ad 56)—In Lucknow Museum there is an image of Agni. He is seated on his vehicle of goat holding Kamandalu and rosary in his two hands and having a long beard and matted locks of hair.

Two images of Agni at the Mathura Museum and Indian Museum agree with the descriptions given in Agni Purāṇa and Matsya Purāṇa, but slightly differ from the description given in our text (Ad 56). Our text refers to parrots yoked to his chariot while the other Purāṇas make a goat, his vehicle.

**Gangā and Yamunā**—The images of Gangā in the Central Museum Lucknow and in one temple of chānoda Karnālī (Gujarat) and Yamunā in Benares are quite similar to Gangā and Yamunā described in Ad 52, Slo 6-7.

There is a doorway of the Gupta temple at Devagharh. In its right upper corner there is the figure of Gangā and in the left that of Yamunā as described in Ad 86, Slo 6-9.

**Aiduka** (Ad 84)—Aiduka seems a form both sculptural as well as architectural. The description of Aiduka as given in our text can partially be illustrated in some of the Buddhist stūpas. In fact, Aiduka has been regarded as primarily Buddhaiduka but our text provides evidence for a Śaiva-aiduka. A monumental remain discovered at Ahicchatra in Bareilly district is regarded as a form of Śaiva-aiduka.



## INTERPRETATIONS OF SIGNS AND SYMBOLS OF THE DEITIES

If we bear in mind the interpretations and explanations of the various Hetus given in the Pratimālakṣana portion of our text, we can understand the ethical and spiritual ideas expressed by those signs and symbols as well as their importance as expressing these values. This confirms the view of Sir John Marshall<sup>1</sup> based upon the study of the remains of the Gupta Art namely that it was an attempt 'to embody spiritual ideas in terms as well as his other remark namely the vision of the Indian was bounded by the immortal, rather than the mortal by the infinite rather than the finite'.

The great importance has been attached to the symbols called 'Hetus' by Dr A K Coomaraswamy in his monumental work, *History of Indian and Indonesian art* (PP 41 to 47) where he has discussed and explained symbols of images of different deities. Our text tries to achieve this aim in the chapters on the Pratimālakṣana.

Vajra (in Ad 85, Slo 15) inquires of Mārkaṇḍeya as to why God always holds out weapons? Of whom is he afraid—He, who is the soul of all and who removes the fear even of gods? Mārkaṇḍeya explains that these are not really weapons but symbolically represent the great elements which the Lord Hari bears e.g. The conch in the hand of god represents space. The disc symbolizes wind, the gadā tejas and the lotus water. When these main elements are abandoned by Hari, they become quickly scattered. So Hari keeps them together in Himself. Viṣṇu is identified with the human soul. When he leaves the body, all elements residing in the body become scattered. The world is

---

1 *Cambridge history of India Vol 1* (PP 664 and 649), compare also the remarks of Dr Coomaraswamy on the Gupta art (P 71)—*History of Indian and Indonesian Art*

supported by the elements when held together by god Visnu. Their power of holding together is caused by Him. This philosophical explanation constitutes the Hetus of the images, their signs and symbols.

In the preceding sections dealing with Citra and Pratimā we had occasions to note various objects associated with different deities, as also their Hetus or significances. As this is an important aspect of Indian Sculpture, it will be helpful if I treat the matter in a separate chapter by bringing together the material arising out of Hetus scattered at various places.

These various emblems can be classified under several heads -

- (1) colours of the deities
- (2) Limbs of the deities
- (3) Apparel of the deities
- (4) Weapons of the deities
- (5) Various other objects associated with the deities
- (6) Musical instruments
- (7) Animals and Birds as Vāhanas

## I Colours of the deities

White    Maheśvara    Varuna and Dharma

The whiteness of Mahesvara represents Prakṛti because Prakṛti which means the absence of creation is white i.e. colourless.

Varuna is said to be like the colour of waters. The colour of waters is said to be both white (śīta) and dark (asīta) because the Vaidurya like colour of waters is अनद्य (i.e. unnatural) because the form of the sky is reflected in waters. Its natural form is seen in a water-fall which resembles the rays of the moon.

On account of predominance of Sattva, Dharma is white in colour.

Red    Agni and Āditya

Agni's colour is red because he represents Tejas which is red.

Āditya is red because he is the source of all lustre.

The parrot colour : The earth goddess is of parrot colour because she bears all kinds of herbs.

Blue lotus colour : Yama in colour resembles the blue lotus on account of the predominance of Tamas.

Virūpākṣa represents Kāla. He is the embodiment of darkness therefore he is dark in colour and he wears black garments.

## II. Limbs of the deities :

Padmāsana pose of Brahmā represents meditation of his formless nature.

One face—Sarasvatī

Four faces—Brahmā, Viṣṇu, Dharma

Five faces—Mahādeva.

The face of Sarasvatī represents Sāvitrī or Gāyatrī—the foremost of all.

The four faces of Brahman represent the four Vedas.

The four faces of Viṣṇu represent strength (Bala), knowledge (Jñāna), Sovereignty (Aiśvarya) and energy (Śakti).

Strength is personified in Vāsudeva, Jñāna in Samkarsana, Aiśvarya in Pradyumna and Śakti in Aniruddha.

The four faces of Dharma represent Yajña (Sacrifice), Satya (Truth), Tapas (Austerity) and Dāna (Gift giving).

The five faces of Mahādeva are—

- |               |              |               |
|---------------|--------------|---------------|
| (1) Sadyojāta | representing | Mahi (earth)  |
| (2) Vāmadeva  | „            | Jala (Water)  |
| (3) Aghora    | „            | Tejas (light) |
| (4) Tatpurusa | „            | Vāyu (wind)   |
| (5) Isāna     | „            | Ākāśa (sky).  |

Eyes—The three eyes of each face of Mahādeva represent the sun, the moon and the fire.

The two eyes of Sarasvatī represent the sun and the moon.

Beard—Agni, Kubera.

The beard of Agni represents the sacred Darbha grass. The four Damstrās (large teeth) of Agni represent Vāgdanda (punishing with speech), Dhigdanda (punishing with derision), Dhanadanda (fine) and Vadhadanda (punishing by death).

Two tusks of Kubera represent punishment and favour.

Four Arms—Brahmā, Sarasvatī and Dharma.

The four arms of Brahmā represent the four directions.

The four arms of Sarasvatī represent the four Vedas.

The four arms of Dharma represent space, time, cleanness and purity.

Four feet—Dharma—His four feet represent Sruti, Smṛti, Sadācāra (good conduct) and good to oneself.

### III Apparel of the deities

Kaustubha—in connection with Viṣṇu, Kaustubha suggests pure knowledge.

Vanamālā—In connection with Viṣṇu it indicates that the world is bound together by the long, variegated and dark Vanamālā.

Garments—Viṣṇu, Mahī, Virūpākṣa, Vāyu and Dharma.

The garment of Viṣṇu shows Avidyā, which keeps the world going.

The white garment of Mahī symbolizes Dharma.

Virūpākṣa wears a black garment because he is the embodiment of darkness.

The garment of Vāyu indicates the sky.

The garment of Dharma is knowledge.

### IV. The weapons usually mentioned in connection with the images of the deities

Danda—Bhairava, Yama and Virūpākṣa.

Danda in connection with these three deities represents unflinching death and the act of killing.

Cakra—Vāsudeva, Viṣṇu

In the hand of Vāsudeva, Cakra represents the sun

In the hand of Viṣṇu Cakra represents Air.

Gadā—Vāsudeva, Kubera

In the hand of Vāsudeva Gadā represents moon

In the hand of Kubera Gadā represents the art of government.

Lāngala and Musala—In the hands of Samkarsana represent  
Time and death

Fiery bow and arrows—In the hands of Pradyumna represent  
Sāṃkhya and Yoga

Carma (Leather shield) Aniruddha, Nandī

In the hands of Aniruddha Carma represents illusion which  
is necessary for the creation of the world.

In connection with Nandī, it represents Dharma

Nandaka—The sword represents Vairāgya with which the  
bondage of the world is cut

Trident (Trisūla)—In the hands of Nandī represents Vyākara-  
ṇa Three sūlas represent Sattva, Rajas and Tamas

Sakti—spear of Kubera represents Power

V Various Other Objects associated with deities

Kamandalu—Brahmā, Sarasvatī, Lakṣmī

Brahmā holds in his hand a Kamandalu which carries water  
because the universe comes out of waters Kamandalu in the hand  
of Sarasvatī represents the nectar of all sāstras and in the hand  
of Lakṣmī it suggests the essence of waters

Rosary (Akṣamālā)—Brahmā, Sarasvatī and Dharma

In connection with these deities rosary represents time

Antelope (Kṛsnājina) skin—Brahmā wears the antelope skin.  
It suggests the two types of ceremonies śukla and aśukla  
Tiger's skin (Vyāghra Carma)—Śiva wears the tiger's skin This  
skin represents the wide and variegated Tṛsnā (desire)

Lotus (Padma)—Vāyu, Lakṣmī, Pārvatī Maṇi, Śakra, soma  
and kubera

\* Lotus arising out of the navel of Viṣṇu represents Maṇi (the earth) and its stalk-the Meru mountain-to show its firmness  
In his hand lotus represents water

Lotus in the hand of Lakṣmī represents wealth

In the hand of Pārvatī Lotus indicates detachment, and in the hand of Maṇi, Artha The lotus in the hands of Sakra represents prosperity and in the hands of the Moon indicates joy and graciousness and, in connection with Lord Kubera it represents his treasure bags

In general the lotus or Padma symbolizes the entire world, water or wealth etc

Sankha-Viṣṇu, Lakṣmī, Varuna and Kubera

Viṣṇu holds in his hand Sankha Sankha symbolizes sky In connection with Lakṣmī it represents good-luck, with Varuna, it represents riches and with Kubera his treasure-bag

Mātulunga-In the hand of Bhairava citron indicates the root cause of world These seeds of citron represent the atoms which constitute the world

Bilva-In the hand of Lakṣmī, it indicates pure knowledge

The Moon (Candrakālā)-The digit of moon on the face of Śiva represents his divine power

Noose (Pāśa)-Varuna and Yama

Noose in the hand of Varuna represents the bondage of the world. In the hand of Yama it indicates the terrible path

Jewelled Box (Ratna Pātra)-Varuna and Rddhī

The Jewelled box in the hand of Varuna represents the earth containing all sorts of precious stones and in the hands of Rddhī, the wife of Kubera good qualities

White Umbrella (Śitam chatram) of Varuna represents fame.

Pen (Lekhana)-In the hand of Citragupta the pen is meant for noting Dharma & Adharma

Book (Pustaka)-Sarasvatī and Dharma

In the hand of Sarasvatī the book represents all śāstras and in the hand of Dharma it represents scriptures.

The reins of Camel (Uṣṭra Raśmayāḥ)—in the hands of Virūpākṣa, signify bondage.

Ankuśa—In the hand of Śakra represents the command which subdues all beings.

Thunder-bolt (Vajra)—In the hand of Śakra vajra represents anger which subdues the wicked.

Tāla—represents the entire world.

VI. Various kinds of Musical instruments are represented in early and late iconography. But here only two names occur.

They are Śaṅkha and Vinā.

Śaṅkha is mentioned in connection with Trivikrama.

The Vinā in the hands of Sarasvatī signifies achievement or proficiency (siddhi).

VII. Animals and Birds as the Vāhanas of the deities.

Bull (Vṛṣa)—The vehicle of Maheśvara represents the divine four-footed Dharma.

Buffalo (Mahiṣa)—The vehicle of Yama represents the unconsciousness of men at the time of death.

Camel (Uṣṭra)—Vāhana of Virūpākṣa represents Mahāmoha.

Elephant (Gaja)—The elephants with the earth goddess symbolize the four directions. The elephant Airāvata of Śakra represents Artha (wealth) and its four tusks represent the four means of governance, Mantra, Prabhu and Utsāha.

The pair of elephants in connection with Lakṣmī personifies two Nidhis viz. Śaṅkha and Padma.

Horses (Aśva)—seven horses attached to the chariot of Āditya are seven vedic Metres — Gāyatrī, Uṣṇika, Anuṣṭubha, Bṛhatī, Panktī, Triṣṭubha and Jagatī. The ten horses of the chariot of the moon signify ten directions.

Lion (Simha)—On the banner of Āditya lion represents Dharma  
 Makara (crocodile)— In connection with Varuna, Makara is the  
 symbol of happiness.

In connection with Bhāgīrathī Makara represents virility (vīrya)  
 and in connection with Viśnudevājā it symbolises eros (kāma)

Mrga—Mrga symbolizes action (कर्म) in connection with Viśnudevājā

Varāha—is the personification of anger

Vāsukī—Vāsukī in connection with Śiva represents anger which  
 subdues the three worlds

Tortoise (Kūrma)—conveyance of Yamunā represents time  
 (Kāla)

Swans (Hamsa)—Brahman and Varuna

Seven swans in the chariot of Brahman represent seven Lokas  
 Seven swans in the chariot of Varuna are the seven seas

Garuda—of viśnu is to be known as mind pervading the bodies  
 of all creatures.

Tarkṣya—In viśnudevājā, represents Mind

Parrot (suka)—Parrots yoked to the chariot of Agni represent  
 the four vedas





**ŚRĪ VIṢṆU-DHARMOTTARA**  
(A TEXT OF ANCIENT INDIAN ARTS)

**KHAṆḌA THIRD**

## ADHYĀYA 1

After bowing to Nārāyaṇa, Nara, Narottama, goddess Sarasvatī and Vyāsa, the Jaya is recited

Vajra inquired "What should a man do ? By doing what a man can be happy ? By what (means) one can get great happiness in this world and in the other world ? [1]

Mārkaṇdeya answered "The wise man desirous of happiness in both worlds should worship *Devatā* and know Antar-vedi and Bahir-vedi rites (*Devatā-Pūjanam*) [2]

The deity worship in sacrifices is known as Antar-vedi, similarly fasting (*Upavāsa*), vows (*Vrata*) etc are called Bahir-vedi.

If one desires all the heavens attainable by Vedic acts (*Iṣṭa*) and charitable deeds (*Āpūrta*), one should build temples of gods. Both (*Iṣṭa* and *Āpūrta*) are seen here [3-4]

In Kṛta (*Satya*) Yuga, *Tretā*-yuga and *Dvāparī* yuga people used to see gods (face to face), but in this *Kalī*-Yuga, specially people should erect temples [5]

O best of men ! In *Satya*-yuga and other ages people are not seen worshipping the deity in *Arcā* [6]

A learned man specially worships the *arcā* image (form of God) having proper form made according the *Citra-Sūtra* (canon regarding the painting) [7]

The learned men, who worships a deity having proper form gets all his desired things. The man who worships the *Arcā* without proper characteristics (अशय), increases his misery, therefore it should be avoided

The man who worships the form with proper characteristics gets all his desires fulfilled. There is no doubt about it. He always becomes happy in this world and the next

## ADHYĀYA 1

After bowing to Nārāyaṇa, Nara, Narottama, goddess Sarasvatī and Vyāsa, the Jaya is recited

**Vajra inquired** What should a man do ? By doing what a man can be happy ? By what (means) one can get great happiness in this world and in the other world ? [1]

**Mārkaṇḍeya answered** The wise man desirous of happiness in both worlds should worship *Devatā* and know Antar-vedī and Bahir-vedī rites (*Devatā-Pūjanam*) [2]

The deity worship in sacrifices is known as Antar-vedī, similarly fasting (*Upavāsa*), vows (*Vrata*) etc are called Bahir-vedī.

If one desires all the heavens attainable by Vedic acts (*Iṣṭa*) and charitable deeds (*Āpūrta*) one should build temples of gods Both (*Iṣṭa* and *Āpūrta*) are seen here [3-4]

In *Kṛta* (*Satya*) *Yuga*, *Tretā-yuga* and *Dvāparī yuga* people used to see gods (face to face), but in this *Kālī-Yuga*, specially people should erect temples [5]

O best of men ! In *Satya-yuga* and other ages people are not seen worshipping the deity in *Arcā* [6]

A learned man specially worships the *arcā* image (form of God) having proper form made according the *Citra-Sūtra* (canon regarding the painting) [7]

The learned men, who worships a deity having proper form gets all his desired things The man who worships the *Arcā* without proper characteristics (लक्षण), increases his misery, therefore it should be avoided

The man who worships the form with proper characteristics gets all his desires fulfilled There is no doubt about it He always becomes happy in this world and the next

The work of building a temple is meritorious work (Punya-kārya), so is the work of making an Idol. The worship of an image (Deity) is meritorious, and there (in worship) offering obeisance is meritorious.

Therefore, by all means one should get an image of a deity having all the characteristics prepared and worshipped. A learned man should not worship an image without characteristics [8-12]

O son of Yadu family 6 great king In this world gods give people Religion (Dharma), Economic development (Artha), Enjoyment of senses (Kāma) and Liberation (Mokṣa) [13]

They fulfill all the desires and give permanent heaven. Therefore people should try their best to worship gods [14]

The men who worship gods always get desired worlds very easily. Similarly in this world people get riches as well as food become prosperous [15]

Thus ends the Adhyāya 1 viz. Citra-sūtra, during the discourse between Mārkaṇḍeya and Vajra, in the third part of Sri Viṣṇu-dharmottara

---

## ADHYĀYA : 2

Vajra asked : O sinless one : Kindly tell me (about) the making of the form of deities, so that the inner form remains according to the śāstras, in the figure manifest (the deity). [1]

Mārkaṇḍeya answered : O king : He who does not know the Citra-sūtram (canon of painting) very well, can never understand the characteristics of the image. [2]

Vajra inquires : O progenitor of Bhṛgu race : Kindly explain to me very clearly the canon of painting, because one who knows the canon of painting, knows the characters of images. [3]

Mārkaṇḍeya replied. It is very difficult to know the canon of painting, without knowing the canon of dance, because, O king ! in both, the world is to be imitated (or represented). [4]

Vajra inquired . O, the twice-born : kindly explain to me the canon of dance and then be kind to speak about those of painting; because one who knows the science of dance, knows painting. [5]

Mārkaṇḍeya replied : Dance is difficult to be understood by one, who does not know instrumental music (Ātodya). Without instrumental music there cannot be dancing. [6]

Vajra asked : O the knower of principles ! Kindly elucidate the canon of the instrumental music and then you will speak about the canon of dance, because O excellent Bhārgava ! When the instrumental music is properly understood, one understands dance. [7]

Mārkaṇḍeya answered : Without vocal music, it is not possible to know instrumental music. One who knows the science of vocal music, knows everything according to rules. [8]

Vajra questioned O the up-holders of principles, kindly explain to me the canon of vocal music, because one who knows the canon of vocal music, is the best of men knowing everything [9]

Mārkaṇḍeya replied O king Vocal music is two-fold-Sanskṛta and Prākṛta There is a third type called Apabhraṣṭa (the degraded one) which is endless [10]

O king ! On account of the variety of local languages, its limit can not be determined in this world Vocal music is to be understood by the way of recitation And it has two varieties [11]

O The knower of principles ! Prose is as found in conversation, while verse is as in metre Metre is of many varieties [12]

Prose and verse with their characteristics should be known through practice Verse is of two types, one is Suvṛttam and the other is Atimuktam [13]

There are twenty one forms of nouns i.e seven cases (Vibhaktis) and their singular, dual and plural numbers

In verbs (there are three persons), one is the first person The second person is considered to be of (middle) second grade and the third person is called the best person Uttama-puruṣa In every person of the verb, there are three forms - singular, dual and plural The nine forms taking the terminations 'Ti' etc, are called parasmai-pada (परस्मैपद) [14-15]

Other nine forms taking "E" etc, are called Ātmane-pada To convey the meaning of 'you' Yusmad (युष्मद् Madhyama) second person forms are used [16]

To convey the meaning of "He-they" the third person called Uttama-puruṣa (the best person) is used 6 the best of Yadu-race the remaining first person is used to denote "I-we" (Asmad) [17]

To convey the meaning of nominative case prātipadika Artha of nouns etc having pratyayas Su etc, the learned have asked to use the first case, express number, expression and measure

To convey the meaning of objective case, the second case (Karma Vibhakti) is used, and to convey the meaning of instrumental case, the third-Karaṇa Vibhakti is used. Others have called them Kartā, Kāraka, Karma, etc. (to denote the relation of the noun-pronoun with the verb. [18-19])

Fourth (Dative) case is used to convey the meaning of giving, and to convey the meaning of Apādāna going away or taking away; fifth (Ablative) case is used to show relations (between two nouns), the six (possessive or genitive) case is used. And to express the meaning of container, support etc. Seventh (Locative) case is used.

O the killer of enemies : They are already described before.  
O knower of principles ! Here I have narrated them just as a guideline. [20 - 21]

Nominative or prātipadika form (of the noun) is in its original form (Prakṛti). That (noun) form requires Dhātu form-the verb.

The entire literature in the form of prose including poetry is composed of these forms (nouns-their cases and verbs etc.) [22]

Thus ends the Adhyāya 2, entitled “Śabdādhyāyaḥ” (words-study), during the discourse between Mārkaṇḍeya and Vajra, in the third part of Śrī Viṣṇu-dharmottara.

---

### ADHYĀYA : 3

Mārkaṇḍeya said : The metre having six syllables in a quarter (pāda) is called Gāyatrī Chanda. Uśnik is made of seven, eight syllables form Anuṣṭubha. [1]

Bṛhatt is made of nine syllables and the metre named Pañkti is having ten syllables. Tristup is having eleven syllables, and Jagatī is made of twelve syllables. [2]

Similarly, one should know that the metre having thirteen syllables is Atipūrvam. O Son of Yadu dynasty : Śakharī metre is having fourteen syllables. And the metre having fifteen syllables, is called Atiśakharī. It is said that, the metre named Asti Chanda requires sixteen syllables. [4]

Similarly, the metre named Atyasti is made of seventeen syllables. And the metre of eighteen syllables is known by the name Vṛtti. [5]

Similarly, the metre named Ati-vṛtti has twenty minus one (i.e. nineteen) syllables. O the best amongst the Yadus : the metre named Kṛti is having twenty syllables. [6]

The metre named Prakṛti is having twenty plus one (i.e. twenty one) syllables. And the metre called Ākṛti is having twenty two syllables. [7]

The metre, Vikṛti has twenty three syllables, when one syllable is added to it (i.e. twenty four syllables are there), it is called Samkṛti. O king ! When one syllable is joined to Samkṛti (i.e. there are twenty five syllables), it is called Atikṛti. [8]

Sages say that the metre having twenty six syllables is called Utkṛti Chanda

Each and every metre has four Pādas. They make a couplet of the Chanda. [9]



In the metre based on Mātrās i.e. Mātrā-Vṛttas the short syllable (laghu Varna) (or Hrasva) has one Mātrā—(A clear curve line) (U) is the sign to indicate it (A long or) the combined syllables (or samyuktākṣaras) are of two Mātrās. They are called Guru (or Dīrgha). A straight line (—) is the sign for it [10]

O King ! the short syllable coming at the end of a Pāda becomes Guru (long). Long (Dīrgha) and Pluta (longer than Dīrgha) are also considered Guru (long) [11]

The short syllable before the combination of syllables (Samyukta) becomes Guru (long). According to the arrangement of short and long syllables, many varieties of metres are expanded [12]

O King ! Optional metres are formed in so many ways I shall tell you how that work is carried out by Prastāra. Please hear [13]

O King ! One should put down (in the first line) as many long letters as there are letters in a Pāda of a given metre. Then (in the second line) place a short letter under the first letter (in the upper line), and then O the Chief of Kings ! copy out the other letters as they are (in the upper line). Oh the best of kings the same process should be followed (in the subsequent lines) and letter should be placed until we get all short letters in the last line.

This same method is to be followed for doing the prastāra of Mātrā Vṛttas. When the metre is having one letter less than the given number of letters in the metre it is called Nīrt and when there is one letter more it is called Bhurik. The metre having two letters less, is called Virād, and O the best amongst the Yādus. When there are two more letters the metre is called svarāt.

O Yādava ! from above mentioned permutations of metres all the Mātrā Chandas are formed [14-19]

O King ! I have told you about the Chandas in a nut-shell. One who is eager to study in detail, should find out all with his own intelligence, because to tell about them in detail is very difficult. [20]

Thus ends the Adhyāya 3, entitled 'Chando-Vidhi' - the procedure of the metres, during the discourse by Mārkaṇdeya and Vajra, in the third part of Sri Viṣṇu-dharmottara.

---

## ADHYĀYA : 4

Mārkaṇḍeya said : The sentence Svayambhu (Brahmā) is in the form of unambiguous orders, brilliant and serious words. Sometimes it is mixed combined with Nirukta. This is the sentence of Svayambhu. [1]

That which has association and complexities and that refers to names and cases is direct and clear is remembered as the speech of Rsis. [2]

The utterance of Ṛcīkās are full of nigamas, and varieties of words and Nipūtas (indeclinables) but they are not very big or long (Sumahat). [3]

O King ! The speech of the sons of sages (Rsi-Putras) is not so clear. It contains the knowledge of past, present and future lives and it removes the pain of (repeated) birth [4].

The utterance of a friend has hidden meanings which directs one in doing Puruṣārths (Dharma, Artha, Kāma etc.) They are in the form of orders and there is no selfish motive behind them. [5]

It should be known that the utterances of a saintly king (Rājarsi) is full of many meanings. The speech of gods is full of many words and capable of expression. [6]

The speech of demons is full of many words but there is less meaning. In the speech of Gandharvas there are less words and the meaning is also very meagre. [7]

The utterances of Rākṣasas are very rough and difficult to be understood.

In the speech of Yakṣas syllables is silent. The utterances of Kinnaras is also like that. [8]

In the speech of Nāgas it is intelligible, and there are many repetitions.

And the speech of human beings is full of attachment, or envy, and with some purpose behind it. [9]

Mantras are said to be different kinds, characterised by Rg-, Yajur and Sāma. Their subject matter is prayer, blasphemy, praise, anger, question, permission, teaching (story-telling) etc

Thus all the characteristics of all knowledge (the speech) is described [10-11].

It is certain that they are divided only in human learning and certainly nowhere else. Their characteristics naturally does not change, except in the human beings. [12]

Some excellent person sees it with his intelligence

O King ! that is why his intelligence is said to be the best. [13]

O the best among the knower of sentences ! I have told you, how to examine them very well. In that way, the intelligent person should know it as connected with affection or hatred. [14]

If the sentence of the ṛṣa (sage) is similar to that of Gods and if the sentences is similar to that of others, then O King ! the sentence of the man should be known by the association of attachment and envy. [14]

Thus ends the Adhyāya 4, entitled 'Vākya-Parikṣā. (Examination of the sentences) during the discourse between Mārkaṇḍeya and Vajra, in the third part of Śrī Viṣṇu-dharmottara.

Mārkaṇḍeya said The knower of sūtra (formula) say that in the Sūtra there are minimum syllables. It is un-ambiguous, full of essence, universal, without exception (Astobha) and faultless [1]

It is said that there are two types of Sūtras. One giving the general rule is Utsarga, and the other Apavāda showing the exception Sūtra has four parts Sūtra proper, Vyudāṣa (Refutation), Udāharana (the example) and Pratyudāharana (Counter illustration) [2]

In another way it is explained in four parts : Vākya (sentence) Vākyaṛtha (meaning of the sentence) Pada (word) and the meaning of the pada (word) [3]

The five parts which should be studied are : pratijñā (proposition), Hetu (reason), Drṣtānta (the illustration) Upasamhāra (conclusion) and Nigamana (Inference) [4-5]

The Sūtra is to be explained in six ways Ārambha (beginning), Sambandha (context), Sūtrārtha (the meaning of the Sūtra), Viśeṣana (its further elucidation) Codanā (inspiration), and parihāra (removal of the explanation) In sūtra itself everything is given and illustrated [6]

If the sūtra is stated in a lengthy way, it kills the intelligence, and if it is stated very briefly one can not catch the whole idea. Therefore what is to be said, should be said in a Sūtra precisely — not in a too short or too extensive way (7)

In a Sūtra words not giving proper meaning should be avoided and (vyābhata) contradictory and (punarukta) repetition should be avoided Similarly irrelevant (Vibhinna Samsthānam) and (yuktihīna) should be avoided. [8]

And without any reason breaking up of the sequence (kramabheda), division (Vibhaktah), long formula (Guru-Sūtra), and giving another sense (Abhidhānasya Anyatvam) should not be there [9]

To explain the Sūtra, all the words in the Sūtra should be separated ( Kṛtvā - Pada - cheda ) Then compounds ( Samāśas ) should be dissolved After explaining the compound, an intelligent man should tell the meaning [10]

Six kinds of explanation of Yoga ( Nyāya-proposition ) should be given They are Sutrārtha ( meaning of the Sūtra ) Padārtha ( the meaning of the words ), Hetu ( reason ), Nirukta ( explanation ) and Vinyāsa ( laying down the proposition ) [11]

The Tantra becomes acceptable when it is duly combined with three evidences (Pramāṇas) : e pratyaksa (Direct experience) Anumāna (inference) Āpta vacana (The statement of the expert) [12]

Direct experience (pratyaksa) is sometimes mixed with Ābhāsa (illusion) Mṛga-Tṛṣṇikā (Mirage) is such an illusionary vision There is an illusionary inference also e g the mass of vapour and dust create the doubt of smoke but the fire is not available [13]

The illusion of smoke suggest the possibility of fire O King ! If a man is not an Āpta-Jana knower of the subject and still he declares himself to be an Āpta-Jana, it is an illustration of Illusion of Āpta One who is free from affection or envy is called an Āpta-Jana [14-15]

You know that there are two types of Nirukta (Derivations of words) Siddha (grammatically obtained) and Autpattika (derived) The word which is always obtained by grammatical rules is called siddha [16]

There are Autpattika (derived) words such as Gau (cow), Asva (horse) and Purusa (man)

The secondary meaning of a word is of ten kinds I shall tell you about them one by one [17]

They are Gauna, Naimittika, Bhākta and Samvāda, Kārtika, Upacāra and sambandha, samyoga, Krayika etc [18]

From quality (Guna) we get Gauna (Qualitative words like big etc Due to Nimitta (cause) we get Naimittaka e.g. Khandamunda etc [19]

Through Bhākta (Division) we get the meaning of the word Nr-simha Due to samvāda (resemblance) a child sees motherhood in a woman who resembles his mother [20]

A Kārtaka word is derived from a Krtaka (conventional) word e.g. Devadatta etc (pino-Devadatto Divā (na) bhuñkte) Due to Upacāra (usage) an Aupacāra word is formed e.g. Tailapāsa and Tulā [21]

Due to Sambandha (relation) the word is called Sāmbandha (related) e.g. The word Chatrī (having a big umbrella) is used for a Mīmāṃsaka Due to Samyoga (association) with some activity, a Samyoga word and due to some Kriyā (activity) Krayika words are formed [22]

(The word) Paṭṭa-Krt is used for one who makes a cloth-sheet and one who cuts by Laguda is called Laguda chedya and similarly other words of Nigama and Nighaṇṭu vedic vocabulary is formed [23]

When the thing to be proved is not well-known, listen to the procedure of proving that That which seems Vipanna (difficult) should be proved by these means [24]

The soul senses mind and the desired object should be brought together The knowledge put together with Desa (place) etc becomes obvious (Pratyakṣa) [25]

The soul which has taken up the body is inferred as Yukta (connected with the body) by the intelligence, as fire is inferred due to smoke [26]

The Smṛti which is approved by the learned and which is in harmony with Vedic knowledge can be a means proving things which are not visible This sort of proof (Sādhana) is called Sāstra [27]

When out of two similar things, the term for one is extended to the other, it is called *Upamāna*. As for example that which is similar to cow is given the simile of the cow [28]

When the desired meaning is not expressed by the sentence, but becomes clear it is called *Arthāpatti*. e.g. *Pino Devadatto divā (na) bhunkte* (The fatty Deva-datta does (not) eat at daytime (There is *Arthāpatti*)) [29]

A thing can be proved in six ways. *Nipātana* *Yoga-Vibhāga-darsana*, *Guru-Upadesa* *Anu-Vārtika* *Svatantra-Siddhi* and *para-tantra-darsana* [30]

Thus ends the *Adhyāya* 5, entitled *Tantra-Guna-Dosa-varṇana* (Description of Tantra's good qualities and faults), during the discourse between *Mārkaṇḍeya* and *Vajra*, in the third part of *Sri Viṣṇu-Dharmottara*

---



## ADHYĀYA : 6

Mārkaṇḍeya (said) : Now the methods of understanding are told. They are Adhikarāṇa, Yoga, Padārtha, Hetvartha, Uddeśa, Nirdeśa, Pradeśa, Atideśa, Apavarga, Vākyaśeṣa, Arthāpatti, Prasanga, Ekānta, Anekānta, Pūrva-pakṣa, Nirṇaya, Vidhāna, Viparyaya, Atikrānta-anveksana, Anāgataveksana, Saṁśaya, Ati-vyākhyāna, Anumata, Sva-Samjñā, Nirvacana, Dṛṣṭānta, Niyoga, Vikalpa, Samuccaya and Ūhya.

Adhikarāṇa discusses the authentic meaning of a subject.

Yoga is the proper application of the meaning of a sentence.

That which is taken as an authentic in a (Sūtra-pāda). Short phrase is called Padārtha.

The argument which establishes a subject is Hetvartha.

A brief statement is Uddeśa.

Statement at length is Nirdeśa.

Statement saying 'It is like this'-(Evameva) is Upadeśa.

Apadeśa is the statement showing reason.

Pradeśa is the statement proving the subject matter in hand by something in future.

Atideśa is the extension beyond the subject concerned.

Drawing out an intended meaning is Apavarga.

Vākyaśeṣa is the understood (Āhārya) word by which the meaning is completed.

In Arthāpatti unmentioned meaning has to be taken in order to make the sense reasonable.

A topic has been mentioned in the chapter, but which is repeated in some context is called *prasāṅga*.

That which is always everywhere like that is *Ekānta*.

That which is at some place alike that but at the other place different is *Anekānta*.

The proposition which controverts a statement is called *pūrva-pakṣa*.

The proposition which answers the *pūrva Pakṣa* is called *Nirnaya*. And the proposition under discussion is *Vidhāna*.

The opposite of *Vidhāna* is called *Viparyāya*.

*Atikrāntāveksana* expresses that it has been said like that.

*Anāgatavekṣana* expresses, "I will say it later on."

To show reason in both the alternatives is *Samśaya*.

An extensive description is *Ativyākhyāna*.

Not negative opinion of the opposite party is *Anumata*.

The word which is not accepted by the opposite party is *Svasamjñā*.

The example which is well understood by the people is *Nirvacana*.

That which illustrates the argument is *Dṛṣtānta*.

*Niyoga* means that, it is positively like this.

*Vikalpa* says that, it may be like this or like that.

*Samuccaya* says that, it is like this and like this.

That which is not mentioned, but which can be understood by argument is called *Ūhya*.

The *Sāmvartika dharmaguna* is of eight kinds : *Prayojana* (purpose), *Samśaya* (doubt), *Nirnaya* (definite conclusion), *Vyākhyāviśeṣa* (particular explanation) *Guna* (Secondary sense), *Lāghava* (brief), *Kṛta-Vyudāsa* (refutation) and *Kṛtaśāna* (assertion of the rule). [1]

Thus ends the *Adhyāya* 6, entitled 'Tantra-Śuddhi (the clarification of Tantra), during the discourse between *Mārkaṇḍeya* and *Vajra*, in the third part of *Śrī Viṣṇudharmottara*.

## ADHYĀYA : 7

Mārkaṇḍeya said : Now I shall tell you about the characteristics of Prākṛta language. There is no R, R̥, Lr or Lṛ vowels. Nor there are Usmākṣaras, n and Ś-ṣ both. [1]

O King : There are, no other Nāsikyas (such as ṇ, ṇ) except 'Ma'. O King ! Samyukta Ra, śa, ya and va are never found. [2]

O one with great strength ! When e-kāra and o-kāra are there in the middle of pada, and they are joined, O is changed to 'U' and 'e' is changed to 'i'. When they are joined with 'Ga' and 'Ya' Ga-kāra is always dropped. [3]

When 'g' 'y' are combined 'Ya-kāra' is always dropped. An intelligent men, should separate combined s-n and change it to s-n [4]

Similarly when 'd' and 'm' are combined, they should be separated and changed to 'du' and 'ma'. [i.e. they become 'duma' as in Padma etc.] When 'T' and 'n' are combined they should be undoubtedly changed to 'y-ṇ' [5]

When 'Ta' kāra is combined with 'Ta-Ya', that 'T' should be changed to C-kāra. Ka-kāra coming in the middle of a pada, should be pronounced without (Hal) consonant. [i.e. consonant should be dropped.] [6]

'Na'-kāra should be changed to 'Na'-kāra and 'ksa'-kāra should be changed to 'kha'. And 'Sta'-kāra becomes 'Tha'-kāra, and 'Za'-kāra becomes 'na' [7]

Sometimes 'kha'-kāra, 'tha'-kāra and 'dha' kāra and 'bha'-kāra are to be pronounced as 'Ha'—

When Tsa (त्स) is changed to Cha, 'Hal' consonant 'h' is dropped and Ca remains. spa is changed to Fa, (Sometimes when Sa is joined; (as in Asme), 'Ha' is to be put in the place of Sa (as Ahme.) [9]

In Prākṛta, Caturthī (Dative Case) is not known. Sometimes Dual form (Dvi-Vacana) is not there. The long letter in the beginning of a Pada should be made short [10]

I have told you in brief about the characteristics of Prākṛta. It should be followed by usage because its scope is very vast [11]

The dialects in different provinces are different and various. It is not possible to describe the characteristics of all of them. Popularly they are known as Apabhraṣṭa of those provinces. The scholars of the provinces, should be considered as authority [12]

Thus ends the Adhyāya 7 entitled "The characteristics of Prākṛta-language", during the discourse between Mārkaṇḍeya and Vajra, in the third part of Sri Viṣṇudharmottara-

---

## ADHYĀYA 8

*Markandeya said* Devas (Deities) are called Divaukasa Divyāḥ Girvānāḥ, Tri-dasāḥ, and Surāḥ Viṣṇu is called Hari, Janārdana, Vāsudeva, Adhokṣaja, Nārāyaṇa Hṛṣīkeśa, Cakṛi and Garuda-Vāhana Bala Rāma is called Sankarsana, Ananta, Sesa, Tāla-Dhvaja and Hali, [1-2]

Pradyumna is called Kāmadeva and Makaraketu, Aniruddha is called Khadgāyudha and Rṣya-ketana [3]

Lakṣmī is called Kṛṣṇī, Śrī and Devī-Vibhāvartī, Viṣṇu's disc is called Sudarsana and the bow is called Sāṃga. [4]

The bow of Maheswara is called Pināka, that of Varuna is Gāṇḍiva, that of Sakra (Indra) is Ājagava, and the Vajra is called Kulīśa [5]

O King ! Similarly the club of Viṣṇu is called Kaumodakī, Hala is called Lalāma and Musala (Mace) is called Sunanda [6]

The conch-shell carried by Janārdana (Kṛṣṇa) is called Pañcajanya The lotus in his hand is called Astrāloka [7]

This earth is called Bhūmī, Vasundharā, Pṛthvī, Kṣamā, Kṣaṇī Dharā and Mahī The sky is called Nabha, Kha, Gaṇana, Ākāśa and Hareḥ-Kṛama [8]

Garuda is called Tārksya, Suparna, and Hariketana-vāhana Sesa-nāga is called Ananta Hala-dhara, Tāla-dhvaja and Hali [9]

Brahmā is called Pitā-maha, Sambhu, Svayambhu, and Bhutabhāvana Mahādeva is called Bhava, Sambhu, Tryambaka, and Pārvatī-patī [10]

Similarly Pārvatī is called Umā, Satī, Parvatajā and Menajā. Bhadrā-kālī is known as Durgā Gaṇās are known as Pramaṭha [11]

Ganapati is called Vināyaka and Kārtikeya is known as Kumāra and Skanda Indra is called Sakra, Kauśika Puruhūta and Purandara, [12]

Agni is called Vaisvānara, Vahni, Jāta-veda and Hutāsana Yama is called Vivasvata, Kināśa and preta-Nāyaka [13]

Virūpākṣa (Sankara) is called Nirrti and Rātricarādhīpa The King of Yādavas is God Pracetā, and Varuna is called Ambupa [14]

Water is called Toya Ambu, Jala and Apa, Pāṇiya, Salila and Paya The wind is called Vāyu, Samīrana, Vāta, Pavana, Sarvaga and Anila [15]

The king of Kings is called Dhanādhyakṣa and Edavida (Kubera) Sankara is called Isāna, Sarva, Pasupati and Śiva [16]

Two Nāsatyas are called Asvinas Vasavas are called Vasus Similarly Angīrasas are Nāgas and Viśvasatrāgra-bhojina [17]

Bhṛguṣ are called Maruts The Sons of Dharma are called Sādhyas, and the sons of Kasyapa are called Ādityas [18]

The Bhṛguṣ obstructed by the absence of rain are called Maruts, the Mātariśvānas, Grahas (Planets) are called Tribhuvaneśvara Nakṣtras (constellations) are called Rkṣas and Uduś [19]

The Sun is called Āditya, Bhāskara, Sūrya Savitā, Ravi and Aryamā The moon is called Candra, Sitakara Soma, Saśāṅka, and Mṛga-Lāñchana [20]

Vakra (Planet Mars) is Kṣītisuta (the son of the earth), Bhauma (Mangla-Mars) and Budha is Somanandana (son of the moon), Brhaspati is called Guru and Jiva Sukra is called Āśfuḥ [21]

Intelligent has called Śūraṇa as the Fifth Manmatba. The demons are called Asuras' Dānavas, and Daityas Gandharvas are called Deva-Gāyanāh [22]

Yakṣas are called Puṇyajānās, Yātudhānās are Rakṣasas. Invisible (Adṛśyas) are Bhūtas. Flesh-eaters (Piṣitāśanas) are called Piśācas. [23]

Kinnaras are called Kimpuruṣas, and Nāgas (Serpents) are called Kadru-sūtas. Siddhas are called Vidyādharas and Deva-rāmās (the damsels of Gods) are called Apsarās. [24]

Maharṣis (Sages) are called Bhūtakṛta and Brahmarsaya Amalās and in this world Saptarṣis are called Citraśikhaṇḍina. [25]

Polar-star is called Dhruva and Sthāsnu, Kṛkalāsa. The Direction is called Diśa and Kāṣṭhā and Āśā. The multitude of stars is called Bha-cakra or Bhagana. [26]

O King ! Scriptures written long long ago are called Smṛti, Śruti and Veda. O King ! The persons knowing the śāstras have preached good character and conducts. [27]

Thus ends the Adhyāya 8 of Abhidhāna Kośa during the discourse between Mārkaṇḍeya and Vajra, in the third part of Śrī Viṣṇudharmottara.

---

## ADHYĀYA : 9

Mārkaṇḍeya Said :

The other word for Saṁvatsara (year) is Abda, Varsa and Samā-hāyana. The other names for Divasa (a day) are Vāsara, Dina and Ahah. [1]

Names for night are Dosā, Vibhāvari, Rātri, Śarvari, Yāmini and Ksapā. The meeting time (of day and night) is called Sandhyā, And the darkness is called Andhakāra and Tamah. [2]

Names for the moon-light are Candrikā and Jyotsnā. Caitra month is called Madhu-māsa. Vaiśākha is called Mādhava, and Jyestha is called Śuci-Māsa. [3]

Similarly Āsādhā is called Sukla, Śrāvana is called Nabha. Bhādrapada (coming after Śrāvana) is called Prausṭha-pāda and Aśva-Yuga (Aśvina) is called Isa. [4]

Kārtika is called Urjākhyā and Mārgaśīrṣa is called Saha. The month coming after (Mārgaśīrṣa) Saha is called Pausa, and Māgha is called Ātapa. [5]

O scion of Yadu dynasty ! the other names for Phālguna is called Tapasya.

When the sun is in Tulā and Mēṣa (Libra and Aries) Zodiacs it is called Viśuvaddina (vernal or Autumnal equinox). [6]

When the sun moves from Dhanu (Sagittarius) to Mithuna (Gemini) it is called in Dakṣiṇāyana when the sun is at the end of Mēṣa (Aries zodiac) and at the end of Tulā (Libra-zodiac) the days are called Yugādi-divasa (days). [7]

Similarly when the sun is in between Kulira (Karka-Cancer Zodiac) and Makara (Capricornus) it is called Viśnupada. When it enters Kanyā Rāśi (Vergo Zodiac), Mithuna (Gemini) and Mīna



(Pisces Zodiac) and Dhanu (Sagittarius Zodiac) the four days are called Sadasitumukha Rasmī, Gabhastī, Bhadrā and Karo dīdhitī [8-9]

The duration of time between the sunrise and sunset is longer

When the cluster of clouds becomes slanting the sun is obstructed [10]

Thus slanting clouds cover the sun Those clouds like the barrier are called Danda. The rainbow is called Sakracāpa or Sakra-dhanu (the bow of Sakra or Indra) It is long and reddish-Rohita [12]

That which is short, yellowish and in the opposite direction of the sun, should be worshipped The disc of the Sun and Moon are surrounded by the cluster of clouds [13]

The Stars falling down when the results of the good acts are exhausted are called Ulkā (Meteor)

The Star that is seen for a short time and which has a flaming tail is called Dhūma-Ketu (Comet) [14]

When the colour of fire is seen for a long time it is called Dig-dāha (burning of the directions)

The City which is seen in the void space (Avakāsa) is called Gandharva-nagar (Will-O-Wish) [15]

The thunder which is heard without the sight of the clouds is called Stanita The illusory scene seen here and there in the desert is called Mrga-Trsnikā (Mirage) [16]

The cloud is called Ghana, Vārīda, Jimūta and Balāhaka, The thunder is called Stanita and Garjita The rainfall is called Vṛṣṭi [17]

Heavy rain is called Āsāra (to rain cats and dogs) and the slow rain is called Prsata (Shower) The rain falling while the Sun is shining is called Divya-Varsana [18]

The rain, while the moon is seen is called Sāmṛta Vṛṣṭi (Rain with nectar) And if it rains with blowing wind, it is called Nihāram (Stormy Rain) [19]

That in the form of drops is called Tusāra, Tuhina and Hima (Dew, frost and snow) The lightning is called Vidyut, Lolā, Cancaḷā, and Satahrdā [20]

The sea is called Samudra Ambunidhi (The reservoir of water), Sāgara, Lavanodaka (with salty water)

The river is called Kutila-gāmīni (flowing in a zig-zag way), Nīmnagā (flowing downward) and Saritā [21]

The River Gangā (Ganges) is called Viṣṇu-padī (flowing from the feet of Viṣṇu), Jāhnavī and Tripathā The river Yamunā is called Kālīndī and Revā is called Narmadā The river Vipāsā is called Sanandā and Satadru (Sanandu) is called Saurī [22]

The speech is called Saraswatī (Goddess of Learning) and O King ' the mind (mana) is called Candra (the moon) Intelligence is called Sūrya, Similarly Indriyānt (the Senses) are called Bhūtāni (living beings) [23]

Thus ends the Adhyāya 9 entitled Abhidhāna-Kosa (Name-dictionary) during the discourse between Mārkaṇḍeya and Vajra, in the third part of Sri Viṣṇudharmottara

---

Mārkaṇḍeya said A Man is called Manusya and Manuja Purusa and Puḍgala The woman is called Rāmā, Yosit and Lalanā [1]

A beautiful married woman is called Varārohā and Purandhrī, the best among them is Mattakāsīnī A Brahmin is called Vipra and a Rājanya is called Kṣatriya [2]

Kināsa (a cultivator-farmer) is called a Vaisya and a Sūdra is called Antyaja (one who is born the last) Candāla is called Pukkasa and Mātanga [3]

An elephant is called Hasti, Dvīpa Ibha Danti, Mātanga, Kunjara and Gaja The horse is called Asva, Turaga, Sapti, Haya, Vāji and Hari, [4]

An Ox is called Ukhsha, the goat is called chāgala and Aja and a ram is called Avī [5]

The names for the sword are eight Asī, Viśasana, Khadga, Tiksna-dhāra, Durāsada, Sri-garbha, Vijaya and Dharmā-dhāra. [6]

The gold is called Suvarṇa, Kanaka, Rukma, Hema, Kārtasvara and Jāmbunada Silver is called Rupya and Rajata [7]

Udumbara (copper-coloured) called Tāmra Iron is called Loha Brass is called Ārakūṭa and Riti, and a precious stone is called Ratna and Māṁkya (Ruby) [8]

An Umbrella Ātapatra is called Chatra A conch-shell is called Kambu and Śankha The Lotus is called Pankaja, kamala, Padma, Pundarika [9]

And the red lotus is called Tāmarasa and Sata-patra A blue lotus is called Iandivara and Utpala A white lotus is called Kalhāra [10]

Sangrāma (A battle) is called Āji, Yuddha. Janya and Āhava. Giving present (Dāna) (with love) is called Samvānana (courtship) and Vivāha (the marriage) is called Vini-veśana. [11]

The wife is called Patni, Bhāryā and Jāyā. A son is called Suta, Putra and Tanūdbhava. Mother is called Janani. Janitri and Janitā. Father is called Janaka and Pitā. [12]

A residence (Kṣaya) is called Bhavana, Mandira and Grha. A store-house is called Bhāndāgāra or Kośa. A cellar (Dhanvana) is called Dhanvana and Gupti. [13]

A vehicle is called Vāhana or Patra, and a pot is called Amatra and Pūtra. A pot or a shallow dish is called Vardhamāna or Śarāva. [14]

An arrow is called Sāyaka, Śara, Isu, Bāna, and Śilamukha. A javelin which is released by hand is called Brhanta and Tomara. [15]

O King ! the decoration with plenty of flowers is called Upakāra. The fan made of hair is called Bāla-Vyajana and Cāmara (chowrie). [16]

Cleanliness (Mrjā) is called Śobhā and the ornament is called Alamkāra and Vibhūṣana. Prasādhana is called Mandana. Strength is called 'Bala' and 'Sāra'. [17]

A child is called Arbhaka and Bāla, A colt is called Kṣoraka. An elephant is called Kalabha and its young one is called Coksa. [18]

A lion is always called a Kesari and Sīṃha. The tiger is called Śārdūla and Vyāghra. A forest is called Bṛpina and Niryana. A court-yard of the house is called Ajra and Grhāṅgana. [19]

One who gives sacred-thread and teaches Vedas is called Ācārya. One who teaches one branch of learning is called Upādhyāya; and one who performs sacrifice is called a Rtvij. [20]

An astrologer is called Jyotisa-vid. Kings choose them. One who performs sacrifice for the King is called a Purohita. [21]

A minister is called Amātya and Mantri. A country is called Deśa and Visaya. The King is called Rājā, Narendra and Nṛpati. His throne is called Simhāsana. A door-keeper (of the royal palace) is called Ksattā and Pratihāra. The stick in his hand is called Vetra (a cane). [22]

Thus ends the Adhyāya 10 entitled Abhidhāna Kośa (Name-dictionary), during the discourse between Mārkaṇḍeya and Vajra, in the third part of Śrī Viṣṇudharmottara.

---

## ADHYĀYA . 11

Mārkaṇḍeya said , O King ! By the Learned the following words are considered to be of feminine gender Kīrti (fame), Lakṣmī (Goddess of Wealth), Dhṛti (Patience) Medhā (Intelligence), Matī (Understanding), Puṣṭi (Nourishing, support etc ), Sarasvatī (Goddess of learning), Smṛti (memory), Śraddhā (faith), Ratī (pleasure, fondness), Dhṛti (holding), Nīti (policy, good behaviour), Sthitī (condition, staying), Srutī (hearing) [1]

Rātri (night), Prabhā (light), Kṣapā (Night), Dīpti (lustre), Sālā (School), Mālā (garland), Nisā (night), Sprhā (longing, ardent wish), Dolā (swing-palanquin ), Helā (disrespect, amorous sport), Lolā (play, sport), Yāminī (night), Kṣanadā (night), Carā (moving) [2]

Yātrā (journey), Bhastrā (leather bag for water, bellows), Dyuti (shine), Mātrā (proportion), Damsṭrā (large teeth) Senā (army), Vacā (speech), Kuṭi (hut), Khorī (lame), Dayā (mercy), Jyotsnā (moon-light), Sīmā (boundary), Ventī (braid of hair) and Vāk (speech) [3]

Tanū (Thin, slender), Dhūli (dust), Salākā (stick), Grīvā (neck), Bhrū (eye-brow), Sarat (Autumn), Darad (cave cavity), Prāvṛṣṭ (Rainy-season), Dhamanī (A vein), Sthūnā (pillar), Cūdā (hair on the head), Sīrā (Vein), Vasā (fat, morrow) [4]

Kakṣyā (chamber), Saṭā (ascetic's matted hair), Surā (wine), Janghā (thigh), Jatā (Braided hair), Ghaṇṭā (Bell), Kasā (touch stone), Vidyut (lightning) Kaksā (courtyard) Sarit (river), Vallī (creeper), Isikā (desire), Rajju (Rope), Iṣṭakā (brick) [5]

Dig (direction), Bhū, Bhūmī, Mahī Kṣonī, Kṣarā and Vasun-dharā (all meaning the earth)

Chāyā (shadow), Camū (army), Vālukā (Sand), Vidyut (lightning), Vipat (difficulty) and Sarit (river) [6]

Irā (liquor, Sarasvatī), Sampad (property), Avāpa (getting), Līlā (sport), Velā (time-tide), Tulā (a balance), Silā (slab or stone), Kalā (art), Mekhalā (girdle), Jvālā (flames) Senā (army), Dadru (a kind of leprosy), Vali (wrinkle on skin) Samā (time) [7]

Jyā (cord of an arc), Glāni (exhaustion), Hāni (loss), Sāṭi (petticoat), Swāhā (oblation, wife of Agni), Gī (speech), Dhi (intelligence), Vṛddhi (increase), Dhū (shaking), Ksamā (pardon), Buddhi (intelligence), Ksut (hunger), Tṛṣnā (thirst), Āśih (Blessing), Vālukā (Sand) [8]

Vimśati (twenty), Navati (ninety) Krodā (chest), Khatvā, Śirodharā (Neck), Māyā (enchantment, illusion), Saskuli (orifice of the ear), Jihvā (tongue), Ghaṭotkā ( ? ), Snāyu (muscle) [9]

Lekhā (line, streak), Jarā (old-age), Pankti (line) Tretā (triplet), Prāvṛd (rainy season), Arocakā (loss of appetite), Lāksā (red dye, lac), Kandū (itching), Priyangu (a kind of creeper), Māndikā ( ? ) Kaṭi (waist), Osadhi (herb) [10]

Rk (hymn), Sfulngā (spark of fire), Kali (bud), Sayyā (bed), Koti (end), Kanthā (patched garment), Nālikā (tube, drain), Nihsreni (Ladder-stair case) Prtanā (Army), Dipti (lustre), Nīdrā (sleep), Tandrā (slumber), Guhā (cave) Ruci (liking) [10]

Sāsnā, (dew-lap of an ox) Rāsnā (girdle), Vithi (road), Nivi (cloth or girdle round the waist), Dhārā (stream), Kṛisī (farming), Manjusā (box), Parsada (assembly) Patākā (flag), Kākini (a goddess, a quarter of a Pana) Kṛpā (mercy) [12]

Pelā (delicate), Manjishā (Indian madder), Bheri (cattle-drum), Nemi (rim of a wheel), Manah silā (red-arsenic), Darvi (hood of a snake), Sīhālī (dish), Sabhā (meeting), Vici (wave), Sīhālī (place), Manjari (blossom), Vallari (creeper), Mandurā (rust of iron),

Lāksā (lac), Sūci (needle), Adhisanā (a contrivance), Sami (name of a tree), Maksikā (fly), Vikṛti (change, deformity), Yūkā (louse), Sikkhā (lock of hair), Sākhā (branch), and Atavi (forest)

O King ! Thus I have told you in short, the words denoting feminine gender. The wise persons know that the words ending with i, ī, ā, are all words denoting feminine-gender [13-15]

Thus ends the Adhyāya II indicating the feminine gender word-dictionary (Abhidhāna-Kose Strīlinga-nirdeśa Nāma), during the discourse between Markandeya and Vajra, in the third part of Sri Viṣṇudharmottara

---



Mārkaṇḍeya said Oh the expander of Yadu dynasty ! hereafter, I shall tell you about the words denoting Masculine gender. Please hear it [1]

Rājā (king), Kṛtākṣa ( ? ), Mūrdha (head), Ātmā (soul), Pāyu (Anus), Slesma (phlegm), Āśma (stone), Pūrāṇa (Ocean), Majjān (marrow), plihā (spleen), Nātādyakṣa ( ? ), are the nouns of masculine gender. [2]

Vrtra (name of a demon), Putra (son), Mantra (spell-hymn), Amantra (ordinary words), Rāśi (heap), Muhūrta (duration of time), Māsa (month), Pakṣa (fortnight), Abda and Vatsara (both meaning year) [3]

The names denoting the R̥tus (seasons), Kāla (time), Giri (saila) (silocaya, Naga and Ācala (all meaning mountain), the names of all gods and demons, and all the names for Mahodadhī (ocean) [4]

The names for the Samvatsara (Year), Divasa (days), Graha (planets) Vāsara and other words for Paṅka (mud), Sara (arrow), Ari (enemy) and Nistrinśa ( ? ) are in masculine gender [5]

The other words for the word Putra (son), and Pitr (father), the names for Kantha (neck) and Bāhu (hand) Stana (breast), Keśa (hair) and Rada (tooth) are of Masculine gender [6]

The names for Gulf (ankle), Karna (ear), Hanu (chin), Prasna (question), Vidyā (Brahmā), Nīdhī (reservoir), names for Kapola (cheeks and temple) Nirghosa (sound), Iksukā (sugar-cane), Keli (love sport) [7]

The words Kali (name of a yuga), Vighna (obstacle), Ghata (pot), Jūṣa (collection), Pata (cloth), Pāyu (Anus), Kuśa (Darbha grass) Ankuśa (control, goad), Bindu (drop), Svara (voice),

Kuṭhāra (axe), Pana (pledge), Sāna (touchstone) and Patah, Katah, are in Masculine gender. [8]

Words Vata (banyan tree), Vanṭha (bondage), Puṭa (capsule), Mrtyu (death), Manyu (anger) Sona (Red), Kīna (corn), fana (hood of the serpent), Guna (quality), Cūrṇa (Powder) Gana (group), Pantha (road), Adhvan (road), Anka (figure, number), Pūga (betel-nut), Kamandalu (A vessel made of Goard or wood), Palāṇḍu (onion), Ganda (Cheeks, temple), Sthūla (bulky), Kankaṭa (Iron hook, armour), Prastha (city) Sanḥa (conch-shell), Ratha (chariot), Rasa (juice), Varga (division), Tusa (the chaff of grain) and Busah (? Budhah) (wise) are in masculine gender [8-10]

The words Yava (barley), Māsa (bean), Sabda (sound), Sparśa (touch), Gandha (smell), Satha (a cunning man), Vanik (trader), Karīsa (fire), Tarala (wavery), Medhra (Ram, penis), Ratha (chariot), Mandapa (pavilion), Naraka (hell), Nūpura (anklet), Samudga (casket), Loka (world), Kasāya (red), Kona (angle), Musala (club), Kusūla, Sūrpa (snake) Dardura (frog), Panca (five), Pinyāka (saffron), Sūrpa, Vāta (wind), Danda (staff, stick) and Ankura (sprout) are all in masculine gender [11-13]

Kunaya (tree), Protha (blowing), Yūtha (group), Kunta (spear), Darpana (mirror), Venukā (a goad) Dhvaja (flag), Vamsa (dynasty), Venu (flute) Kṛimī (worm) Kalka (sin), Rsi (sage) Kandarā (cave) Pustaka (book), Adhvara (road), Vrihi (rice), Ambuda (cloud) Anjana (ointment), are all denoting masculine gender, O the chief of Yadu-dynasty ! Stambha (pillar) Paśu (animal), Dharma (religious-duty), Nidāgha (summer), Kumbha (pot), Kaṭa (mat), Kaṭāha (sauce pan), Yūpa (pillar), Stabaka (bunch), and Fena (foam), Nītamba (Buttock), sanda (eunuch), Kṣaya (residing) Supa (Broth), Yūpa (pillar)-are of Masculine gender. [13-15]

Thus ends the Adhyāya 12, entitled the names denoting the masculine gender, during the discourse between Mārkaṇḍeya and Vajra, in the third part of Śrī Viṣṇudharmottara

## ADHYĀYA . 13

Mārkaṇḍeya said : O the best of Kings ! Now I shall tell you the names denoting Antya-linga (the last neuter-gender). Please hear them from me [1]

O the best of Yadus ! All the names for water except Āpa and the words which are not mentioned before are in neuter gender [2]

And 6 the best of Yadus ! O Yādava ! Similarly the nouns having 'n' at the end, not mentioned before and all the names ending with अन् except 'Jaras' are of neuter-gender.

O Yādava ! All the words for Locana (eye) are in the neuter gender and all the names for Pūspa (flower) are in neuter-gender [3-4]

The words Sarīra (body), Asthi (bone), Dadhi (curd) and Sakthi (Sāthavo) Antra (intestines) Gudā (annus) and Jānu are neuter gender. Smaśru (mustaches), Kūla (bank), Kula (family), Parna (leaf), and all the names for iron (Loha-nāmāni) Aharniśa (day and night), Śakṛt (dung) Sakthi (the thighbone), Dhanu (bow), Śonita (blood), Dāru. Kṣīra (milk), Viśa (poison), Amṛta (nectar), Śanda (bull) and names for fruits and roots and Bala (Fala-mūla-nāmānti), are in neuter gender. [5-6]

Pura (city), Madhu (honey), Khala (Rascal), Nāla (tube) Cīvara (dress of a monk), Cira (silk-cloth), Ambara (sky), Gagana (sky), Ghana (cloud), Ākāśa (sky), Sukha and Dukha (happiness and unhappiness), Rūpa (well), Bija (seed), Palāla (straw), Talpa (a couch), Sadma (residence), Śava (dead body), Nimitta (reason), citta (mind), Pitta (yellow), Ogha (multitude), Takra (sourmilk), Sukra (semen), Bhaya (dānger) are in neuter gender [7-8]

Tirtha (place of Pilgrimage) Paṇḍara (cage), Ceta (garment) Phala (fruit), Dvandva (dual), Aksara (letter) Dhānya (food grains). Smaśāna (cemetery ground), Ratna (jewel), Agra (front), Sulva, Ratna, Yuga (millenium), Gopura, Pattana (city), Sainya (army), Mangala (auspicious), Āyudha (weapon) Khanī (digging) Nagara, Haritāla, Tāmra, Palita and Viśa, all these are in neuter gender. [9-10]

Smaśāna, Mithuna (couple) Tattva (essence), Kṛbisa (guilt), Vidala (cake), Hima (snow), Vṛnda (group) Kutuhala (inquisitiveness), Sīdhu (liquor), Sarāva (platter), Sikhara (peak), Pala (moment), Vṛtta (metre) Mukuta (crown), Panya (article for sale), Mala (dirt), Amsuka (cloth), Indriya (sense), Yugala (couple), Kṛta (bone of forehead), Kapāla (skull), Sūla (spike) Sekhara (cloves), Pātāla (one of the seven regions of the world), Vivara (hole, cave), Randhra (cavity) Chidra (hole), Ākāśa (sky), Trṇa (straw), Śubhra (white), Ira (fluid), Kunkuma (saffron), Suska (dry), Cīvara (garment of a monk), Mrnāla (lotus) Ajira (a sort of mouse-mole or frog), Khadga (sword), Tuhina (frost), dvāra (door), Āspada (abode), Rāstra (nation), Tala (bottom), Kṛṣṭa (worm), Kapha (phlegm), Āyu (span of life), Sthūla (fat), Khalina (bridle), Palāla (sesamum), Palāla (straw), Kāśṭha (wood), Rana (battle), Pārśva (side), Kukundara (a kind of tree), and Sandeha (doubt), Kam (water)-all these are in neuter gender. (11-15)

Thus ends the Adhyāya 13, entitled the vocabulary of nouns denoting neuter-gender, in Abhidhāna Kosa during the discourse between Mārkaṇḍeya and Vajra, in the third part of Sri Viṣṇu-dharmottara

---

## ADHYĀYA 14

Mārkandeya said Aum when one letter (consonant) is repeated (again and again in different words in a sentence), ancient scholars call it Anuprāsa Alamkāra (Alliteration) [1]

Oh King ! If it is over done it becomes rustic or vulgar (grāmya) When the words having similar sound but different meanings are used the Alamkāra is called Yamaka [2]

The word may be placed in the beginning, in the middle or at the end of the Pāda It is said that there are two varieties of Yamaka Samdastaka and Samudga [3]

It is said that, it is very difficult to compose Samasta-pāda-yamak, in which all the words are similar When there is similarity of Upamāna (the standard of comparison) and Upameya (the object of comparison) the Alamkāra is called Rupakam (Metaphor) [4]

If in Rupaka the attributes of Upameya surpass the attributes of Upamāna the Alamkāra is called Vyatireka, because there is the excess of the attribute [5]

When the attributes of Upameya are quite opposite to those of the Upamāna, it is called another type of Vyatireka When the same word convey two or three meanings, the Alamkāra is called Slesa (Pun) [6]

When a thing has one form, but it is poetically imagined to be another thing having another form, the ancient scholars call it Utpreksā Alamkāra (Poetic Fancy) [7]

Sometimes to support one relevant thing, another (general or particular) similar statement is brought forward to corroborate the meaning, the Alamkāra is called Arthāntaranyāsa (corroboration) [8]

Oh King ! When one thing is proposed, but another thing is mentioned, the *Alamkāra* is called *Upanyāsa* (*Parāya*). [9]

When some result is given but the cause is not mentioned, the *Alamkāra* is *Vibhāvanā* (*Peculiar Causation*)

If the qualities of the *Upameya* are described with exaggeration the *Alamkāra* is *Atiśayokti* (*Exaggeration*). [10]

When there is vivid and natural description the *Alamkāra* is called *Svabhāvokti* (*Natural description*).

When many things are to be mentioned and they are stated in their respective order, the ancient call the *Alamkāra*-*Yathā Sankhyam* (*respective enumeration*). Oh King ! When a particular point is emphasised, the *Alamkāra* is called *Viśesokti*. [11-12]

When a particular action gives rise to a result other than the natural one, the *Alamkāra* is called *Virodha* (*contradiction*).

If in form of praise censure is intended, the *Alamkāra* is *Nindā-stuti* (*Vyāja-stuti*-*Artful Praise*). And if in form of censure-praise is intended then also the *Alamkāra* is *Nindā-Stuti*. [13]

If to show similarity some thing is illustrated the *Alamkāra* is called *Nidarśanā* (*Illustration*). [14]

Oh brave King ! If without that, comparison (of a thing with a different thing) is made, it becomes an *Upamā Alamkāra*. When one thing is compared with itself only and nothing else, the *Alamkāra* is called *Ananvaya* (*self comparison*). I have described only a little from the *Purāna*. [15]

Thus ends the *Adhyāya* 14, entitled *Alamkāra-Adhyāya* (the study of Figure of Speech) related during the discourse between *Mārkaṇḍeya* and *Vajra*, in the third part of *Śrī Viṣṇudharmottara*.

Mārkaṇḍeya said Śāstra preaches Dharma Artha, Kāma and Mokṣa That which relates for our guidance, the deeds of good predecessors for fulfilment of Dharma, Artha, Kāma and Mokṣa is called Itihāsa The literature in which there is no direct preaching is called Kāvya [1-2]

In a poem the deeds of one person is described so it is called Kāvya Oh King ' the Kāvya in which Nāyaka (hero) and Pratināyaka (opponent) are the chief character and in which marches (of armies), sending of war messengers and battles are narrated and the rise (victory) of Nāyaka, is shown is called Mahā-Kāvya (Epic) [3-4]

Oh King ' In a Mahā-Kāvya the country, cities kings seasons, mountains rivers and women are described

Moreover Nāyaka and Pratināyaka also should be described Nāyaka should be following the path of righteous people and he should be victorious due to his religious deeds [5-6]

The Prati-nāyaka is Loka-vijayi (victorious in wordly things) The killing of Pratināyaka should be described that of the Nāyaka should not be described [7]

O Great King ' the death of the hero should not be described If he goes to heaven with his own body it can be described [8]

Without metres the Mahā-Kāvya would be in prose (Gadya) In a Mahā-Kāvya there should not be defects such as grammatically faulty words words whose syllables are difficult to pronounce sentences suggestive of obscenity, sentences whose meaning is difficult to guess and sentences which contain uncommon words One should not compose a poem in which there is (Punarukti) repetition [9-10]

But to show wonder, jealousy, fear sorrow, hurry or joy the repetition is desired But if a word is repeated in the utterance of a messenger, in an utterance in a dream and in an utterance to a person who has come for some work it should be known as 1 repetition [11-12]

A doubtful thing should not be stated Similarly without proposition nothing should be told The later statement contradictory to the former one should not be made and the thing contemptible by people should not be related [13]

A poem having Rasas (sentiments) named Sṛṅgāra Hāsyā Karuṇa Raudra Vīra and Bhayānaka Bibhatsa, Adbhuta and Sānta should be composed [14]

The poem should be full of art and skill Moreover it should be endowed with Dharma and Artha A poem should be composed about a religious Nāyaka leading to his rise [15]

Thus ends the Adhyāya 15, entitled the characteristics of an Epic (Mahā-Kāvya Lakṣaṇam), described during the discourse between Mārkaṇḍeya and Vajra in the third part of Śrī Viṣṇu dharmottara

---



Mārkandeya said Some Kāvya-Dosas are mentioned From them Prahelikās are to be made and there are some independent [1]

Oh best among men A Prahelikā should be expressed through only one or two verses O King ! it should not be composed in many verses [2]

When the meaning is concealed on account of a Mātrā the Prahelikās called Samāgatā When the meaning is concealed by means of synonymous words it is called Vācītā [3]

The meaning of Vikrānta-roṣitā is concealed by intermediary words When the meaning is concealed by obsolete synonyms it is called Musitā [4]

When the meaning is concealed by the imagination it is called Parihāsikā

In Samānarūpā the meaning is hidden by different words having the same meaning [5]

That whose meaning is hidden on account of using the syllables difficult to understand is called Parusā When the meaning is hidden only on account of using the words denoting Samkhyā (number), it is called Samkhyātā [6]

When the meaning is hidden by the apparent meaning it is called Kalpitā When the meaning is hidden by misunderstanding a Saṃjñā, it is called Nāmāntarītā [7]

O Great King ! when the meaning is hidden by misunderstanding the meaning of words it is called Nibhrtā When the meaning is hidden by identical words it is called Samāna-Sabda [8]

When the meaning becomes difficult to be understood on account of concordance of the meaning, it is called Vyāmūdha

When the meaning is hidden on account of various Bandhās in the Vṛtta (metre), it is called Guḍhā. [9]

When real meaning is hidden by not mentioning one or both (of Āśraya and Āśrita) it is called Elachannā, Ubhaya-channā or Bahuchannā. When the meaning, is concealed on account of many possibilities of meaning, it is called Samkirna or Sambhavopetā. [10]

If by the obvious meaning, another meaning is intended but concealed, it is called Tadartha-kārt. O King ! the same effect is achieved through a word, it is called Vyabhicārinī. [11]

When the meaning becomes clear by (putting the missing) Mātrās in a Vṛtta-bandha, it is called khyāpita. When the meaning is hidden by Vṛttabandha, it is called Naṣṭārtha. [12]

When the meaning is concealed due to want of one Akṣara, it is called Naṣṭāksara-O King ! when the meaning is changed because of a missing Varna, it is called Anyārthatā. [13]

When the meaning becomes clear by interpretation according to different tenses, it is called Arthadā. O King ! the seed of the meaning is suggested, it is called Leśākya. [14]

O King ! the poets have said that, in all these varieties of Prahelikās, no obscene meaning should ever be suggested. Because the poem with obscene meaning Aśīla-bandha engrieve good people and hence that kind of poem does not give pleasure. [15]

Thus ends the Adhyāya 16. entitled the characteristics of Prahelikās, during the discourse between Mārkaṇḍeya and Vajra, in the third part of Śrī Viṣṇudharmottara.

---

Aum Vajra said : Mantras are told along with Brāhmanas (by Mahārṣis). Brāhmanas describe their meaning. Kalpa means Kalpanā Kalpa (It is Vedāṅga prescribing the ritual sacrifice). O twice born (Brahmin) ! The form that tells their meaning is called Purāṇa. First quarter (Prathama pāda) of Purāṇa is Prakriyā (procedure) taking up of Kathāvastu (the plot) [2]

Other three pādas are Upodghāta (introduction) Anuṣaṅga and Upasamhāra (conclusion). O son of Bhṛgu race ! thus Purāṇa has four Pādas (quarters). [3]

The Purāṇa has five characteristics (Lakṣaṇas) Sarga, Prati-Sarga, Manvantara, Varṇa and Varṇānucaritam. [4]

Purāṇa contains all types of knowledge. The characteristics of Songs (Gīta-Lakṣaṇa), Nṛtta Lakṣaṇa-(characteristics of Dance) and the characteristics of Nāṭaka and Ākhyāna are given in it. [5]

Therefore O twice born (Brahmin) ! I ask you about the characteristics of Nāṭaka along with its varieties. You know everything with distinctions. So O almighty ! Kindly tell me about them. [6]

Mārkaṇḍeya said : In a Nāṭaka there is the review of Purāṇas according to Itihāsa (history), or in a Nāṭaka there is the life-history of Gods. [7]

In the Kāvya (i.e. Nāṭaka) there may be one Nāyaka, or there can be a Nāyaka and a Pratināyaka (Hero and his rival). [8]

O King ! all the Vṛttis, all the sentiments (Rasas) and all the usages of tenses (Kālas) should be demonstrated in the Nāṭaka, by some contrivance. [9]

It is said that there can be five acts or auspicious ten acts in a Nāṭaka, O King ! in one act the activities of one episode :- to be represented. [10]

Thereafter the activities of other characters should be exhibited. Their exit should be contrived with some Yukti (device) and Upanyāsa [11]

O King ! the incidents such as death, dethronement, the siege of a city and the fight should not be shown in the act [12]

The wise men should describe these incidents in a Pravesaka. There should always be two characters in a Pravesaka and the characters should be of the servant class (Parijane). The hero (Nāyaka) should not be there. When the two characters are not from servant-class it is called a viskambhaka [13-14]

At the end of both (Pravesaka and Viskambhaka) the stage should be made empty. Similarly at the end of the act it should be made empty. Except that the stage should not be made empty [15]

In a Pravesaka the activities of many days can be narrated. There the narration should be brief, not lengthy [16]

In the Pravesaka the killing of a famous hero should not be brought. O King ! it should be suggested only in the act itself by some device [17]

The rise of the hero should be shown at the end of the Nāṭaka. Similarly, where there are many heroines, their rise also should be shown [18]

The Nāṭikā is like a Nāṭaka, but it consists of four acts, and its Rasa is predominantly Srṅgāra. Similarly in a Prakaraṇa the plot is imaginary [19]

O the best of Kings ! There the hero is a brahmin or a merchant. A Prakaraṇa should be written on the same line, but there should be four acts [20]

The plot of Utsrṣṭakāṇka is either derived from Itihāsa (history) or it is imaginary. Mostly the Vṛtti is Bhāratī and the Rasa is Karuṇa. A god should not be made the hero. utsrṣṭa is without Dīvyā Nāyaka.

In Bhāna the plot should be derived from Itihāsa. It should represent the activities of one day. It consists of one act and it is full of fights. The entire action is performed by one actor only, by means of talking through the device of Ākāśa-Kathana (speeches in air) [21-23]

In the variety named Samavakāra there are twelve heroes. They may be gods or demons. There are three Śṛṅgāras and three Kapaṭas, [24]

In Ihāmṛga there are many acts, and a Gandharva is the hero. Its predominant Rasa is Śṛṅgāra. The Rasa should arise from dissatisfaction of Yoni-Rasa (Sex-enjoyment) [25]

In Vyāyoga the activities of one day is represented. There is one hero and the Rasa is Dr̥pta (from Darpa i.e. Vira, Raudra etc.) In Vithi there are thirteen acts but there is no hero [26]

In Dīpa the same (Dr̥pta) Rasa, particularly Raudra is there, god is the hero and the theme is well-known [27]

Prahasana should be composed thus. There should be one act. There should be plenty of Hāsyā Rasa. The hero should be Udātta and there should be courtesans and Viṣas [28]

In all these varieties, in the very beginning the theme of the play should be illumined through the utterances of the Sūtra-dhāra [29]

O King ! the speeches of the hero are in Sanskrit language. So are the speeches of Sanyāsīs, Śrotrīyas, Kings, Twice-born (Brahmins, Kṣatriyas and Vaisyas), Gods, demons, Gandharvas and Nāgas [30]

O King ! the speech of Nāyikās, heavenly damsels (Apsarās), Pretenders and Vidusakās should be in Prākṛta language [31]

The language of children, women, low-born persons, eunuchs and those not mentioned here in Apa-bhramṣa. It should be learnt and used [32]

Now hear from me some characteristics, which are contrived by me. The names of Brahmins, Kṣatriyas, Vaiśyas and Śūdras end in Śarman, Varman and Dhana respectively. Sometimes the name of the Vaiśya ends in Dāsa. [33]

The names of the kings and ministers end in Vikrama. The names of the ladies should be such that can be easily uttered. They should not be harsh. The names of the Nāyikās should be sweet and attractive. [34]

The names of attendant-women of the queen should end in Kalā and Kauśalā, and the names of other attendant-women should end in Vijayā. [35]

The names of the astrologer should end in Māṅgalya and those of Purohitas generally end in Śānti. The names of the ministers generally end in Śūra and those of physicians end in Āyusya. [36]

The name of Viṣas generally end in Bhūsana and those of Dāsas end in Kusuma etc. (or their names may be the names of flowers etc.)

Kancukis and Vidusaka must be given the names of their Ṛṣi or Gotra respectively. [37]

The names of courtesans should end in Dattā, Mitṛā and Senā. The names of the office-bearers should be according to their office. [38]

Hereafter I shall tell you how a person should be addressed.

The servants and ministers should address the king as Deva. [39]

The Brahmins should address the king as Rājan and Ṛṣis should address the King by the name or Gotra, as if he were their child. [40]

And those who are equal in rank should call him Vayasya (a friend) The heroes should address the Vidusaka as Vayasya And the Rathī (sitting in the chariot) may be called Āyusmān, by sūta (the chariot driver) [41]

The Rsis Gurus and Gods should be addressed as Bhagavan A son should be addressed as Vatsa, and a student should be addressed as Vṛtsa or by his name and the family-name [42]

O King ! a woman should address her husband as Āryaputra The wife should be addressed by her name, but the queen and the heroine should be addressed as Devī [43]

The father should be addressed as Tāta but the father of the mother should be addressed as Āryaka, Pitā

The Yuva-rāja (crown-prince) is addressed as Kumāra while a respectable person is addressed as Bhāva [44]

A respectable person, the husbands to wife and the prince should be addressed as Bhāma A woman of equal rank should be addressed as Halā A maid-servant should be addressed as Hanjā or Handā A sister should be called Svasā, while a Sanyāsini should be addressed as Vṛatini ! [45-46]

A Brahmin lady should be addressed as Āryā and the rest according to the gender [47]

One who moves in the female-apartment and who is incapable of enjoying a woman is known as Varsavara Their head is called a Kancukī He is generally an old Brahmin and he is respected by the Kings [48]

Vidusaka is also a Brahmin He knows the secrets of the hero O King ! Sutradhāra is the principal actor (Nāṭa) [49]

The sowing of the seed (bīja-samutpatti) capable of giving rise to the variety of rasas is called Mukha Sprouting of the seed sown in the mukha is called Prati-mukha [50]

The possibility of getting the result as well as its opposite is called Garbha. When the purpose of the *bija* opens up and yet is accompanied with difficulties and adversities, it becomes *Vimarśa*. [51]

Carrying to completion of things started in *Mukha* etc., is called *Nirvahana*. In a *Nāyaka*, alongwith *Prakarana* all these *Pāñcha-Sandhis* should be observed. [52]

In *Dīpa* and *Samavakāra*, *Vimarśa* should be omitted. In *Vyāyoga* and *Ihāmrga*, *Garbha* is to be omitted. And O King ! in *Utsrstakāṅka*, *Prahasana*, *Vithi* and *Bhānaka Pratimukha* should not be developed. [53-54]

The *Nāyaka* should never give up his generosity, good behaviour and valour. O King ! the *Prati-Nāyaka* should not win-over the *Nāyikā*. [55]

Henceforth I shall tell you about eight types of *Nāyikās* and their characteristics.

The heroine who remains in her own apartment on account of her own fault is called *Vāsa-Sajjā*. [56]

The heroine whose hero has not come is called *Virahotkanthitā*. One whose husband is under her full control is called *Swādhīna-Bhartṛkā*, [57]

The heroine who is separated from her hero on account of quarrel is called *Kalahāntarītā*. One whose *Nāyaka* comes in the early morning with the signs of nails etc. (of other woman) is called *Khanditā*, [58]

The heroine whose lover has not kept appointment is called *Vipralabdā*. And one whose lover has gone on travel is called *Prosita-bhartṛkā*. [59]

(The eighth *Abhisārikā* is not mentioned)

All the twelve varieties of drama etc., should exhibit the proper forms and graces of these different types of *Nāyikās*. [60]



There are nine Nāṭya-Rasas : Sṛṅgāra, Hāsyā, Karuṇa, Vīra, Raudra, Bhayānaka, Bībhatsa, Adbhuta, and Śānta, [61]

O King ! All the varieties should be composed keeping Rasa in view, because the principal aim in all types of drama is Rasa. [62]

O moon among Kings ! All these types of drama should be composed with Kalā-Kauśala (art, proficiency and morality), and they should be Loka-Vidhāna-Yukta (endowed with Social Customs and Manners). They should teach Dharma, Artha and Kāma, for the good of people. [63]

Thus ends the Adhyāya 17, entitled Dvādaśa-Rūpa-Varnana (the description of twelve Rūpaka), during the discourse between Mārkaṇḍeya and Vajra, in the third part of Śrī Viṣṇudharmottara.

---

Markandeya said

Now the characteristics of music (Gīta-Laksana) begin -

For music there are three sthānas (organs of utterance Urah (chest), Kanthah (throat) and Sirah (head) They give rise to three notes-Mandra (low or base), Madhya (middle) and Tāra (high) There are three Grāmas Śadja, Madhyama and Gāndhāra. There are seven notes (Sapta Svarāh)-Sadja, Rsabha, Gāndhāra, Madhyama, Pancama, Nisāda and Dhaivata There are twenty one Mūrchanās (intonations) of Sapta-Svaras dependent on each of three grāmas Their names are · Sauviri, Hārīnāsava, Kalopana-tā, Śuddha-madhyamā, Mārgi, Pauravi and Rsyakā These seven belong to Madhyama-Grāma [They are called Uttara Mandrā, Rajanī] Uttarāyatā, Suddhasadajā, Matsari-Kṛtā, Aśva-Krāntā and Udgatā. These seven belong to Sadaja-Grāma Ālāpā, Kuntimā, Śuddhā, Uttarā, Sadajā, Pancāyatā and Udgatā-these seven depend on Gāndhāra-Grāma

Now there are forty nine (key-notes) Tānās They are Agniṣṭomikah, Atyagniṣṭomikah, Vājapeyikah, Paundarikah, Āsvamedhikah, Rājasūyikah, Bahu-Suvarnikah, Gosavikah, Mahāvratikah, Brahma-tānah, Prājāpatyah, Nāgāśrayah, Yajñāśrayah, Godānikah, Haya-Krāntah, Aja-Krāntah, Viṣnu-Krāntah, Aranyah Matta-Kokilah and Ujjivikah These twenty depend on Madhyama-Grāmas Prasvāpanam Paisācah, Jivanah, Sāvitrāh, Ardha-Sāvitrāh, Sarvato-Bhadrah, Suvarṇah, Viṣnuh, Jisnuh, Viṣnu-Narah, Śāradah, Vijayah, Hamsah and Jyestbah These fourteen depend on Śadja-Grāma Tumburu-Priyah, Mahā-Lakṣmanah, Gandharvānumatah, Alambusapriyah, Nārada-priyah, Bhīmasena-priyah, Vinatah, Mātangah, Bhārgava-priya, Abhirāmah, Samśrāvyah, Kinnara-priyah, Punyah, Manohara, Kalyāna-karah These fifteen depend on Gāndhāra-Grāma These are four types Due to the combination of Svara-note, Pada-note, Laya-note and Avadhāna-

note, in Murchanās in the beginning, middle and end there are three Vrttis named Vādi, Samvādi and Anuvādi. The nine Rasas mentioned earlier are related with these musical notes. For Hāsya and Śrngāra Madhyama and Pancam are used, for Vīra, Raudra and Adbhuta Śadja and Rṣabha are used, for Karuna Nisāda and Gāndhāra are used, for Bībhatsa, and Bhayānaka Dhaivata is used and for Śānta Madhyama is used. Similarly for different Rasas different Layas are used :

For Śrngāra and Hāsya Madhyama is used. For Bībhatsa and Bhayānaka Vilambita and for Vīra, Raudra and Adbhuta Druta is used.

In (Rūpakas) pure musical composition practice of singing should be used for the worship of divine. Here are the Ślokas.

A wise man should know ten Laksanas of Jātis : Graha, Anśa, Tāra, Mandra, Nyūsa, Upanyāsa, Alpatvam, Bahutvam, Śādhava, Odava. [1]

O King ! there are four kinds of Alamkāras : Prasannādiḥ, Prasannāntah, Prasannādyantah, and Prasanna-madhyas. They should be pointed out one by one. [2-3]

There are different types of musical compositions, namely Aparāntakam, Ullopyam, Mandrakam, Prakari, Vainakam, Sarobindum, Gītakāni which are the best, Rk-Gāthā, Pāṇikā, and Brahma-Gītikā composed by Dakṣa. Their singing practice is called Cokṣah. [4-5]

I have briefly described for pleasing gods. If the man well-versed in music (Gītajña) does not reach the highest place (Sumum bonum) by music, he would become a servant of God and enjoy bliss in his company, [6]

Thus ends the Adhyāya 18, entitled Gīta-Lakṣana (characteristics of Gīta-Vocal Music) during the discourse between Mārkaṇḍeya and Vajra in the third part of Śrī Viṣṇudharmottara.

## ADHYĀYA : 19

Mārkandeya said : Now Ātodya (Instrumental Music) is stated. There are four kinds of musical instruments : Tata (stringed instrument), Susira (wind instrument), Ghana (Metallic instrument) and Avanaddha (stretched instrument e.g. Drum). Vinā etc. are Tata, Flute etc. are Susira, Cymbal etc. are Ghana and Muraja (drum) etc. are Avanaddha. There the musical notes of Vinā etc. are the same as in Vocal music. The notes of flute etc. are also like that. But in vocal music, the notes rise from below to upwards, while in the stringed instruments such as Vinā etc. and Wind instruments such as flute etc. the order is reversed. So Tālah and Kālah should be used accordingly. Their Mātrās are equal to five short syllables. There are three Vṛttis : Cītrā, Vṛtti and Dakṣiṇā. Chitrā has two Mātrās, Vṛtti has four Mātrās and Dakṣiṇā has eight Mātrās. Now let us enter into Avayā, Niskrāma and Viksepah-In the collection of Kalā there are differences in Śyāmatāla and Sannipāta (stretching a cord) and Capuṣa. Ayuk, Cancat, Puṣala and the end of Pluta are five types of cord and like 'father and son' there are six types of syllables.

There are three Layas : Druta, Madhya and Vilambita. The Tāla must have Laya. The Prakarana is of two kinds : Kulakam and Chedyakam.

Now about Avanaddham (Muraja-ādi), there should be accompaniment like Puskara. There are sixteen syllables-Ka, Kha, Ga, Gha, Ṭa, Ṭha, Ḍa, Ḍha, Ta tha Da Dha, Ya, Ra, La, Ha, On the right side are Kā, Ṭā, Rā (Thā) and Tā, Gā, etc. On the left side are Ghā, Ḍhā, on the upside are Gā, Ḍā in the Ālinga (kind of drum) are Ṭhā, Ṇā, Lā and Hā. A, Ā, I, U, Ac, O, Ah, Au Am etc. are Vowels according to the circumstances (they go with consonants). Kha, ga, Tha are conjoined

with Refa Its differences are the division of Kah The complete hand should attack then lift one finger and from the whole hand Pradesini is taken up, then it becomes Yoga of Nalla From the complete hand the half hand should be lifted By attacking the Pradesini of two hands, it becomes the samapāni Ma Gha, Tha, Ga, Da, Ra are from half the hand, for Kathaka, quarter hand, Tha, Na La, Ha by attacking Pradesini in two hands Additā, Vitastā, Ālīpta are the way to the face of cow

In Srngara and Hāsya Rasa Additah, in Vira, Raudra and Adbhuta Vitastah in Karuna and Sānta Ālīpta, in Bībhatsa and Bhayānaka Mrdanga follows Gomukha, Dardura and Panava follow the Mrdanga Here are -

There the Musicians sit just near the door of dressing room in such a way that they are properly visible Murajās would sit behind them and so would sit Mārjanikās [1]

On its left side Dardura and Panavas should be placed From the right the singer would sit facing to the north, and to right the players of flutes

The singers should be seated facing the main singer [2-3]

Thus ends the Adhyāya 19, entitled (Ātodya-Vidhi) the procedure in Instrumental Music, during the discourse between Mārkaṇdeya and Vajra in the third part of Śrī Viṣṇudharmottara



## ADHYĀYA 20

Mārkaṇḍeya said

O King ! The Scholars of Nāṭya has said that the imitation of other than onself is called Nāṭya Nr̥tta makes it sophisticated and adds to its beauty Nr̥tta is said to be of two types Nāṭya and Lāsya on which Nāṭya depends O King ! Each of them is divided into two parts Ābhyantara and Bāhya [1-2]

Ābhyantara follows precise rules (it is Lakṣanavantaṁ) while Bāhya is not regulated by any precise rules (it is Lakṣana-vivarjitaṁ) Its performance is auspicious [3]

Lāsya should be performed under a pavilion (Mandape) or outside it, according to wish, while Nāṭya should be performed under a Pavilion The Pavilion is of two types [4] Āyata (oblong) and Caturasra (square) The square one should be made thirty-two Hastas (hands), while the length of the oblong should be made double of this The Pavilion should not be made smaller or larger than this, but it should be such that-

If it is smaller, there will be congestion (Sammardo) and if it is larger, there will not be proper manifestation (Vyakti) of Nāṭya and Geya So it should be avoided In the very beginning the worship of Gods should be performed [5-6-7]

The elderly persons and the specific god of the building (Vāstu-daivata) should be performed And there after the Nāṭya should be performed beginning with benedictory (Nāṇḍi Śloka) [8]

The opening the curtain the entry of every character should be made The entry and exit should be made after suggesting the action [9]

At the end of the Nāṇḍi Puspāñjali should be given and Brahmapūjana should be made In reciting and singing and the strides (Paṭikramah) should be according to the character [10]

The Parikrama of the Nāyaka should be Catuṣkala (four-fold), that of the ordinary, middle-class characters should be Tri-kala, that of the low-class should be Two-kala. O King ! According to the action one may be more or less. [11]

One should know that Gods are Dhiroddhata (solemn and courageous) the Demons should be rash and daring. [12]

The Kings should be Dhīra-Lalita (brave and sportive) and his dependants are Dhīra. The sages are Praśānta-dhīras (very calm and solemn), their followers are Praśānta. [13]

The Brahmins are Dhīrodāttah (grave and noble-minded), and the merchants are believed to be noble. Getting a chance all these persons are described in this way.

In the work of Nāṭya (Nāṭya-Karma) four kinds of Abhinaya (acting) should be made : Āhārya (Veśa-bhūṣā), Sātvika (Bhāvas feelings), Vācika (of speech) and Āngika (of body-limbs). [14-15]

The costumes of head etc. is called Āhārya. The costumes of Dhiroddātta characters should not be very gaudy. [16]

Those of Uddhata should be gaudy and those of the Kings should be Lalita (graceful). The costumes of the Pratināyaka should be made like that of the Uddhata characters. [17]

The costumes of the other characters should be according to the country and the profession. The horse etc., should be made of leather, wood etc. [18]

Hereafter I tell you about the Sātvika-Abhinaya (acting of Sātvika-bhāvas etc. feelings) shading tears, horripilation, sweating, throbbing of heart, and faltering speech are Sātvika-Abhinaya. The acting by speech is called Vācika. I shall tell you about Āngika afterwards. [19-20]

At the place where joy is to be expressed, one should always do much acting, but when sorrow is to be expressed nothing more should be done. [21]

Recakam (outward movement of limbs) depends on waist, feet, hands and head. It is believed that another type of movement is of two kinds. Mahācārī and Cārī. [22]

O Yādava ! Delicate (Sukumāra) movements of limbs is called Cārī. O King ! When they are forceful they are known as Mahācārī. [23]

In this context with Cārī there are ten Mandalas. Of this Atikrānta, Vicitra, Lalita, Sanchara, Sūciṣiddha, Dandapāda, Vihṛta, Alāta, Vāma-bandha, Salalita and Krānta are Ākāśagāmi (aerial) movements [24-25]

O King ! Now please hear about ten Bhauma Mandalas (earthly movements). They are Bhramara, Āskandita, Āvarta, Samāśarita, Eḍḍakṛidita, Addita, Śakaṭāśya, Adhyardha, Pīṣṭakūṭṭa, and Cāsa-gaṭi.

Now I shall tell you about Angahāra. You know their names from me [26-28]

They are (1) Sthira-hasta Anga-hāra and (2) Āksiptaka. The third is (3) Udghāṭita and the other one is (4) Aparāṇita [29]

Then (5) Mattākṛidā, (6) Viśkambha, (7) Svastika Recita, (8) Vṛścikāpasṛta and (9) Tala-manda, and (10) Ava Sarpita [30]

(11) Matallī-skhalita, (12) Bhramara, (13) Pāśvasvastika, (14) Madavilasita, (15) Viśipta, (16) Gatimandala, (17) Vaiśākha-recita, (18) Parivṛttaka-recita, (19) Udvartaka, (20) Paricchinna (21) Recaka and (22) Balāhaka [31]

(23) Sambhrānta, (24) Āṅgika, (25) Rati-kṛidā, (26) Alātaka (27) Vidyudbhṛānta, (28) Parāvṛta (29) Pāśvaccheda, (30) Āksipta Recita, (31) Saumya, (32) Karita, (33) Sūciṣiddha, (34) Apa-Viddha, (35) Vṛāpa and (36) Ardhanakūṭṭita [32-34]

O the best of Yadus, these thirty six Angahāras\* are told. I shall tell you their respective Karanas (instrumental organs). The performer should adopt the movements of hands and legs properly [35]

---

\* N S gives only thirty-two Angahāras



The utilization of all the Angahāras constitute the Karana I shall tell them to you by name and by action [36]

Proper coordination of the movements of hands and legs constitute the Karana of Nr̥tta O King! two such movements constitute Nr̥tta-Mātrkāś [37]

Combination of three such movements form a Kalāpaka, four form a khandaka, and the combination of five is called a Sam-ghātaka. [38]

The combination of six, or seven, or eight or nine Karanas are called the Anghāras [39]

Hereafter I shall tell you their names They are (1) Talapūspa, (2) Apa-Viddha, (3) Lina, (4) Svastika-recita, (5) Mandala-Svastika, (6) Urūvṛtta, (7) Nikuṭṭaka (8) Sūci-viddha, (9) Kaṭichinna, (10) Ardha-recita, (11) Vaksah Svastika, (12) Unmatta (13) Svastika, (14) Prsthasvastika, (15) Dik-Svastika, (16) Alāta (17) Ardha-sūci, (18) Kaṭi-sama, [40-42]

(19) Āksipta-recita, (20) Kṣipra, (21) Ardha-Svastika, (22) Sancita, (23) Bhujanga-trāsita, (24) Ūrdhva-jānu, (25) Nikuncita, (26) Mattallī, (27) Ardha-mattallī, (28) Recaka-Nikuṭṭaka, (29) Pādī-viddha, (30) Tadīd-Bhr̥nta (31) Valita, (32) Ghūrṇita [43-44]

(33) Lalita (34) Danda-pakṣa (35) Bhujanga-trastarecita, (36) Nūpura, (37) Recita (38) Bhramara, (39) Catura, (40) Bhujangāncita (41) Chinna (42) Vṛścikarecita (43) Latā-Vṛścika, (44) Chinna-Vṛścika-Recita, (45) Vyamsita - Vṛścika, (46) Sūci-viddha (47) Lalāṭatilaka, (48) Kunchita, (49) Cakra-mandala [45-47]

(50) Uro-Mandala, (51) Āksipta, (52) Latā-Lasita, (53) Ārgala (54) Vikṣipta, (55) Bhramita, (56) Vilāsa, (57) Vānara-pluta, (58) Parivṛtta, (59) Navṛtta (60) Pārśvākṛānta (61) Nikuncita, (62) Ati-kṛānta, (63) Aśa-kṛānta, (64) Dolā-pāda, (65) Vivartita, (66) Nāga-prakṛita, (67) Vipluta, (68) Garuda-pluta, (69) Ganda-Sūci (70) Parikṣipta, (71) Pārśva-Jānuka [48-50]

(72) Gṛddhāvalīnaka, (73) Līna, (74) Viṣṇu-kṛānta, (75) Ajapluta, (76) Ākrānta, (77) Manditā (78) Mayūra-lalita, (79) Nata, (80) Sarpita, (81) Dola-pāda (82) Harina-pluta, (83) Prenkholita, (84) Nīlamba, (85) Skhalita, (86) Karī-hasta (87) Prasarpita-tāla (88) Simha-vikṛidita, (89) Vṛṣabha-kṛidita (90) Gangāvataraṇa, etc

Thus I have narrated one hundred and eight\* Karanas [51-53]

It is said that the Nṛtta is of two types Sukumāra and Viddha. The Viddha is Uddhata or violent form of dance, mainly performed by men. And Sukumāra is graceful mainly performed by women. O King ! the Pīndī is having the shape and symbol of a deity [54-55]

There are four kinds of Vṛttis Bhārati, Sātvati, Kaiśikī and Ārabhaṭī. In Bhārati speech predominates [56]

O King ! One should know that Sātvati mainly exhibits Vira-Rasa, Ārabhaṭī is full of Raudra-Rasa and in Kaiśikī there is predominance of Śṛṅgāra and Hṛīya-Rasa.

There are four kinds of Pravṛtti. Āvanti, Dakṣiṇātyā, Māgadhi, Pāncālī. Pravṛtti is the imitation of the dress, speech and conduct of people in a particular region. They are based on Vṛttis, so they are known as Pravṛttis.

There are two types of actions (Dharmī-dharmīs) of the stage and of the world [57-60]

In Nāṭya there are two types of Siddhis (accomplishments) - human and divine. The human is achieved by exercise (Vyāyāma), while the divine is due to the favour of a deity [61]

The ideal Nṛtta is full of Rasi and Bhāva. It follows Tāla, Kāvya-Rasa and Gītā. It gives happiness and increases Dharma [62]

Thus ends the Adhyāya 20 entitled Sāmānya-Varnana (general description), during the discourse between Mārkaṇḍeya and Vajra, in the third part of Sri Viṣṇudharmottara.

---

\* V D mentions 108 Karanas but gives a list of 90 karanas. It means that the ślokas of remaining karanas are missing.

Mārkaṇḍeya said Six modes of Sayyāsthānāni (postures in the bed) should be mentioned They are Sama, Ākuncitaka, Prasārita, Vivartita, Udvāhita, and Nata [1]

When one is lying with face up-wards, hands are free and loose, or when one is lying on the left side, the posture is called Sama. [2]

When one is lying down with limbs narrowed down-all the limbs curved and the knees contracted in bed, it is called Ākuncita posture It should be adopted when troubled by cold (Śītārta) [3]

When one is lying at ease, with one hand used as a pillow and the knees stretched, the posture is called Prasārita [4]

When one is lying down with the face downwards it is called Vivartita This posture should be used for the person wounded by weapon, the dead, the drunk and thrown down [5]

When one is lying down at ease with the head resting on the hand-the head lies on the shoulders and the elbow is raised, the posture is known as Udvāhita O King ' that should be used to indicate the playful mood. [6]

When one is lying down with stretched thighs (Janghās) and the hands loose, the posture is called Nata That acting is used to indicate sloth, fatigue and exertion [7]

Thus ends the Adhyāya 21, entitled the description of the postures of lying down on the bed (Sayyāsana-sthāna-Varnana), during the discourse between Mārkaṇḍeya and Vajra in the third part of Śrī Viṣṇudharmottara

## ADHYĀYA 22

Mārkaṇḍeya said

The postures of sitting are Svastha Mandālaśa klānta Śrastālaśa Viśkambhita, Utkataka, Mukta-jānu and Sama-jānugata and Vimukta [1-2]

When one is sitting, the legs held apart chest somewhat raised and hands lying at ease on the waist and thigh, the sitting posture is called Svastha This posture is used to indicate ease [2-3]

In Mandālaśa posture of sitting one leg is stretched and the other is put on the seat while the side is bent It is used to show anxiety eagerness, dejection and seperation [3-4]

In klānta āsana-sitting posture, the actor should put his chin on the top of two arms, the head should rest on the top of two hands This posture should be used when one is seized by a strong person or bitten by an enemy or depressed on account of sorrow [5-6]

When two hands are hanging down, the body is inactive and eyes are tired and dull the sitting posture is called Śrastālaśa It should be used to indicate fatigue, lassitude, intoxication, fainting, pain swoon and peril of death [7-8]

In Viśkambhita posture the legs, thighs and the hands are all curved up and the eyes are bent towards one's own chest This posture is enjoyed in Yoga and meditation [9-10]

When one sits evenly with both the feet in the same level and not touching ground, it is known as Utkataka posture It is advised that this natural posture should be used when persons

sit as members of an assembly, or when they perform śrāddhas, sacrifices, meditation, chanting mantras and Homa-Havana etc., as in Yathāgamana-Karma-act of coming. [11-12]

O the best of Kings ! When one knee of a person sitting in the abovementioned (Utkāṣaka) posture is put on the ground it is called Mukta-Jānuka Āsana. It is used in conciliating the beloved when offended. It is also used in cleansing the floor and in covering the ground with dung (Bhūmi-anulepane). When both the knees are placed on the ground the posture is called Jānugata. It should be done while supplication before Kings and while worshipping Gods.

When one falls down on the ground it is called Vimukta posture. It is used when some one gets a blow or in excitement and in lamentation. [13-16]

The seat of gods is Bhadrāsana (splendid seat). The seat of Kings should be Simhāsana. [17]

A silver seat (Rūpyāsana) should be offered to Sāmivatsara (Astrologers) and Purodhasas (domestic chaplain), the seat of ministers and secretaries should be Vetrāsana (cane seat). The commander of the army and the crown prince should be given Mandāsana (made of Manda Herb). O Great King ! To Munis (Sages), Dvija (Brahmins) and Brahmachāris (ascetics) and others who observe vows the seat of Vṛsi (a roll of twisted grass or pad) should be given. [18-19]

Piṭhikā (a wooden seat Bājāṣṭh) is given to the important local persons, or prominent citizens and leading merchants and prominent persons. [20]

O King ! One should not have a common seat with one's own spiritual master, either on an elephant or on a chariot or on a slab of stone. If one sits with a spiritual master, on a large plank, it is always considered to be a fault [23]

Thus ends the Adhyāya 22, entitled the description of seats (Āsana-Varnana), during the discourse between Mārkaṇḍeya and Vajra, in the third part of *Sri Viṣṇudharmottara*.

---

Mārkaṇḍeya said There are six Sthānakas (standing postures) of men They are Vaiṣṇava, Sama-pāda, Vaiśākha, Mandala, Pratyāhḍha and Āhḍha [1]

When one foot is in natural position, the other one is tryasra (obliquely placed) and the thigh is slightly bent, the standing posture is called Vaiṣṇava Sthāna. [2]

This standing posture should be used when one is talking at ease

When one stands with feet evenly placed at a distance of a Tāla (12 angulas), the posture should be known as Sama-pāda Sthānaka It is having the beauty of naturalness Rudra, Brahmā and other Gods are the deities of this Sthānaka The group of Brahmins performing auspicious acts should be in this posture. This posture is also used to indicate jumping of birds, marriage ceremony, and position of person sitting in chariots or Vimānas (air-planes) This posture should be used for ascetics and the persons practising penance. [3-6]

When the distance between two feet is two and half tālas, thighs are slanting and feet are sideways, the standing posture is called Vaiśākha

Its deity is Skanda The wise should use this posture to indicate the carriage drawn by horses It is also to be used for exercise and for entrance and exit of the bow [7-8]

In Mandala posture the distance between two feet is three Tālas, the waist and knees are in one line and the legs are sideways [9]

This posture should be used to suggest the striking with the bow and the thunderbolt (Vajra) It also suggests the carriage by elephant and in Nṛita it indicates lifting up something [10]

When the right leg is stretched at a distance of five Tālas, this very (Mandala) posture becomes Ālīdha. Rudra-Kālī is its deity. [11]

By this posture one should indicate the raising up something, Raudra movement and fighting. Moreover it is used to imitate the gestures of a lion and also to suggest contacting the enemy, fighting with swords and circular movements. It is also used when angry words are exchanged, when wrestlers are fighting, and in describing enemies, their attacking each other and throwing of weapons. [12-15]

When the right leg is curved and the left leg is stretched the Ālīdha posture is reversed, and it is changed into Pratyālīdha. It should be known that the presiding deities of Pratyālīdha are Dānavas. [16]

The weapons raised in Ālīdha posture should be released in Pratyālīdha posture.

O King ! Hereafter I shall tell you about three standing postures of women. [17]

They are Āyata, Avahitha and Haya-krānta. When one leg is in natural position, while the other is obliquely placed at a distance of one Tāla on the other side, the face looks pleased, the chest is evenly elevated and two hands in Latā (creeper) pose are lying on buttocks, the posture should be known as Āyata.

This posture is to be used when one enters the stage (Rangāvatarana) and in offering flowers. [18-20]

O King ! When one leg is obliquely placed, while the other is in an even position at a distance on One Tāla, and Trīka (the part between the shoulder blades) is slightly raised, the posture is called Avahittha. [21]

It is used to express erotic gestures, to show beauty, and decoration. It is used, when one is looking towards the road of a lover. [22-23]



When one leg is evenly placed and the other is slanting like a balance, and the distance between the two legs is not fixed in Tāla, the posture is called Asvakrānta (or Hayakrānta) It is of two types Sūci Viddha and Aviddha [24]

O the Chief in Yadu-dynasty ! this posture is used when one is holding a branch of a tree or gathering a bunch of flowers It should be used to indicate intoxicated eyes when one is speaking loosely sitting on a seat or conversing in a natural way [25]

Thus ends, the Adhyāya 23 the description of standing postures of men and women (Pūnstri-Sthānaka) during the discourse between Mārkaṇḍeya and Vajra, in the third part of Śrī Viṣṇudharmottara

---

## ADHYĀYA 24

Mārkaṇḍeya said Now I tell you the first, movement of the head Kindly know it from me

When the head is raised in a natural way (Svabhāvat) and then slightly raising on left it is nodded once, the movement is called Ākampita It is done for making signs, preaching, questioning and natural talk

When the head is nodded frequently it is called Kampita. It shows anger, threatening, speculating and taking vows [1-2]

When the head is shaken slowly, the movement is called uddhuta It shows distress, amazement and fobiding [3]

When the head is shivered on sides, the movement is called Vidhuta It is made when one is over-powered by cold, or one is suffering from old age or drunk and feverish,

When the head is moved in a circular way, the movement is called Parivāhita It indicates accomplishment, amazement, joy and the sportiveness [4-5]

When the head is raised up once, the movement is called Udvāhita It is used to show height, to see something very well (Darshana) to show pride and looking upwards [6]

When the head is once bent down suddenly, the movement is called Avadhuta It indicates message, conversation signs, and invocation [7]

When the neck is slightly bent on one side, the movement is called Añcita. It is made when one is swooned, grieved, and one has anxiety or unhappiness [8]

When the (top of the hands) shoulders are raised and the neck is curved the movement is called Nīkuñcita It should be exhibited to show pride and amorous diversions [9]

When the head is turned backwards, the movement is called *Parāvṛtta*. It should be done for looking backwards. [10]

When the head is held upwards, the movement should be known as *Utkṣipta*. The actor should do it in looking at a lofty and heavenly object. [11]

When the head is cast down, the movement is called *Adhogata*. It should be done to show bashfulness, bowing and unhappiness. [12]

When the head is rolled on all sides, the movement is called *Parilolita*. This *Parilolita* movement is done to express disease, swooning and intoxication. [13]

O King ! I have told you these movements of the head. Now the *Grīvā-Karmāṇi* (the movements of the neck) should be told. They are *Ancita*, *Recita*, *Mukta*, *Vivṛtta*, *Catura*, *Prasārita* and *Stabdha*.

When the neck is bent a little on one side the movement is called *Ancita*. When the neck is whirled it becomes *Recita*. [14-15]

When the neck is circumambulated *Recita* becomes *Mukta*. When there is no whirling (like *Recita*, but slight movement is there), it becomes *Vivṛtta*. When the neck is sweet and graceful, the movement is called *Catura*. When the neck is stretched fully it is called *Prasārita*. When the neck is stiff and motionless it is called *Stabdha*.

The *Grīvā-Karma* is included in the *Śīra-Karma* because it follows *Śīra-Karma* or movements of the head.

*Ancita* movement is made to express amorous pleasure etc., *Recita* is done for looking round. *Mukta* is made to express swooning and meditating etc. To express placidity (*Saumya-bhāva*) *Catura* is resorted to, and for looking at a thing *Prasārita* is done. *Stabdha* is done to indicate cold, diseased condition and unchangeable nature. [16-18]

Now the movements of the mouth (Āśya) should be mentioned. They are Viruddha, Vinivṛtta, Nirbhugna, Bhugna, Vivṛtta and Rju [19-20]

When the face is turned away it is called Viruddha. When the mouth is closed it becomes Vinivṛtta.

When the face is turned downwards and then somewhat upwards so as to look away, the movement is called Nirbhugna. When the face is somewhat down-cast the movement is called Bhugna, and when the face is turned back, the movement becomes Vivṛtta [21]

When the face is in natural position it is called Rju.

Now their usage is being told. Viruddha movement of the face is done for restraining and saying 'No' etc [22]

Vinivṛtta movement is used to show jealousy, Malice, and wrath. Nirbhugna should be used looking seriously. Bhugna is done to express shame and natural pose of the ascetics. Vivṛtta movement should be done to show laughing, grief and fear etc [23-24]

O Son of Yadu-dynasty Rju movement of face is used to show natural position.

Ābhugna, Nirbhugna, Prakampita, Udvāhita and Sama—these five are the well-known movements of the chest [25]

When the chest is held by hand the movement is called Ābhugna. It is used to show wounded with weapons, act of killing and heart disease [26-27]

When the chest is stiff and the back is lowered, the movement is called Nirbhugna. It is used to show stiffness, astonishment, pride and moroseness.

When the chest is thrown up suddenly it is called Prakampita. It is used at the time of laughing, weeping, or to show fatigue, disease and fear.

When the heart is held lightly upwards, it is called Udvāhita. It is used for showing breathing and yawning. When the chest is kept equal on all sides it is called Sama. It is used to show well-being. [28-30]

There are five kinds of the movements of the sides (Pārśva Karma) : Samunnata, Nata, Prasārita, Vivartita and Apasrta. [31]

When the waist, sides and shoulders are raised it is called Samunnata.

When the waist and sides are bent the movement is called Vinata. [32]

When the sides are moved both ways the movement is called Pasārita. When the Trika (the part between the shoulder blades) makes circular movement the movement is called Vivartita. [33]

When this Trika is moved away, the movement is called Apasrta.

Samunnata movement should be made to show retreat. Nata (movement) should be made to show approach. Prasārita (movement) should be adopted to show jubilation etc., and Apasrta should be used to show terror. and to show circular movement-Vivartita-should be made. the chest is the instrument for all these. [34-35]

The movements of the stomach (Udara) is said to be of three types : Kṣāma, Nimna and Pūrṇa.

In Laughter and yawning Kṣāma movement should be done and one should make the stomach slim. [36]

In disease, penance fatigue and hunger Nimna movement should be made and the stomach should be sunken.

In breathing out, health and voluptuousness Pūrṇa movement should be made and stomach should be shown full. [37]

In Nṛtta the movements of the waist are of five kinds : Prakampitā, Vicchinā, Nivṛttā, Recitā and Udvāhitā. [38]

The quick and oblique movement i.e. to and fro of the waist is called Prakampitā. The movement of undulating in the middle is called vicchinā. [39]

The movement of the waist facing one who has turned the back is Nivrttā. And when the waist is moved on all side is called Recitā. [40]

The movement in which the hips are uplifted in a certain manner is called Udvāhitā. To show the garts of shorts, dwarfs and hunch-backed Prakampitā should be used. [41]

In Physical exercise, looking over the shoulders and at the time of arrival of somebody the expert should use chinā movement of the waist. [42]

Recitā should be adopted, in whirling movement, and the other (Udvāhitā) should be used to show sportive movements of the women. [43]

Five kinds of movements of the thigh (Uru) should be mentioned. They are Kampana, Valana, Stambhana, Udvartana and Vivartana.

When the thigh is bent upwards and downwards of movement of the heels, and standing on the ground, on forepart of the foot, the movement is called Kampita.

When the knee is slowly moved inwards the movement is called Valita. [44-45]

When there is no movement of the thigh it is called Stambhana.

When there is circular or swinging or whirling movement it is called Udvartana. [46]

When the heel goes inward, the movement is Vivartana.

In the gait of low characters Kampita should be used. [47]

In the movements of women at ease Valana should be used To express bashfulness, perturbation and rejection Stambhanam should be used [48]

In physical exercise and Tāndava dance, Udvartan should be used And in turning round hurriedly, in flurry or excitement Vivartana should be adopted [49]

Five kinds of movements of shanks (Janghā) should be exhibited They are Āvartita, Nata, Kṣipta, Udvāhita and Parivṛtta [50]

Movements of the right and left janghā (shanks) in inverted order is called Āvartita Contraction of the knees by the actor should be known as Nata [51]

Tossing or moving to and fro of the janghā is called Kṣipta Moving of the janghā causing lifting of the thigh (Uru) should be known as Udvāhita [52]

Moving the shanks in opposite direction is called Parivṛtta

Āvartana should be used in the movements of the Vidusaka [53]

In standing sitting and moving postures Nata movement should be made The Kṣipta movement should be made in physical exercise and Tāndava [54]

In crooked or swinging gait etc Udvāhita movement should be made, and the actor should do Parivṛtta movement of the janghā in Tāndava dance, etc [55]

There are five kinds of the movements of the foot Udghāṭita, Sama, Recita Ancita and Kuñcita [56]

When one stands on the forepart of the foot and moves down the heel on the ground, the movement udghāṭita should be used to make someone attached and in graceful movements When two feet are in a natural position on the ground with even placing, the movement is called Sama [58]

This should be used in natural gestures of the feet. When the heel is raised and the foot moves on the forepart it is called *Recita*. It is used in *Nikṣipta*, *Recita*, *Bhrānta*, *Pracāra*, *Sancāra*, *Lalita* and *Udvartita* (i.e. throwing away, whirling rolling, beating with leg, manifesting, sporting and elevating). [59-60]

When the forepart of the foot is raised it is called *Ancita*. [61]

In various kinds of gaits this *Ancita* type of movement should be done.

When the middle part of the foot is contracted the movement is called *Kuncita*. [62]

This kind of foot-movement should be used in *Atikrānta Abhigamana* (i.e. crossing and going towards some one).

The movement of one foot is called *Cāri*, [63]

The walking with two feet is called *Karaṇa*. The combination of many *Karanas* is called *Khanda*, and the combination of two, three or four *Khandas* is called *Mandala*.

Here ends the description of the actions performed by the limbs (*Anga-Karma*). O King ! now learn the actions of the minor limbs of the body (*Upāṅga-Karma*). [64-65]

Thus ends the *Adhyāya* 24, entitled the description of the action of the limbs, during the discourse between *Mārkaṇḍeya* and *Vajra*, in the third part of *Śrī Viṣṇudharmottara*.

---



Mārkaṇḍeya said

Rasa-dṛṣṭis (The glances to express the sentiments) are (1) Kāntā, (2) Bhayānakā, (3) Hāsyā, (4) Karunā, (5) Adbhutā, (6) Raudrā, (7) Virā and (8) Bibhatsā and (9) Sāntā [1]

The sthāyibhāva dṛṣṭis are (10) Smṛdhā, (11) Hrṣṭā, (12) Jihmā, (13) Kruddhā, (14) Bhitā (15) Lajjitā, (16) Drptā, (17) Viśmitā and (18) Saumyā [2]

The third group of Dṛṣṭis are of (19) Malinā, (20) Ākekarā, (21) Srāntā, (22) Abhitaptā, (23) Vipṛutā, (24) Viśannā, (25) Sankitā, (26) Trastā, (27) Sokā, (28) Nīmilitā, (29) Vibhrāntā, (30) Kuncitā, (31) Sunyā, (32) Mukulā (33) Vitarkitā, (34) Madirā, (35) Lahitā, and (36) Glāṇā [3-4]

I have enumerated the thirty six Dṛṣṭis,

The movement of the brow and the side-glances inspired by the eros, should be known as Kāntā Dṛṣṭi

When the eyelids and the tips of eye-lashes are turned upwards and eyeballs (pupils) are moving it is called Bhayānakā Dṛṣṭi

When the eyelids are somewhat contracted and the pupils are agitated, the dṛṣṭi is Hāsyā [6]

The dṛṣṭi in which eyelids are falling and rising, which is full of tears and in which pupils disappear, is called Karunā

When the tips of the eye-lashes are somewhat contracted and the pupils are slightly expanded, even and fully opened the dṛṣṭi is called Adbhutā.

When the eye-brows are upturned, curved and contracted, it is called Raudrā [7-8]

When the middle part of the eye is puffed up and the pupils are even, the *dr̥ṣṭi* is called *Virā*

When the pupils are drawn at the end of the eye it is called *Bibhatsā dr̥ṣṭi* [9]

When the glance is steady on account of the meditation and is looking downwards, it is called *Sāntā dr̥ṣṭi*

The glance which is widened in the middle is sweet, loving and smiling is considered as *Snigdḥā*. [10]

When the eye is puffed up in the middle, is tremulous and is looking at the end of the eye, the *dr̥ṣṭi* is called *Hṛṣṭā*

When the pupils are cast downwards, and the glance is sly and sunken, the *dr̥ṣṭi* is called *Jihmā* [11]

In *Kruddhā* the eye-brows are crooked and the eye-balls are motionless, and in *Bhītā* eyebrows are slightly contracted and when the eyeballs are motionless it is *Rūksā* [12]

When the eyes are blooming and expressing spiritedness the *dr̥ṣṭi* becomes *Dṛptā* When it is even and the ends of the eye are fully widened it is called *Viśmitā dr̥ṣṭi* [13]

In *Saumyā* the eye-sight is even and the pupils are also even In *Lajjitā* eye-lids are contracted and the pupils are motionless [14]

The glance in which the eyelids are throbbing, is called *Malinā*. When [the eyelids are slightly contracted the glance is called *Ākekarā* [15]

The glance in which the eyelids are slightly raised is called *Srāntā*, In *Abhitaptā* and similarly *Mandā* the pupils and the eyelids are dull [16]

When the eyes are agitated, trembling and frightened the glance is called *Viplutā* The glance in which the pupils are slightly stupefied, is called *Viśanna* [17]

The glance in which eye-balls are unsettled is called Sankitā The glance which is dry and in which the pupils are fluttering and full of fear is called Trastā [18]

When the eyes bloom like buds it is called Visokā (Vikosā) Nimiseksanā is also like that When the eye-balls are unsteady and rolling and the pupils are also unsteady the glance is called Vibhrāntā [19]

In Kuncitā dr̥ṣṭi eyes are contracted and the pupils are slightly slanting In Sunyā dr̥ṣṭi the glance is even, void and disturbed The pupils are motionless [20]

When the ends of the eye-lashes are throbbing and closed, the glance is Mukulā In Vitarkitā both the eye-lashes are up lifted and the pupils are motionless [21]

The glance with eyes full bloomed and the pupils slanting is called Madirā And that with eyes blooming graceful and smiling is considered as Lalitā dr̥ṣṭi [22]

The glance having closed watery eyes and eye-lashes as if cut off is called Glānā

The Kāntā dr̥ṣṭi is used in throwing a side glance (Kaṭāksa) at a lover For killing Bhayānakā glance is used [23]

One should know that in (Comic) Hāsyā-Rasa Hāsyā is used in Karuṇa-Rasa (Sorrow) Karuṇā is used in Adbhuta-Rasa (Marvellous) Adbhutā should be used and in Raudra-Rasa (fury) Raudrā dr̥ṣṭi is enjoined [24]

In Vira-Rasa (Heroic action) Virā dr̥ṣṭi should be done and in Bibhatsa-Rasa (disgust) Bibhatsā should be used It is mentioned that in Sānta-Rasa (tranquility) Sāntā dr̥ṣṭi should be used and in looking lovingly Smṛdhā should be used [25]

In joy Hṛṣṭī dr̥ṣṭi is adopted In jealousy Jihmā dr̥ṣṭi should be adopted It is ordered that in anger Krudhā should be used and in fear Bhīṭī dr̥ṣṭi should be made [26]

In shame or bashfulness Lajjitā should be used and in Utsāha (determination) Dṛptā is done. In astonishment Vismitā dr̥ṣṭi, and in looking placidly Saumyā dr̥ṣṭi is used. [27]

In Viraha (separation) Malinā dr̥ṣṭi should be done, and in Sambhoga (union) Ākekarā is asked to be done. To show fatigue Śrāntā dr̥ṣṭi and in Nirveda (dejection) Abhitaptā should be made. [28]

To show miserable condition (Dāinye) Viplutā dr̥ṣṭi, and in Viśāda (dejection) Viṣannā is used. To express doubt Sankitā and in Terror Trastā dr̥ṣṭi is enjoined. [29]

In state of knowledge (Jñāne) Vikṣā and in expressing touch Nimilitā should be done. In Vibhrama (state of confusion) Vibh-rāntā should be done and in looking minutely Kuñcitā is done [30]

The glance of man having anxiety should be Śūnyā, and in the action of smelling Mukulā is used. In speculation (Vītarka) Vītarkitā and in Unmāda (drunkenness) Madirā should be done. [31]

In amorous expression of women Lalitā and in langour Glāṇā dr̥ṣṭi is enjoined.

It is said that there are nine kinds of (Putayoh Karma) actions of the eyelids : (1) Nimesa, (2) Unmesa, (3) Prasārita, (4) Vivartita, (5) Ākuncita, (6) Sama, (7) Sphurita, (8) Pihita and (9) Tādita. [32-33]

When the eyelids are brought together, the action is called Nimesa. When both of the eyelids are opened it is called Unmesa. [34]

When both the eyelids are stretched Prasārita it is Vivartita. When both of them are contracted, it should be known by the learned as Ākuncita. [35]

When the eye-lids are kept in the natural position it is called Sama movement. When the eye-lids are quivering, it is called Sphurita action. [36]

When the eye-lids are closed it is Pihita When the eye-lids are drooping it is called Tādita [37]

A wiseman should know that, while smelling, touching and seeing an unpleasant thing Ākuncita action is done To show surprise and Vira-Rasa Prasārita action should be done [38] In Sṛṅgāra Sama action should be done and in beating Avatā-dita should be used To show love-anger Sphurita is required [39]

In cold or wind, or heat or rain, Pihita should be done In anger Vivartita should be done and in Nimesa and Unmesa eye-lids should be closed or opened in a natural way [40]

The movement of the pupils (eye-balls) are Valana, Bhramana, Calana, Sampraveśana, Vivartana, Pātana, Niskrama, Udvarta and Prākṛta [41]

When the pupils are moving round and round in the eyelids the movement is called Bhramana [42]

Oblique movement of the pupil is Valana, Quivering of the pupil is Calana Drawing of the eyeballs inside is Sampravesana. [43]

When the pupils move towards the end of the eye, the movement is called Vivartana Turning the pupils downwards is Pātana and bringing out the eyeballs is Niskrama [44]

When the pupils are drawn backward it is Udvartana and the natural position of the pupils is Prākṛta

In Hāsya-Rasa Valana should be done, and in intoxication Bhramana should be done [45]

In Vira-Rasa Calana is done, and in Bibhatsa Sampravesana is resorted to In Sṛṅgāra Vivartana is used and in Karuna-Rasa Pātana is done [46]

In Bhayānaka Rasa Niskramana and in Vira-Rasa Udvartana is used, In the remaining Bhāvas Prākṛta should be acted as required [47]

Movements of the sight (Dṛṣṭi-Karma) are (1) Sama, (2) Sācīkṛta, (3) Anuvṛtta, (4) Ālokita, (5) Ullokita (6) Lokita (7) Vilokita and (8) Avalokita [48]

The sight in which the pupils are even and placid is called Sama dṛṣṭi-Karma. When the pupils are lying between two eyelashes the sight is called Sācīkṛta [49]

The sight accomplishing a form is called Anuvṛttam. The sight in which there is sudden look should be called Ālokita [50]

Looking up should be known as ullokita. Looking on all side is Lokita. When one looks on from two sides is called Vilokita and looking from the back is Avalokita [51]

The acting of the Eye-brows (Bhruvoh Karma) should be synchronized with the sights. It should be in accordance with the movements of the eyes expressing various Bhāvas (mood) and Rasas (sentiments), [52]

The movements of the eye-brows follow the movements of the eye. The movements of the eye-brows are Utksepa Patana, Brukūti, Catura, Nīkuncita, Recita, and Svābhāvika [53]

The raising of the eyebrows upwards is Utksepa, and lowering the eye-brows is called Pātana [54]

Casting upwards of the two brows from the root is called Bhrukūti. When one brow is slightly and sweetly raised up lengthwise it is Catura [55]

The softly breaking one or two eye-brows is Nīkuncita. Gracefully lifting up of one eyebrow is called Recita [56]

You know from me that when the brows are in natural position it is Svābhāvika or Svābhāvastha

In amorous movements Samutksepa is done and in tenderness Pātana is exhibited [57]

Mārkandeya said

There are twenty two Asamyuta (single) hands They are- Patāka, Tripatāka, Kartarimukha, Ardhacandra, Arāla, Śukatunda, Muṣṭi, Sikhara, Kapittha, Khaṭakāmukha Sūcyāśya, Padmakosa, Uruga-Sīrsa, Mṛgasīrsa, Kāṅgūla, Kola-Padma, Catura, Bhramara, Hamsāśya, Hamsa-Paksa, Sandamsa, and Mukula [1-3]

Now I speak about Samyukta (combined) hands Kindly hear it from me [4]

There are thirteen Samyuta Hastas (combined hands) Anjali, Kapota, Karkaṣa, Svastika, Khaṭakāvardhamāna, Utsanga, Nisadha, Dola, Puspapuṣa, Makara, Gajadanta, Avahittha and Vardhamāna I have told you their names [5-6]

There are Nṛtta-hastas (Dance hands) group Hear their names also

They are Caturasra, Udvṛtta, Laghumukha, Arāla-Khaṭkāmukha, Āviddha, Sūcyāśya, Recita, Ardharecita, Avahittha, Pallavita, Nīlamba, Kesabaddha, Latā, Karī-Hasta, Paksodyota, Ancita Garuda-paksa Danda-paksa, Urdhvamandalaja, Pārsva-mandalaja, Pārsvordhvamandala, Uromandālaka, Muṣṭi, Svastika, Padmakosa, Ala-pallava, Ullvāna, Lalīta and Valīta One should always know these Nṛtta-Karās [7-12]

Here after I shall tell you about the acting with hands. [13]

The hand in which all the fingers are simultaneously extended and the thumb is bent is called Patāka [14]

This is used in giving a blow, in obstructing a blow and in throwing down When the fingers are moving it shows wind and rain [15]

When it goes upwards it shows enthusiasm and when it moves downwards it shows umbrella etc. When it gives Tāla on Puskara (drum) the hand is even and the fingers are moving. [16]

When it is raised on a side it is Recitaka (whirling) movement and when raised straight, it is used for holding or supporting something.

In this Patāka hand, when the Anāmikā (ring finger) is bent, it is called Tripatāka. [17]

It should be used in calling a person and also in the acting of a crown, When fingers are moved, it indicates small birds. [18]

With that Anāmikā the tears are wiped off. To indicate auspicious touch it should be put on the head. [19]

It should be also used for covering the ears, It should be used by a person lying on the ground with face raised, for the acting the movements of serpents and the bumble-bees, (Bhramaras). [20]

When Tarjani (Fore-finger) of Tripatāka hands looks at the back (of Madhyamā), it should be known as Kartarīmukha. [21]

It should be done for indicating walking on the road, cutting and falling.

In Ardha-candra Anāmikā (ring-finger) touches the thumb. [22]

It is used to denote young (rising) moon, children, tāla trees, girdle, jaghana (hips), and earrings (kundalas). [23]

In Arūla hand Pradeśini (fore-finger) is bent like a bow, the thumb is bent and the remaining fingers are separated, raised upwards and then curved. [24]

It is used to express profundity, spiritedness, heroism, and gathering the hair, and wiping the sweat etc. [25]

When the Anāmikā (ring-finger) in Arūla hand is bent, it becomes Śuka-tuṇḍa. The learned should do this acting to say "I am not you", and in the beginning (atha) and in the end (iti). [26]



When front part of the fingers are bent into the palm and the thumb is set on them, it is called *Musti* [27]

It is used in giving blow, physical exercise pressing hard the breast, firmly holding the sword and the stick and in seizing a spear and a staff [28]

When in the above (*Musti*) hand, the thumb is raised it becomes *Sikhara* hand

It should be done in holding the reins, bow and a goad [29]

When the thumb is inside the *Musti* hand, it is called *Kapittha* That type of acting should be done suggesting the holding of a disc or an arrow [30]

When the same *Kapittha* hand, the *Anāmikā* and the little fingers (*Kaniyasā*) are raised and bent, it becomes *Khaṭakāmukha* [31]

That acting should be freely done to suggest sacrifice, holding the umbrella, dragging and fanning, holding a garland or a rope [32]

In this *Khaṭakāmukha* hasta if the *Tarjanī* (threatening finger) is stretched, it is called *Sūcīmukha* It is used to show day and night, and the eyes of *Indra* and *Mahesa* [33]

In this *Sūcīmukha* hand if the fingers are kept apart and curved with the thumb and raised upwards like the mouth of a swan it becomes *Padmā-Kosa* [34]

In *Patāka* hand if the thumb is clinching and the middle part is hollow, it becomes *Ahīśira*

With the help of that (*Ahīśira*) hand offering of water and *Sūcana* (indication) should be done [35]

When all the fingers are bent down together and the little finger (Kaniṣṭhikā) and the thumb erect, the hand becomes Mrgāśṛsa. [36]

It should be made to indicate piercing with a needle, making a hole and in brandishing the 'Śakti' weapon.

When the middle finger is between Tarjanī and the thumb kept like Tretāgni and Anāmikā is bent and the Kaniyast (little finger) is erect, the hand becomes Kāṅgula.

With the help of this kind of hand fruits should be denoted. [37-38]

When the fingers are moved, separated and made to move in order in the palm, the hand is called Kola-padma. [39]

It should be used for saying 'No', and to denote void and non-existence.

When three fingers are stretched out, the Kaniyast is erect and the thumb resting on it in the middle, the hand is called Catura.

It should be used to explain the practical actions of speech, and recitation. [40-41]

With this kind of action the colours should be denoted, when raised it shows white, when it is semi-circular it suggests red, when in circle it shows yellow and when compressed it shows blue. Similarly when in normal position it shows black and the remaining colours. [42-43]

When the middle finger and thumb are in Samdamśa position (i.e. compressed so as to form pincers) and the fore-finger is curved and the remaining fingers are separated and raised, the hand is Bhramara. [44]

This pose should be done in holding the lotus etc. and also to show ear-rings.

When the tarjaṇī, madhyamā and the thumb without any interspace between them are placed like Tretāgni (three sacrificial fires) and the remaining fingers are outspread, the hand becomes Haṁsa-Vaktra.

It should be used to show slimness, lightness, fragility and softness. [45-46]

The hand in which Kanīṣṭhikā (little finger) is raised obliquely and made into the round shape, and the thumb is bent, is called Haṁsapakṣa. [47]

It should rest on the cheeks to show dinner, acceptance of gift, touching, anointing and shampooing. [48]

When in Arāla hand, the fore-finger and the thumb are pressed together in a way to form pincers and the middle of the palm is bent, it is called Saṁdamśa. [49]

One should know that Saṁdamśa is of three types : Agraja, Mukhaja and Pārśvakṛta.

Now hear the work of each one [50]

Agraja Saṁdamśa hand should be done for holding and for extracting thorn etc.

Mukhaja Saṁdamśa hand is posed to express plucking a flower from its stalk, filling in the receptacle with chips for anointing the eye.

Pārśva Saṁdamśa hand is used in colouring a drawing, in Yagnopavita (sacred-thread), in pressing the breast and in showing head. [51]

When in Padmakōśa hand tips of all the fingers are joined together, the hand becomes Mukula Hand.

It should be done for worshipping the deities, and offering oblations and denoting the lotus.

These are Asamyuta hands. I have described them as they are. [52-53]

When two Patāka hands are folded together, the combination of the hand is called Anjali.

It should be done at the time of bowing before deities, spiritual masters and paternal ancestors. [54]

When the sides of two hands touch each other, the hand pose becomes Kapotaka.

It should be done to denote cold, danger, and to show modesty. [55]

When fingers of one hand pass between the fingers of the other, the pose of the hands should be known as Karkāṣa. It should be done while yawning. [56]

When two Arāla hands are stretched, palms upwards and lying on bent sides and placed on the wrists in the Vardhamāna way, the pose of combined hands is called Svastika. [57]

O King ! this acting should be done to denote everything that is widely spread, seasons, sky, cloud, sea and the earth. [58]

When one Khaṭaka (half-closed) hand is placed upon another, the combination of hands is Khaṭakāvardhamānaka.

It should be done for love-making and bowing. [59]

When two Arāla Hands are stretched, palm upwards in reverse position and in the Vardhamāna way; the combination of hands should be known as Utsanga.

It indicates the touch of somebody else. [60]

When the Mukula hand covers the Kapittha hand, the combination should be known as Nivādhā. [61]

It should be made in shortening, throwing and compressing

When the two Patāka hands are hanging down-wards it becomes Dolā [62]

It should be done to show meditation giving charity and to show eatables

When the fingers of the Sarpa or Ahisra hand are closed together and the other hand is joined to its sides it is called Puspapuṇa [63]

O King ! all the former things should be acted by this combination of hands

When two Patāka hands are placed one over the other (on the head) and facing downwards, the combination is Makara Hand It shows the actions of lion tiger, deer etc [64-65]

When the elbows and shoulders in the Sarpa-Śira hands are bent towards each other, the combination is called Gaja-danta

It is posed to show carrying the mountain [66]

When two Suka tunda hands are placed on the chest and are bent in the forepart and slowly bent downwards the pose is called Avahittha [67]

It should be posed to show weakness high breathing and showing limbs

When two Hamsapaksa hands are in the opposite directions, the combination is Vardhamāna [68]

The acting should be done to show lattice (Jāla) windows etc

Thus I have told (you) the characteristics of combined hands [69]

Thus one should know all these kinds of hands indicating different types of Rasas

Hereafter I shall tell you about the Nṛtta-Hastas [70]

Two Kaṭakāmukha hands, at a distance of eight fingers from the chest, and with their elbows and shoulders in the same level and facing forward are called Caturasra. [71]

The two Hamsa-pakṣa hands, turned like a palm-leaf fan, should be known as Udvṛtta or Tālavṛntaka. [72]

When two Caturasra hands are given the shape of Hamsa-pakṣa and obliquely turned with palm upwards, they must be known as Laghu-mukha. [73]

The two Arāla hands, loosened on wrists, should be known as Arāla Khaṭakāmukha in acting. [74]

Two hands with the elbows curved and the palm of the hands bent upwards, are called Āviddha. [75]

When the two Sarpa-śira hands, with their heads spread obliquely are in the pose of Svastika, they should be known as Sūct-mukha. [76]

When the Hamsa-pakṣa hands move upwards and the palms are also spread upwards, they are called Recita. [77]

When the left hand is Caturasra and the right hand is Recita, the scholars of Nāṭya-tattva should know the pose as Ardha-recita. [78]

When two Tripatāka hands are bent at the elbow and made slightly oblique, the pose is called Avahittha. [79]

When the two hands are loosened from the wrists it is called Pallava. When two hands come out from the tops of the arms (reaching the hips) they are called Nitamba. [80]

Hands raised from the sides and acting on the shoulders are called Keśabandha. The Ācāryas have approved them. [81]

Two hands lying on the side and extended obliquely, should be known as Latā, in the acting of Nṛtta. [82]

When the two Patāka hands are hanging down-wards it becomes Doḷā. [62]

It should be done to show meditation, giving charity and to show eatables.

When the fingers of the Sarpa or Ahīra hand are closed together and the other hand is joined to its sides it is called Puṣpa-puta. [63]

O King ! all the former things should be acted by this combination of hands

When two Patāka hands are placed one over the other (on the head) and facing downwards, the combination is Makara Hand. It shows the actions of lion, tiger, deer, etc. [64-65]

When the elbows and shoulders in the Sarpa-Śira hands are bent towards each other, the combination is called Gaja-danta.

It is posed to show carrying the mountain. [66]

When two Śuka-tunda hands are placed on the chest and are bent in the forepart and slowly bent downwards, the pose is called Avahittha. [67]

It should be posed to show weakness, high breathing and showing limbs.

When two Hamsapaksa hands are in the opposite directions, the combination is Vardhamāna. [68]

The acting should be done to show lattice (Jāla) windows, etc.

Thus I have told (you) the characteristics of combined hands. [69]

Thus one should know all these kinds of hands indicating different types of Rasas.

Hereafter I shall tell you about the Nṛtta-Hastas [70]

Two Kaṭakāmukha hands, at a distance of eight fingers from the chest, and with their elbows and shoulders in the same level and facing forward are called Caturasra. [71]

The two Hamsa-paksa hands, turned like a palm-leaf fan, should be known as Udvṛtta or Tālavṛntaka. [72]

When two Caturasra hands are given the shape of Hamsa-paksa and obliquely turned with palm upwards, they must be known as Laghu-mukha. [73]

The two Arāla hands, loosened on wrists, should be known as Arāla Khatakāmukha in acting. [74]

Two hands with the elbows curved and the palm of the hands bent upwards, are called Āviddha. [75]

When the two Sarpa-śura hands, with their heads spread obliquely are in the pose of Svastika, they should be known as Sūct-mukha. [76]

When the Hamsa-paksa hands move upwards and the palms are also spread upwards, they are called Recita. [77]

When the left hand is Caturasra and the right hand is Recita, the scholars of Nāṭya-tattva should know the pose as Ardha-recita. [78]

When two Tripatāka hands are bent at the elbow and made slightly oblique, the pose is called Avahittha. [79]

When the two hands are loosened from the wrists it is called Pallava. When two hands come out from the tops of the arms (reaching the hips) they are called Nitamba. [80]

Hands raised from the sides and acting on the shoulders are called keśabandha. The ācāryas have approved them. [81]

Two hands lying on the side and extended obliquely, should be known as Latā, in the acting of Nṛtta. [82]



When the Latā hand is raised and swing from side to side, and the other hand is Khaṇaka, the combination is called Kari-Hasta. [83]

When the fore-parts of the Tripatāka hands are placed on the top of the waist, the performer should know them as Paksāvancita. [84]

When two of the same are in the reverse order, the pose is called Paksodyota. When the two palms of the hands are downwards and slightly bent, they should be known as Garuda-Paksaka. [85]

When the two hands are stretched they are called Dandapaksa. When the two hands are raised high and move round, they are called Urdhva-maṇḍala, due to the change of guru or region. [86]

When the two arms are placed on the sides they are called Pārśva-maṇḍala. When the hands cover half (of the chest and half of the side), they are called Uromandala. [87]

When both the arms are in the shape of Svastika and placed on the wrists, they are famous as Svastika and also well-known as Prakṛnaka. [88]

When both of them are in the form of Padma-Kośa they are called Padma-Kośa. When the fore-parts of both the hands are enclosed, they should be known as Alapallava. [89]

When they are raised, extended and curved they are called Ulvana. The Pallava hands reaching the head are called Lahita. [90]

Lahita hands placed on the elbow in the form of Swastika are called Valita.

Thus Asamyuta, Samyuta and Nr̥tta-hastas are described. [91]

One should know that the performance of Nr̥tta-hasta with full of various meaning and sentiments depend on time. I have not told about it. [92]

The acting of these hands should not be practised when one is sick, old, observing some vow, overpowered by fear, drunk, and in anxiety [93]

One should know that the acting of the Nṛtta-hastas is four fold Udvesta, Samavesta, Vivesita and Vivartita [94]

The learned should make graceful movements of the Nṛtta-hastas, because it is grace and beauty that differentiates Nṛtta from other movements [95]

The poses of the hands are to be acted according to the place, time, production and meaning, hence in the Nṛtta these hands of men and women should be acted [96]

O the hero among men ! I have told you about all these hands, because this Nṛtta depends on the actions of the hands, Therefore when there is the opportunity for skill, and grace, one should try their best for the formation of these hands [97]

Thus ends the Adhyāya 26 entitled Hastādhyāya-the description of the arrangement of Hastas during the discourse between Mārkaṇḍeya and Vajra in the third part of Śrī Viṣṇu-dharmottara

---

## ADHYĀYA 27

Mārkaṇḍeya said : The experts of Nāṭya have said that Abhinaya (acting) is of four kinds : [1] Vācika, [2] Āhārya, [3] Āṅika and [4] Sāttvika. [1]

Vācika is expressed with speech. O King ! hear about Āhārya-Abhinaya. One should know these four kinds : Pusta, Alamkāra, Anga-racanā and Sanjīva

Imitative forms made of clay, wood, cloth, leather and iron are called Pusta. The experts in Nāṭya should make the masks (Pratiśirsāni) of gods, demons, yakṣas, elephants, horses and birds by Pusta technique.

The garlands, ornaments and garments should be known as Alamkāra. [2-5]

The dressing up of different parts of the body is called Anga-racanā. O King ! It should be done in accordance with the caste, position, superiority, and the country of the character to be presented

O King ! That is why I shall tell you about the Anga-racanā arising out of the body-colour. [6-7]

O the best of the King ! Five original colours are well described They are white, red, yellow, black and green (? Blue). [8]

By mixing one, two, or three colours and with the imagination of the existence of others there are innumerable skin-colours. It is impossible to make them by ordinary people. [9]

O the best of the Kings ! There are so many colours in this world, that is why I shall tell you the divisions of blackish and white. [10]

With these two kinds the skin of all the persons are described. There are five kinds of white colour and twelve kinds of the black colour. [11]

Rukma-gaura or a white as (? gold), Danta-gaura or a white as the teeth, Sphuṭa-candana-gaura or as white as Sandal wood Pulp, Sarad-gaura and Candra-Vat gaura or as white as the Moon in the Autumn. These are five white colours. [12]

Ó King ! the black colours are : The first is Rakta-Śyāma or reddish black, then is Mudga Śyāma or blackish as Mudga. Then is the Durvānkura Śyāma or blackish as the Durvā-sprouts and O King ! then is pale-black. [13]

O King ! then comes greenish black, then is yellowish black. Then Priyangu Śyāma or as black as Priyangu creeper and Kapi Śyāma. [14]

Then is Nilotpala Śyāma or blackish as blue lotus, and thereafter is Cāśaśyāma or as blackish as Cāśa bird. Then comes Raktōtpala-śyāma or as blackish as Red lotus and the last is Ghana-śyāma or as black as the cloud. [15]

According to the colours of these things the colour of the persons should be illustrated. When the beauty of limbs is increased with these Anga-Vyatikaras it becomes more effective. [16]

Now I shall tell you about the colours of the gods. They should certainly be given that colour. When no particular colour is mentioned by me they should be given Gaura colour. [17]

Vāsukī (Serpent) should be given black colour. The other serpents should be given Gaura Colour. The Daityas, Dānavas, Rāksasas, and the followers of Kubera and Piśācas should have the colour of water. Men in six Dvīpas should be given the colour of gold, but O King ! in Bhārata, Jambūdvīpa should be given the colour of their different regions in which they are born. The Pulindās and Dakṣiṇātyās (Southerners) are generally of

Asit (dark) complexion Sakās, Yavanās, Palhavās, Bāhukās and People living in Uttarā-patha (region north to the Vindhyas) should generally be given Gaura colour. The Pāncālas, Sūrasenās, Magadhas, Angas, Vangas and Kalingas are generally of Asita (dark) colour

The Dvijas (Brahmins) should be coloured white as moon, while the Ksatriyas the colour of the lotus The Vaisyas should be somewhat whitish (Apāndu) and the Śūdras should be Syāma (dark) Persons like Gandharvas and Apsaras have various colours [18-24]

The King and the rich people should have the complexion of lotus

Men with evil actions, persons overpowered by bad planetary influence, sickly people and those practising penance, and blacksmiths and the people belonging to different kulas (professions) should be Asita (dark) The colour of persons seen directly with own eyes should be according to his natural colour. [25-26]

O King ! Devas, Gandharvas, Siddhas, Kumāras and those who have taken a certain vow should not be given moustaches. [27]

The divine beings, Vidyādhars, lovers and Kings should have moustache and beard [28]

The Smaśru (Moustache and beard) of the ascetics, ministers, purohitas, judges and persons under some vow should be made white [29]

The Smaśru of those, whose vows are not fulfilled and of unhappy men, of Tapasvis and sages and the prisoners of long duration is said to be long [30]

O King ! The dress of those engaged in religious activities should be white. So also the dress of merchants, Kancukis and Brāhmans is white [31]

O Yādavas ! the dress of the kings and the courtesans should be of variegated colours and the dress of others should be according to the sex and as current in the society [32]

Three types of Mukuṭas (head-wears) should be known They depend on the gods and Kings Therefore the Gods and Kings should be made to wear Kīṇṭakas i.e. crowns [33]

The crowns of the gods should have seven crests, of kings five of principal queen and the crown prince three, of the commander-in chief one crest

Dāityas, Dānavas, Yaksas, paṇṇagas and Rākṣasas should put on turbans of one long paṭṭa on the head, while the director should make the turbans of Vidyādharas, Siddhas and Vānaras (? cāranas) having knots [34-36]

It is said that Devas, Dānavas and Gandharvas have black pakṣas (wings)

O King ! The Smasru and the hair of Dāityas, Dānavas, Yaksas, Piśācas, Nāgas and Rākṣasas should be green and their eyes should be tawny [37-38]

The hair on the head of Kancukī should be made white.

The heads of the ministers, Kancukīs and superior purohitas should be covered with turban

The heads of Piśācas, ascetics and those who have become lunatics and those who have not fulfilled their vow are (not covered) but having long hair

The heads of children should be adorned with Sikkhandakas-tufts of hair [39-41]

O King ! the heads of munis should be made to have Jajṛas (matted locks of hair) The Ceṭas should have three tufts of hair on their head and Vidyasakas should have bald head or only pada Others should have hair according to their castes [42]

Now I shall tell you about what is called Sanjiva. The entrance of the animals on the stage is called Sanjiva [44]

Men should wear the masks of various animals, similarly the symbols of gods carrying various weapons should be represented by masks [45]

In short, one should make various accessories useful for drama by one's own intelligence according to the customs current in the society [46]

O the chief of the family of King ! One should not discharge weapons on the stage

Thus I have told you about Āhārya in short Now I shall tell you about Āṅgikam [47]

Thus ends the Adhyāya 27, entitled Āhāryābhīnaya, during the discourse between Mārkaṇḍeya and Vajra in the third Part of Sri Viṣṇudharmottara

---

## ADHYĀYA : 28

Mārkaṇḍeya said : Henceforth I shall tell you about the sāmānyābhinaya (Acting in general). One should make efforts in performing that. And the learned should do the acting of Śabda, (Sound), Sparśa (touch), Rūpa (form), Rasa (taste) and Gandha (smell) qualities of senses and the sense organs experiencing them. They are to be acted by their bhāvas or natural expressions. [1-2]

The learned should do the acting of the sound (Śabda) by turning the eye aside, and slightly bending the head, and putting the tarjani on the ear. [3]

The smell should be expressed by slightly contracting the eyes, blowing the nostrils and taking a single breath. [4]

O King ! these five kinds of sense-objects are said to be of three types : pleasant, unpleasant or neutral. [5]

All the pleasant things should be exhibited by joyous movements of the limbs, by bristling of the hair (Pulakitena) and by profuse tears. [6]

The unpleasant things should be expressed by turning away the head as well as the eye, and contracting both the eyes and the nose. [7]

To express neutral quality the actions should be neutral.

What refers to one's own experience is called Ātmastha and what describes other peoples actions is called Parastha.

O King ! When the hands are lying on the back, and forming svastika form remain at the sides, and when the head is raised up and the eyes are looking up the pose indicates morning, sky, night, evening, day, seasons, deep darkness and wide water reser-



voirs, directions, planets with constellations and whatever refers to sky. [8-11]

In acting all these one should use appropriate various eye-gestures. With the abovementioned hands and corresponding chest and head postures and by looking down one should show objects lying down.

The moon, the moonlight, happiness and the wind should be acted by touch gesture (Sparśābhinaya) [12-13]

The Sun, the dust (Rajaḥ), the smoke and the fire should be suggested by covering the face (Avagunṭhana). The heat of the ground and the warmth should be indicated by seeking of the shade. [14]

The mid-day sun should be indicated by the raising of the head and the oblique look. The sunrise and sun-set should be shown by an astonishing look. The moon and the stars also should be indicated by the same look.

The happiness should be indicated by touching the limbs but Romāṇca should not be shown. [15-16]

The unhappiness as well as distress should be expressed by distorting the face. Serious, high and excellent things should be indicated by the fine movements of the limbs. [17]

The Arāla-hasta should be used to indicate the part of the chest covered by Yajnopavita (sacred thread). The same hasta should be used to show neck-lace or garland and the string. [18]

The idea that the everything is understood can be indicated by revolving the Pradeśīnt (index) finger and also eye-sight and by pressing the Alapadma pose. [19]

The sound to be heard should be indicated by contacting the ear (with the palm) and the objects to be seen by appropriate looks. Things pertaining to one-self, to others or to someone should also be expressed by the different looks. [20]

The performer should indicate lightning, (the falling of) meteor, thunder of the cloud, the sparks, and the flame and the whip by contracting the body and narrowing the eyes [21]

For keeping of a bumble-bee etc, the face should be covered. The hands in the Svastika and the Padma-kosa forms should hang down to indicate a lion, a bear, a monkey etc. And to indicate bowing at the feet of the elders, the Svastika and the Tri-patāka hands should be used [22-23]

The Khataka and the Svastika forms of the hands should be used to indicate holding of the whip. And the numbers one to ten should be indicated by fingers, beyond that the numbers ten, hundred and other places of ten should be indicated by Patāka-Hasta or by the words [24-25]

An umbrella, a flag and a banner should be indicated by holding up a staff. Various sorts of weapons should be indicated by modes of holding them [26]

Concentration of mind should be shown by looking down and slightly bending the head. To indicate smile, meditation, or guess, the left hand in the Sandaṁsa pose should be used [27]

The performer should make the head Udvāhita (lifted), keeping the Hamsa-paksa to the right and stand erect in indicating a child [28]

To indicate going away, returning, disappearing, tired or hearing some sentence, the Arāla pose moved towards left and brought near the head should be used. [29]

Sarada (Autumn) can be expressed by the self-possession and cheerful expressions or by different kinds of flowers [30]

The experts should indicate Hemanta (Cold season) by the trembling of limbs and by seeking fire while the persons of middle and low class should do the acting of shivering of heads, teeth and lips, by the contraction of limbs and the low class persons should express cold by cooing (kūjitaiḥ) and by hissing (sitkāra) [31-32]

The persons of middle order and the higher order and those coming in between the two (*Avasthāntara-samprāpta*) should do the acting of Śīśira by the acting of cold. [33]

Acting of Vasanta (Spring) can be done by showing different kinds of flowers, by the efforts to please the beloved and eagerness for enjoyment. [34]

The summer season (*Griṣma*) can be shown by the acting of wiping the sweat, falling on the ground, by fanning and by the gesture of touch of hot wind. [35]

The acting of the rainy season (*Prāṇvṛṣābhīnaya*) can be shown by gesture of listening the deep sound (of the clouds).

The happy condition and the unhappy condition in the different seasons (in the company or separation of the beloved) can be shown by the words. [36]

In showing one's own natural position, men should adopt *Vaiṣṇava sthāna*, while women should adopt *Āyata* and *Avahittha sthāna*. [37]

The behaviour of men should be expressed through the *Angahāra* of firm character, while that of women should be done through *Angahāra* of delicate character. [38]

The embrace should be accompanied with a smile and the Joy is indicated by the bristling of hair. Anger should be suggested by upturned eyes. The anger due to jealousy should be shown by the throwing away of ornaments and garlands and also by the shaking of the head and by heart breaking gestures. [39-40]

A man should exhibit unhappiness by sighing and looking down and by striking the ground and the hands, and women by crying. [41]

The crying is of two kinds, of joy and of pain. They should be expressed by the happy or unhappy face. [42]

The fear in case of men should be indicated by confusion and agitation, and in case of women fear should be shown by searching for a protector, loud crying and embracing a man

One can indicate small birds like parrots and Sārikās by moving the fingers of Tripatāka hands, and big birds like peacocks, cranes, swans etc by the two kinds of Paksāngahāras [43-45]

Bhūtas, Piśācas, Yaksas, Dānavas and Rāksasas should be shown by appropriate Angahāras and those who are not visible should be acted, by agitation and wonder, as if they are visible [46-47]

O King ! The presence of gods should be indicated by bowing, while absence by the symbols and beautiful imitations [48]

For bowing men one should raise the left hand in Arāla pose and make it touch the head, but in bowing the women Kapota hand should be used [49]

The learned should indicate eminent men, friends, Viṣas and Dhūrtas by Parimandala hasta [50]

Mountains and tall trees should be indicated by stretched and raised hands as if trying to reach a high object [51]

A multitude of men and a very big army should be shown by the raised Patāka hands Saurya (valour), Dhairya (graveness), Darpa (pride), arrogance (Garva), Generosity (Aadārya) and loftiness (Ucchrāya) should be expressed by Arāla hand [52-53]

The learned should turn two Mṛgaśtra hands away from the chest region, quickly stretch and throw them up to indicate an enclosed object [54]

To indicate darkness, entry into a hole or house or a cave one hand should be somewhat stretched in such a way that the palm is downwards [55]

Persons suffering from lusty desire (Kāmārta), fever, or those whose minds are overpowered by some curse should be indicated by high breathing and shivering [56]

A swing should be visibly indicated by oscillation. Now here I shall tell you about Ākāśa-vacana and Ātmagata (the words from the sky and the words expressed to one's own self). [57]

There are different types of speaking : Ākāśavacana, Apavāritaka and Janāntika.

Addressing someone, who is not present on the stage is called Ākāśavacana. [58]

The speech which is not to be heard by other characters on the stage (but supposed to be heard by the audience) is called Janāntika. The words whispered in the ears are called Apavāritaka. [59]

The actor should speak Janāntika and Apavāritaka by interposing Tripatāka hand. [60]

In dream-speech, the words should be indistinct (with choked throat-Gadgada). And the syllables of the old persons should be made with faltering and indistinct words. [61]

The charming words (Kala-svana) of children should be with incomplete pronounced syllables. And the words of the sick persons should be uttered in a feeble tone and accompanied by protracted breath. [62]

The moment of death (Mrtyu-kāla) should be indicated by protracted breathing. The acting of the dead should be done by the motionlessness of limbs.

O King ! I shall tell you about the Sāttvikābhinaya in Rasas and Sthāyibhāvas. [63]

O King ! I can describe only this much Abhinaya to you; because the Nāṭya is really the imitation of the world. Therefore it is impossible to describe the whole of it. [64]

Thus ends the Adhyāya 28 entitled Sāmānyābhinaya (Acting in general), during the discourse between Mārkaṇḍeya and Vajra, in the third part of Sri Viṣṇudharmottara.

---

## ADHYĀYA 29

Mārkaṇḍeya said : Henceforth, I shall tell you about the characteristics of the gaits.

In the natural gait the knees should be raised upto the waist. And in the marshal gait the knees should be raised upto the chest.

The learned one should make Sthirā Gati (steady) gait. When one has suffered from fever or when one is very hungry, or is exhausted by penance, or is suffering from any disease, or in wonder, or in Avahittha (dissimulation), or is full of eagerness, in śrngāra or in Śoka and in walking at sweet will. [1-3]

Śighrā (quick) gait is to be used when one is uneasy, trembling, in fear, in terror, in fury, in joy, in the actions to be done quickly, in hearing unpleasant things and in seeing wonderful things, in urgent actions, in searching the enemy, in pursuing the guilty, and chaising the beasts of prey. [4-7]

The gait in the Erotic sentiment (Śrngārinī gati) should be adopted, when there is the case of Svasthakāmita (not secret but open) love. In that gait one is dressed in the handsome style and walks with rhythmic steps, and the performance should make the movements of the arms in accordance with the legs. The way should be shown by the female messenger (Dūtī). [7-8]

On going to meet the lover in secret love (Pracchanna-Kāmita) puts on black dress and not many ornaments, walks with slow steps, and is often suspicious at every sound, has a trembling body, is suspicious and falters repeatedly. [9-10]

Gait in Raudra-Rasa (terrible sentiments) is said to be of three kinds : in Aṅga (body/limbs), in Svabhāva (nature) and in Nepathya (make-up).

In Raudra, Aṅga sentiments the body is wet with blood and it carries part of intestines in the form of lotus. [11]

The Raudra in which many weapons are carried is called Raudra-Nepathya,

The Raudra, in which one is rough, speaks ferocious words and is cruel, is called Svabhāva Raudra (terrible in nature). [12]

In these different forms of Raudra, the stress in the gait is given on the steps four Tālas wide.

When the ground of a cemetery or a battlefield (on which one walks) is unpleasant, and when the feet close or wide apart the gait is Bībhatsikā (odious sentiment).

The heroic persons should adopt Vikṣipta-pad-Vikramā (Heroic sentiment) in the mood of wonder and joy. In that gait foot-steps are swift. [13-15]

In the pathetic sentiment (Karuna), the steps are steady. There should not be suggested beauty and rhythm.

In feeble gait of weakness, one should walk with stiff and the rolling body. [15-17]

When one is severely wounded, one should walk with contracted body.

In the sentiment of terror (Bhayānaka), the gait should become quick and stiff according to the purpose. [18]

When a deformed creature is seen, one should walk with eyes wide open. The gait of the ascetics is slow. He looks only at a distance of a yuga. [19]

In the darkness the gait is slow on account of touching with hands (to find the way). {The gait of one sitting in a chariot should be shown by slow steps. The movement of the chariot

should be shown by Sama-pāda Sthāna (posture), in one hand the bow, and in the other the pole of the chariot should be held. [19-21]

The charioteer should be shown as if holding the whip.

The gait of one sitting in a celestial car (Vimāna) should be joyful. [22]

Going up and coming down should be indicated by movements upward look and downward look respectively. And going through the sky should be shown by turning circularly. [23]

The descent from the sky should be indicated by straight and raised feet. Ascent to a high place should be shown by Apakrānta steps. [24]

The descent should be done with steps away from one another as if one is suspicious. The gait in the water should be shown by upward movement of the steps. [25]

The climbing on a tree should be shown by upward movement of the hands. And the movement of an elephant should be shown by steps moving sideways and away from one another in the form of Sūcividdha and by holding the goad, and in case of the horse by holding the reins. And the movement of other animals be made by holding the bit of a bridle. [25-27]

The gait of a horse-riding should be done by Vaiśākha Sthānaka. The gait of the serpents should be shown by feet in svastika form. [28]

The gait of Viṣa should be shown with graceful steps, and the gait of a kancukīya should be unsteady and stumbling. [29]

In the gait of a lean and weak person the breath should be obstructed. The gait of a person seized with disease, or one tired after penance should be also like that. [30]



The gait of one who has walked a long way should be shown by slow and weak steps The gait of a drunkard person should be shown by stumbling on both the sides [31]

The gait of a mad man should be shown by irregular steps He would be talking irrelevantly and he should be dirty and hairy (shaggy) [32]

The gait of a crippled should be acted in accordance with his defects and purpose The gait of a fat man should be shown as if dragging the body [33]

The gait of a Vidusaka should be such as to cause laughter, and in his hand there should be a stick naturally bent [34]

In the gait of the menials (Cetas) the eyes would be bent thinking of something And the gaits of persons of different countries should be shown according to their natural peculiarities [35]

O King ! The gait of the beasts of prey and other animals also should be according to their nature, and the gaits of the remaining should be acted in accordance with the meaning to be expressed [36]

The gait of the persons of the highest class should be slow (firm), of middle class middling and of the low class quick and frequent The rhythm (laya) of the three should be acted according to their nature (Vilambita, Druta-Vilambita and Druta)

O the Chief of the Kings ! the movements of the steps on the stage should be always made looking to the area and the form of the stage [37-38]

The gait of women should be with graceful steps, of men steady or proud O lion among Kings ! This much is said that the gaits should be exhibited in accordance with meaning [38]

First of all the dress should be in accordance with the age, the gait should be in accordance with the dress and the recitation of speech should be according to the gait and the acting should be in accordance with recitation. [39-40]

Thus ends the Adhyāya 29 entitled, the description of the movements in gaits (Gati-Pracāra-Varṇana) during the discourse between Mārkaṇḍeya and Vajra, in the third part of Śrī Viṣṇu-dharmottara.

---

## ADHYĀYA : 30

Mārkaṇḍeya said : In Nāṭya (Drama) there are nine Rasas, (sentiments) called Hāsyā, Śṛṅgāra, karuna, Raudra, vīra, bhayānaka, bibhatsa, Adbhuta, and Śānta. [1]

This Śānta Rasa is an independent Rasa and it lies separately, while Hāsyā results from śṛṅgāra, Karuna arises from Raudra, Adbhuta results from vīra, and Bhayānaka from Bibhatsa.

The colours of these Rasas and the sāttvika Abhinaya are also stated. [2-3]

O King : It is said that Śānta Rasa has natural colour. Śṛṅgāra is śyāma, Raudra is said to be rakta (Red). [4]

One should know that Hāsyā is sita (white) and Bhayānaka is lṛṣṇa. Vīra should be known as gaura (reddish white), and Adbhuta is called pīta (yellow). [5]

Karuna is of kapota colour (the colour of the kapota or pigeon) and Bibhatsa has nīla (indigo) colour.

The presiding deity of hāsyā rasa is Pramatha deva (Śankara), the deity of Śṛṅgāra is Viṣṇu bhagavāna. The deity of raudra rasa is Rudra, the deity of karuna is Yama deva, the Deity of Bibhatsa is Mahākāla and the deity of Bhayānaka is Kāla-Deva. [6-7]

The Presiding deity of Vīra is Mahendra and the deity of Adbhuta is Brahma-deva. And one should know that the deity of Śānta Rasa is parah puruṣaḥ (Supreme Soul). [8]

O King! It is said that Śānta is produced from Vairāgya (renunciation). It should be indicated by the dress of one who has taken Sanyāsa and by mercy towards all creatures, meditation, the preaching of the path of salvation (Mokṣa) and unconcern for happiness or misery, absence of hatred and pride and equanimity towards all creatures. (Samah Sarvesu bhūtesu). [9-11]

Hāsyā is surely created by inappropriate talk and inappropriate dress. It is said to be of two kinds, Ātmastha and parastha. [12]

If a person laughs himself it is Ātmastha and the other person laughs it is parastha. It is of three types: Hāsyā of the high class persons, of the low class persons and of the prominent persons. [13]

The Hāsyā of the best persons is a smile. In that the teeth are not seen, and the cheeks including temples, made attractive by sarcasms and vibrate slightly. [14]

In the Hāsyā of the middle order people, the teeth are seen. O King ! The Hāsyā of the lowgrade persons is accompanied with tears and with noise. [15]

Śrngāra is said to be of two kinds : Śrngāra resulting from Saṁbhoga (union) and from Viraha (Separation). In the Śrngāra resulting from Vipralambha the feeling of loathsomeness (Nirveda) should be expressed. [16]

In Vipralambha ten types of Kāmāvasthas (stages of love) are indicated. O King ! in the first stage (Cakṣu-prītiḥ) the pleasure of seeing each other is stated. [17]

In the second stage there is the attachment of mind (Manasāṅga Sangah). In the third there is constant remembering (Smāranam Nirantaram). [18]

In the fourth is loss of sleep (Nidrāchedah) and in the fifth is leanness of the body (Tanutā). O King ! in the sixth state, it is said that one turns away from sense pleasures (Vyāvṛtir Visayebhyaḥ). [19]

In the seventh state there is disappearance of bashfulness (Lajjā-pranāśah). Thereafter (in the eighth) is insanity (Unmādah). In the ninth is swooning (Mūrcā) and in the tenth is the death (Maranam). [20]

When a couple—man and woman adorned with garlands and fragrant anointment (lepan) exhibit union it is called Sambhoga-Śṛṅgāra. But O King ! from Soka (sorrow) Karuna Rasa arises. Its acting is done by terrified limbs, sighs and weeping of lamentation, pale face and drying up of mouth (Sosa) [21-23]

Raudra Rasa arises from anger (Krodha). It's acting is done by redness of eyes, raised eyebrow, anger, non-tolerance accompanied with adventure and giving pain with a multitude of weapons. [24-25]

Bhayānaka Rasa results from fear (Bhaya). It is indicated by pale face, trembling and drying up of the mouth.

Bībhatsa Rasa arises from disgust (Jugupsā). It is expressed by shaking of the nose and by agitation [26-27]

The Rasa that arises from wonder (Āścarya) is called Adbhuta. That Adbhuta Rasa should be acted by widened eyes, bristling of hair etc. and by movement of fingers and perspiration [28]

Rasa is said to be the essence of Nāṭya. No Nṛtta is possible without Rasa. Therefore man should endeavour to make Nṛtta full of Rasas. [29]

Thus ends the Adhyāya 30, entitled Rasa-Varnana (description of sentiments), during the discourse between Mārkaṇḍeya and Vajra, in the third part of Sri Viṣṇudharmottara

---

Mārkaṇḍeya said Hereafter I tell you about Bhāvadhyāya (the chapter on Bhāvas or moods) Hear it from me They are told about forty nine (one less than fifty), pañcāśateka-varjitaḥ) beginning with Hāsa [1]

The Hāsa which is resulting from the imitation of the behaviour of others (Para-Cestānukaranāt) should be a Smīta-hāsa (smile) or laughter so the learned should do the acting that way [2]

When the desired thing or object is attained the Bhāva named Ratī arises That Ratī should be acted gracefully with sweet speech etc [3]

O King ! due to the separation of a beloved person and loss of wealth Soka (sorrow) arise It should be acted with the acting of weeping. [4]

For Raudra Rasa the performer of the Nāṭya should express four types of anger (krodha) They depend upon four causes enemy, elders, servant and love [5]

The anger of the enemy is furious, that of the elders is accompanied with perspiration that of the servants is merciful and that of the women arises from love [6]

Adbhuta results from wonder (Vismaya) Its Sthāyibhāva Vismaya results from joy, an accomplishment of an extraordinary deed, with the help of Romāñca (horripilation), laughing (Hasana) etc [7]

That Bhāva is free from Moha (calmness) and is in form of business and leadership (Vyavasāyanayātmaka) Utsāha (the sthāyibhāva of Vīra) should be expressed by the acting of enthusiasm etc [8]

Bhaya (the Sthāyibhāva of Bhayānaka), results from an offence committed by oneself It should be expressed with confusion by trembling, horror, falling down. [9]

Jugupsā (the Sthāyībhāva of Bibhatsa) results from the sight of ugly things. It should be expressed by showing disgust, anxiety and side glance [10]

Nirveda (the Sañcārī bhava) results from poverty, and utter loss of desired objects. It should be acted by sighing with one another. Glāni results from asceticism, vomiting, fatigue and austerity. It should be exhibited by walking slowly, trembling etc. and thinness [11-12]

Saṅkā results when one is caught by thieves and the like. To express this (Sañcārībhāva) the actor should look in all directions [13]

Asuyā results from the offence of others. The wise should do its acting by the loss of gratitude (guṇa-nāśana) and envy (Vidvesa) [14]

Mada results from too much drinking by three types of men—the best, the worst and the mediocre. The Mada of the best should be exhibited by moving eyes, that of the mediocre by speaking non-sensible things, and that of the worst by falling down and walking aimlessly [15-16]

Srama is due to exertion or a long journey. It should be acted by massaging the limbs, deep breathing and yawning [17]

Ālasya arises due to Garbha (pregnancy), exhaustion, attachment or it is a natural quality. It should be acted by lying down or sitting on a seat [18]

Dainya is the affliction of mind on account of a bad state of affairs. It should be exhibited by speculation of the heart. If it is due to the sight of the robbers in an odd place, it should be acted by expressing the symptoms of terror [19-20]

When one cannot face the difficulties and troubles and remember the enmity, Moha occurs. The actor should exhibit it with all his organs of senses [21]

**Smṛti** results from remembering former events It should be exhibited by severe moving (to and fro) the eye brows

**Dhṛti** results from the knowledge of the world It should be acted by one who has enjoyed the world but it should be dropped in the case of one who has not got it [22]

**Kṛidā** results from light-hearted play and joy It should be acted with play, according to the direction of the teacher [23]

**Vṛidā** results from doing a thing which should not have been done It should be done by looking down and by scratching the earth [24]

**O King !** acting thoughtlessly should be known as **Capalatā** It should be expressed by acting in that manner [25]

**Harsa** is a result of the fulfilment of one's desires A wise man should express it by happiness cheerfulness bristling of hair, and perspiration [26]

**O King !** always **Āvega** results from confusion The learned should exhibit it by saying **Āhāh** words and by suddenly exhibiting undesirable thing [27]

**Viśāda** results from frustration (**Kārya-nāśa**) It is exhibited by false sleep and sighs [28]

**Autsukya** results from anxiety It should be acted by stretching the limbs and by fresh meditation [29]

**Nidṛā** results from sleeping late hours at night idleness or intoxication It should be exhibited by rubbing eyes yawning and heaviness of limbs [30]

**Apasmāra** results due to the anger of gods It should be acted by swooning and senseless condition [31]

**Suptatva** results from the ability of sleep In it sleep should be acted



Bodha or Vibodha results from waking up from sleep. In that yawning should be exhibited. [32]

Amaṣṣa results from superior learning, bravery, wealth or power. A learned man should do its acting by shaking of head. [33]

Avahittha is due to audacity (Dhārṣṭya) and roughness. It is in form of fear. Its acting should be done by hiding all the limbs. [34]

Ugratā should be shown in such action as robbery. The actor should exhibit it by threatening. It should be learnt that Unmāda results mostly from the disturbance of Vāta and from separation. Mati should be shown by teaching the students and it is a result of proficiency in śāstras. [35]

For showing Vyādhi, the gestures of Glāni should be done. Vyādhi results from the disturbance of the three) Dhātus. Its acting should be done by bad gestures and senseless speech. [36]

Marana results from disease or wounds Its acting should be done by senseless sense organs and motionless body.

Trāsa results from terrific noises etc. It is exhibited by contracting limbs, trembling etc. [37-39]

San̄deha results from thinking. It should be acted by knitting and moving of eye brows. Krodha results from offence. In its acting anger should be exhibited. [40]

It should be known that Bhaya resulting from committing an offence. It should be exhibited by the fear in eyes The Hair arising from the achievement of the desired thing should be exhibited by bristliness of hair.

In Bhaya and Krodha both, there is the bristling of Hair. There is a change of voice due to Bhaya and roughness. So it should be acted.

Asru results from sorrow, joy and weeping. [40-42]

The organiser of Nāṭya should know that the change of colour of the face is called *Vaivarnya*

One should not try to bring forth the *Vaivarnya* because it is very difficult to do so [43]

It is said that in *Hāsyā Rasa Glāni*, *Sankā*, *Asūyā Śrama*, *Capalatā*, *Romāṇca*, *Harsa*, *Nidrā*, *Unmāda*, *Mada*, *Sveda* and *Avahitā Bhāvās* can be there. In *śṅgāra* excepting *Ālasya* *Augrya* and *Jugupsā*, all the *Bhāvās* have their place in this *Rasa*. [44-45]

In *Karuna Rasa Nirveda*, *Cintā*, *Dainya*, *Glāni*, *Asru*, *Jadatā*, *Marana* and *Vyādhī Bhāvās* can be there.

*Krodha*, *Asammoha*, *Hatotsāha*, *Āvega*, *Mada*, *Capalata*, *Harsha* and *ugrata* arise from *Raudra*.

In *Bibhatsa* there can be *Apasmāra*, *Unmāda*, *Viśāda* *Mada*, *Mṛtyu*, *Vyādhī* and *Bhaya Bhāvās* [46-49]

In *Adbhuta Rasa* there can be *Stambha*, *Sveda*, *Moha*, *Romāṇca*, *Viśmaya*, *Āvega*, *Jadatā*, *Harsa* and *Asūyā Bhāvās* [49-50]

In *Vīra Rasa* *Sveda* *Vepathu*, *Romāṇca*, *Gadgada*, *Matī*, *Ugratva*, *Amarsa*, *Mada*, *Romāṇca*, *Svarabheda*, *Krodha*, *Asūyā*, *Dṛṭi*, *Garva* and *Vitarka Bhāvās* are there

And the other *Sāttvika bhāvās* are acted by various acting. The expert of *Nāṭya* should know them thoroughly in the *Rasas* [50-52]

The *Rasa* whose form is the resultant of many *Bhāvās* cohering together (*Bahūnām Samavetānām rūpam, yasya bhavetbahu. Sa mantavyo rasah sthāyī*) is called *Sthāyī Rasa* all others are called *Sancāri Bhāvās* (52-53)

*Śṅgāra* is said to be of three types, expressed through speech (*Vāg*), get-up (*Nepathya*) and action (*Kriyā*) Similarly *Hāsyā* and

Raudra are said to be of two types, as expressed through limbs (bodily gestures) and get-up

Karuna is said to be of three types, resulting from the loss of religion (Dharma), worldly good (Artha) or relatives (Bandhu) [54-55]

Experts in Rasas have said that Vira is supposed to be of three types expressed through fight (Yuddha), Mercy (Dayā) and Liberal Donation (Dāna) [56]

It should be known that Bhayānaka is of three types due to feigned fear (Vyāja), fear due to terror (Trāsa) and offence (Aparādha)

There is no poem which expresses only one Rasa. Some of them arise from prayoga (performance) It may be Bhāva or may be Rasa, but its action is always there [57]

Thus I have told you the arrangement of forty-nine Bhāvās, O the moon amongst the King ! I have described here where they are skillfully joined with Rasa. [58]

Thus ends the Adhyāya 31, entitled the description of forty-nine Bhāvās, during the discourse between Mārkaṇḍeya and Vajra, in the third part of Sri Viṣṇudharmottara

---

Mārkandeya said Now I shall explain to you the Mudrās of Hands When the Tarjani is arched on the extended left thumb it makes Omākāra-Mudrā

When all the fingers beginning with the thumb are curved one by one, in the middle of the hand (i.e. palm) they make Mudrā representing A, i, u, e and o When the above fingers are extended they form Mudrās representing Ā, ī, ū, ē and Au Mukula hasta Mudrā represents Am, particular type of Mukula Hasta Mudrā represents Ah When the Tarjani of one hand touches the root of the thumb of the others it forms Mudrā representing Ka-varga

When the Tarjani is put on the lowest line (Rekhā) of the thumb it forms the Mudrā representing Ta-Varga

When the Tarjani is put on the line (of the thumb) above, they form Mudrās to represent pa-Varga with Sa, Ya, etc Beginning with Tarjani, it is for pa-(ṛya) varga Fingers after that is Sa-Varga

When the middle fingers touche the nail it is the Mudrā for Ha and Ksa

The mystic significance (Rahasya) of A is Vāsudeva That of Ā is Sankarṣana. That of Am is Pradyumna, and the significance of Ah is Anuruddha When the backs of two hands Anjali Purusa touch each other, in such a way that the shortest meets the shortest (Kaniyāsi), Tarjani meets Tarjani and the thumb with the thumb, the mudrā is Tārksya Mudrā

Tāja Mudrā is that, in which the tips of the Patāka hands are curved Makara Mudrā is that in which the thumb is spread obliquely In Ardha Candra Mudrā the finger is curved In Śankha

Mudrā the tips of the fingers are joined with the Kaniyast (little finger) and the thumb is attached.

When two Ah-Kāra hands are attached to each other in such a way that the fingers touch one another it is called Padma Mudrā. In Lakṣmī Mudrā the thumb is curved. In Sesa the fingers of Makara-Mudrā are spread. In Bhogōśayana the Śikhara hand is above the Makara hand.

In A-Kāra hand if the middle finger is spread it becomes Garuda Mudrā. In the same Mudrā when the middle finger is held by the Śikhara, it is Garuda-Vāhana Mudrā. When the tips of two Madhyamā fingers and two thumbs are joined with one another it is Cakra Mudrā. When one Kapittha hand is on another Kapittha, and Cībuka (Chin) is resting on them it is Gadā Mudrā. When in Kapittha Hasta the Madhyamikā (middle finger) is bent it becomes Hala. The Karkajaka hand forms the Musala Mudrā. When the middle finger falls down from the middle of the Kapittha is Carma (shield). In the Kapittha hand the finger touches the back of the palm it becomes Khadga Mudrā. When in Śikhara hand the middle finger is hung down it is Dhanus-Mudrā. When the joined Tarjantī, Madhyamikā and the thumb are separated it is Śara Mudrā. When in Mukula hand the Kaninikā finger is curved it becomes Kaustubha hand. When two Śikhara hands are held apart from each other it is Vanamālā Mudrā.

When two separate Ah-Kāra hands are joined it signifies Nrsiṃha. When the little fingers of Śikhara hand is stretched downwards it signifies Varāha. 'I' Mudrā signifies Hayaśira Mudrā. 'Om' Mudrā is to signify Vāmana. The span from the end of the little finger to the end of the thumb (Vīṭastī), signifies Trī-Vikrama. Ardhacandra Mudrā signifies Matsya. When the Patāka hand is curved downward it signifies Kūrma. When in Śikhara hand the little finger is turned down and the thumb is spread, the Mudrā signifies Haṁsa. When the Patāka hand curved in the middle of the hand signifies Dattātreya. The Kapittha Mudrā signifies Paraś-urāma. When Two Śikhara hands are joined it signifies Dāśarathī

(Rāma) Patāka hand signifies Kṛṣṇa Tripatāka hand signifies Baladeva Śikhara hand signifies Viṣṇu Patāka lying on the back signifies Pṛthvī The curved Patāka whose thumb is spread signifies Toya (Water) When the finger is put on the tip of the thumb to indicate the nail it signifies Agni (fire) Moving Patāka hand signifies Vāyu (wind) The oblique Muṣṭi hand with the stretching Tarjani signifies Antarikṣa (Sky) Joining of two Vitastis (long span between the extended thumb and the little finger), and giving round shape signifies Arka (Sun) Curved half of the Anāmikā signifies crescent moon When from all the fingers in Mukula shape, Madhyamā and Tarjani are spread, they signify Nara-Nārāyaṇa

In the above hand when Anāmikā is stretched, it indicates three guṇa (Sattva, Rajas and Tamas) and also Brahmā Viṣṇu and Maheśvara Where on the left hand with extended fingers, the same kind of right hand is placed, it signifies Kapila

When the four fingers are spread and the curved thumb is placed at their root, the Mudrā signifies (four) Vedas The stretched Kanīṣṭhikā signifies Rgveda When Anāmikā is stretched in that way, it signifies Yajurveda Four fingers stretched with the Anguṣṭha, signify Sāmaveda When all the fingers are joined together and then they are turned in the middle of the Mudrā, the Mudrā signifies Gāyatrī Sāmaveda, Mudrā with the fingers downward signifies Śikṣā (teaching) When the above Mudrā faces the South, it signifies Kalpa When the Tarjani and the thumb are brought together, the Mudrā signifies Vyākaraṇa When the thumb of Śikhara touches the middle of Tarjani, the Mudrā signifies Nirukta Two Khaṭvākāmukhas signifies Jyotiṣa When the above hands are turned downward, the Mudrā signifies the varieties of Chandas (Chando-Vicitī)

O the best of the Kings ! I have told you these Rahasya-Mudrās Hereafter I shall tell you about the ordinary Mudrās Please learn them from me [1]

Thus ends the Adhyāya 32, entitled the description of Rahasya-Mudrās, during the discourse between Mārkaṇḍeya and Vajra, in the third part of Śrī Viṣṇudharmottara

## ADHYĀYA 33

Mārkaṇḍeya said ! when the hand is lying on the back, the four fingers are bent and the thumb is joined to the side, it is called Bhasma Mudrā [1]

When in the above hand the finger is obliquely raised it is called Linga Mudrā

When the three fingers are contracted and placed up on the thumb, and the Tarjaṇī is stretched it is called Jaṭā-Mudrā

When in the above hand the Tarjaṇī is brought near the end of the eye, it is called Netra Mudrā [2-3]

To exhibit Saśāṅka Mudrā in above Mudrā the thumb should be stretched, raised and put on the head [4]

To exhibit Govrśa Mudrā, all the fingers are stretched and rounded like horns, then hand should be held above the head [5]

The Paryasta Mudrā should be exhibited by the making the above hand oblique, with all the fingers bent and covering the thumb with the middle finger [6]

When the Kaṇiṣṭhikā (small finger) is contracted and placed upon the thumb and then three fingers are stretched, the Mudrā is called paṭṭī [7]

When the thumb is between the Kaṇiṣṭhikā and Anāmikā it is called Diksā

When both the hands are lying on the back with their fingers intertwined and the thumb at the end of the small finger, it is called Ananta Mudrā [8]

When on the back of the left hand the right hand is placed in such a way that the nails of the two hands come in contact, it is called Dharma Mudrā [9]

When the hand is in reverse, it is called Jñāna Mudrā When the Kanisthikās and thumbs of both the hands are formed into a pair and stretched, then it becomes Vairāgya Mudrā, which is auspicious and doing all the acts. [10-11]

When backs of both the hands are joined in such a way that the little finger and the thumb are joined, it becomes Aśvarya-Mudrā When backs of both the hands are joined in such a way that Kanisthikā and Tarjani are joined together and the remaining four fingers are raised it becomes Padma Mudrā When in the above hands the stalk of the lotus is formed by bringing the two thumbs on one side (Ekatah) it becomes Sakala Mudrā which is auspicious and it pacifies all the wicked persons [12-14]

When three middle fingers are curved, the small finger and the thumb move on the edge and the right thumb lying on the back is wrapped by the left thumb The left thumb is wrapped by the fingers of the right hand and the fingers of the right hand are wrapped by fingers of the left hand and the Tarjanis are curved, it becomes Niskala-rūpini Mudrā [15-17]

When the back of one hand is joined to the back of the other with the thumb and the fingers curved in the middle of the hand in such a way that the nails are hidden, the thumbs are placed evenly and the shape of garland is given, it is called Devi Mudrā [17-18]

When one thumb is joined to the other and the small fingers is joined to the small finger, and the six fingers joined and also contracted in the middle of the palm, it becomes Saktyākāra [19-20]

When the hand is bent downwards and three fingers are contracted, it is called Skanda Mudrā It is invincible even by gods. [21]

When in the above hand the Madhyamā is slightly bent and the thumb is placed on the Tarjani so as to give it shape of a tooth, it becomes Vighnarāja Mudrā destroying all the obstacles [22-23]



When the two hands are stretched lying on the back and the left Tarjani and Anguṣṭha are joined it is called Sakra Mudrā [24]

Hutāsana Mudrā is formed by contracting the nails of both the hands in the middle, and stretching the thumb upwards so as to lie flat

When the hand is lying on the back and the fingers are contracted and the middle one stretched, it is called Virupākṣa Mudrā [25]

When in the raised hands the fingers are stretched, it becomes Vāruṇi Mudrā When the above hand is made oblique it becomes Māruti Mudrā [26]

When all the fingers are contracted (in the above hand) it becomes Kauberi Mudrā [27]

When in above hand the three middle fingers are stretched it is called Isāni Mudrā

Padma Mudrā is Brahmana Mudrā The hand like a hood is called Ananta Mudrā The right hand joined with the left should be taken away Then their tips of the fingers should be held by two Tarjanis Then all the remaining six fingers should be contracted and put on its own thumb This is called Vajra Mudrā [28-30]

Sakti Mudrā is already explained before When the two arms and the hands are stretched it is Danda Mudrā

When two thumbs are bent so as to be in the middle of the two small fingers and two ring-fingers, and the four fingers are spread in such a way as to make a pair it is called Khadga Mudrā [31]

To form Patākā Prasrta Karā give the left Tarjani a circular shape, place it on the thumb Then the right Tarjani should be put in the cavity so formed Then curving the right Tarjani and three left fingers should be stretched Then making a fist of the left hand the thumb should be raised and it should be clasped with the other thumb [32-34]

To form a Gadā Mudrā, make the hand oblique bent the four fingers and stretch the thumb.

When two hands are joined to each other so that the Kaniṣṭhikā and the thumb are joined, and then the pair is stretched it is called Sūla Mudrā. [35-36]

To form the Dravyarūpa Mudrā, the hand should be always stretched and given the shape of Svasti (blessings or a svastik shape). The tips of the two stretched fingers of each hand should be placed in the middle. The two Tarjantī should be contracted and placed on the back of the two Madhyamās. It is used to indicate the soul. When two hands are lying on the back and the six fingers mentioned in the above Mudrā joined properly in an even way, it becomes Vaisnavī Mudrā. [36-39]

When the two Tarjantī are contracted and placed on the back of the Madhyamā and the two thumbs placed on the Kanīṣṭhikā, it is called Ghṛta Mudrā. [40]

To form the second Dravya Rūpi and Gandha Mudrā, the left hand should lie on the back and the right hand should face downwards. And the two curved Madhyamā and Anāmikā should be placed on the thumbs. And the two Madhyamās should cover the Tarjantī and Kaniyā. [41-42]

When two hands are lying on the back, Kanīṣṭhikā and Anāmikā are contracted, out of four, two are stretched, and the two Tarjantī are placed on the thumbs, it is called Puspa Mudrā [42-43]

When two hands are lying on the back, six fingers are contracted and their tips are touching each other and at their root thumbs are placed, it is called Dhūpa Mudrā. [44-45]

When the four fingers-Tarjantī is raised with Tarjantī and the Kaniyastī is raised with Kaniyastī so as to touch the back of one another, with the thumbs raised it is called Dīpa-Mudrā. [46-47]

When the fingers of both the hands are raised in such a way that their backs touch one another, and all join at the tip of the thumbs, it is called Naivedya Mudrā. It gives auspicious results [47-48]

O the descendant of Yadu ! When all the fingers are closely set and then curved, it is called another Puspa Mudrā [49]

When two thumbs are brought together on one side, so also the Anāmikā and Kāntyasī, and two Madhyamās are contracted and placed on the back of Anāmikā and the Tarjanī is inverted on the Madhyamā, it is called Mahā Mudrā. It represents all the ingredients (Sarva-dravya-prapūrant) [50-51]

When the Anāmikā and the Madhyamā fingers are intertwined with each other and then the tips of the middle and the two Tarjanīs are joined and the tip of the Kanīṣṭhikā is joined to the tip of the Anāmikā, and two thumbs are half raised, it becomes Amṛtā Mudrā [52-53]

When in Anjali Mudrā, the Tarjanī is bent it becomes Candīśa Mudrā

When the fingers in the Padma hand are compact it becomes the Astra Mudrā [54]

To form the Sadyojāta Mudrā, the right hand should be formed into a fist and the thumb should be raised and placed on the left thumb, and the fist of the right hand should be wrapped by the fingers of the left. It destroys all sins [55-56]

The above Mudrā in the reverse position is called Vāmadeva Mudrā.

To form Aghora Mudrā one should fold the hands, left Anāmikā should be taken to the right, the middle finger should be contracted, then the thumbs should be contracted, and they should be given the form of a Sūla and turned round over the chest. It destroys all obstacles [57-58]

When two hands are lying on the back and two Anāmikās are curved, and on them two thumbs and two curved Tarjanis are placed, and then Madhyā, Anāmā and Kanīṣṭhikā together are placed on one side, it is called Vajra Mudrā. It removes all bad things [59-60]

When two Kanīṣṭhikās and two Anāmikās are intertwined together and curved inside, and the remaining are extended, it is Isāna Mudrā, which is auspicious and completes all the works that are undertaken [61-62]

When two Tarjanis are curved and the kaniyasi is placed downwards in the middle of the hand, in such a way that its nails touch it, then the four fingers of the two hands are raised on the back of them, and the two thumbs are arranged on one side so as to make the shape of a Nāla, it is called Vyomna Mudrā [63-64]

To form the Sarvātmanah Mudrā, the fist of the left hand should be formed, the Tarjani should be extended and should be held by the right fist [65]

To form Siva, mudrā a learned man should insert the right thumb in the left fist, and the fingers should be placed on the back [66]

When the fingers are rounded and hidden in the palm as if lying inside and the middle finger is stretched, it is called Sikkhā Mudrā [67]

In Dharmajna or pingala or Mangala Mudrā, and Kaniyasi is placed on them. All the fingers are hung downwards and the right thumb is placed on the left [68-69]

If Anamika is in the above pose, it is called Astra Mudrā. When the two hands are lying on the back at one place, and all the fingers are also like that, it is called Gāyatrī Mudrā [70]

O King ! to form the Sakti Mudrā, in the fist of one hand the fingers are extended one by one, beginning with Kanīṣṭhikā and

ending with Tarjaṇī O King ! When the Anjaḷī is placed on the chest, it becomes Namaskāra Mudrā. [71-72]

When the Tarjaṇī from the Kapīṭṭha hand is grasped by the Sikhara hand, it becomes Dhvaja Mudrā

O King ! When two wrists pressing each other with the hands lying on the back and the fingers moving with the two Tarjaṇīs are joined to the thumb, it is called Saśakarnī Mudrā [72-73]

When two hands are folded in a hemisphere form, and the fingers are slightly bent, it is called Mukula-Pankaja Mudrā It is just like a bloomed lotus [74]

The characteristic of the Āvāhaṇī Mudrā is that two moving hands are lying on the back, and the bent thumbs are put in the middle of the hand

When the two thumbs are curved and wrapped with the own fingers, and two hands are facing each other, it becomes Niṣṭhura Mudrā [75-76]

When the raised right thumb is wrapped with the left thumb and similarly the left with the right, it is called Linga Mudrā. And Aisvarya Mudrā should be done with the thumb When thumbs are moved in a circular way, it is called Viśarjana Mudrā [77-78]

By joining the two Vitastīs it becomes Bhaga Mudrā When the Bhaga Mudrā is rubbed by Muṣṭī (fist) it should be known as Linga Mudrā [78-79]

When Sandeṣṭa pose is made and then two lips are rubbed with it, it is called Jirṇa Mudrā [80]

To form Kairinī Mudrā, at first Karpallava pose should be formed by stretching the two arms curving their foreparts, and the tips should be half bent. Then the Tarjaṇī should be bent and placed on the thumb. The two arms should be separately made Nikubja (contracted)

Its presiding deity is Sūrya [81-82]

When the Padma hands are brought together and their fingers are interwoven with fingers, it is called Visva Mudrā [83]

When the two hands with interwoven fingers face each other, Madhyamā and Kanīṣṭhā are joined, and this pose is placed over the chest or over the head or over the Śikhā-bandha (tuft of hair), the Mudrā is called Vyoma [84-85]

When the fist (Muṣṭi) pose is raised up and the middle hand is struck with Tarjanī making a sound, the Mudrā is called Astra Mudrā [86]

When the Madhyamā and the Tarjanī of the left hand are raised, and Kanīṣṭhā and Anāmikā are made crooked along with the thumb, it should be known as Netrapradarsitā Mudrā. It is used to indicate the coming of the cows and the bulls [87-88]

When the two hands lie on the back, all the fingers are curved, and the thumb is placed on them and moved again and again, it is called Sakti Mudrā for all (nine) Saktis. The names of the Saktis are Dīptā, Sūksmā, Jayā, Bhadrā, Vibhūti, Vimalā, Amoghā, Vidyutā and the ninth Sarvatomukhī. They should be with their secret meaning (Sa-Rahasya) [89-90]

To play obeisances (Namaskāra) before the Sun, two hands are facing and clinging each other and extended. It is Namaskāra Mudrā [91]

When the Sandansa hand is formed with Anāmikā it is called Ravi Mudrā when it is formed with Madhyamā it becomes Soma Mudrā, when formed with Anāmikā it is Bhauma Mudrā [92]

When formed at the root of Kaniyāsī it is Jiva Mudrā, when formed at the root of the Anāmikā it is called Sukra Mudrā [93]

When the thumb is placed at the root of Madhyamā, it is called Sanī Mudrā when the thumb reaches the root of Tarjanī, it is called Rāhu Mudrā [94]

O King ! when in the above Mudrā the Tarjani is moved it should be known as Ketu Mudrā. When Śikhara Mudrā is formed with the left hand, it is called Krodha Mudrā. [95]

O King ! two hands are folded in a hemispherical form and raised on the left side, it becomes Varāha Mudrā. It is auspicious and completing all the works of the doer.

When two hands are wrapped in such a way that the right is wrapped by the left, it becomes Bhairavi Mudrā. [96-97]

O King ! When two hands are turned downwards and the eye-sight is also turned downwards, it is called Pātāla-bhanjini Mudrā. [98]

When Kapittha form of hand is made with extended Anāmikā, it is called Stambhani Mudrā.

The Mudrās of 'Ka' and 'Ra' are repeated with the Mudrās of letters 'Eva' placed between them, it is called Krodhini Mudrā. [99-100]

To form Bija Mudrā or Virya Mudrā one should take the Mudrās of 'Sa' and 'Ha' and should divide them by 'Lha' and 'Ta' and then join 'Eva' with it.

When the above hand is joined with 'Eva', it becomes another Bhairavi. [101]

When 'Ksa' and 'Tra' Mudrā are joined with the middle of 'I' and 'Ra', and is covered by 'Eva', it becomes Stambhani of another kind. [102]

When 'La' and 'Sa' Mudrās are repeated with 'C', 'E', 'Ka' and joined to 'Eva' it becomes Vārāhi Mudrā of another kind. When J and Na Mudrās repeated with E and Sa (or Va), becomes Pātāla-bhanjini of another kind. [103-04]

When Tarjani, madhyamā and Anāmikā meet the middle joints at their backs, it is called Śankha Mudrā. The one described before is of another type. [105]

When all the fingers are extended meeting at the back, it becomes Cakra Mudrā, which is different from the described before. [106]

When the Muṣṭi pose is placed on the waist region it becomes Su-Sirā. It is also called Gadā Mudrā, which destroys all obstacles [107]

When the hands are made to face other, and the fingers are wrapped one another with the thumbs, the Mudrā is called Kaustubha Mudrā. [108]

O King! When the Vahnī Mudrā of the left hand and Sikhara Mudrā of the right hand touch each other, it is called Vanamālā Mudrā [109]

When two hands form the Dravya Mudrā and a part of the Mudrā is placed upon the thigh (Janghā) and a part of it is placed on Cibuḷa (chin) and the mouth is opened with the shining tongue as if licking, it is called Mahā Mudrā or Nārasimhī mudrā

When the thumb is grasped by the fist, it is called Hṛṇ Mudrā [110-112]

When a fist is bound on the thumb, and the head is made oblique, and Tarjani is touching the Muṣṭi, it is called Siksā Mudrā [113]

When the two fists are joined at the end of Tarjanis it becomes Kavaca Mudrā

When two hands are forming fists and are joined at the fingers (of both the hands), it is called Gadā Mudrā. It is auspicious and completing all the works. [114-115]

O King! When the Tarjani and the thumb meet at the end, and the remaining fingers are extended, it becomes Netra Mudrā



O King ! When Anāmikā is half curved and placed on the level with Tarjanī, and the two Madhyamās are raised, and the two thumbs are joined together, it is called Divya Aśvaśiras Mudrā. [116-117]

When Anjali pose is placed over the chest moving quickly from one side to other in the right direction used in bowing down, it is Pramadā Mudrā.

The left fist with raised thumb is joined with the right fist with the thumb, and then the two thumbs are joined and then raised it becomes Vāsudeva Mudrā. It destroys all the sins. [118-119]

When in both hands, the small fingers and the thumb are hidden, and the other fingers are joined and extended, it is Saṅkarsana Mudrā.

When the Tarjanīs are raised and joined and the thumbs in their even positions are joined it is called Pradyumna mudrā. [120-122]

To form the Aniruddha Mudrā, the fingers should be curved and given the shape of a (Sūrpa) snake and then the two hands below should enwrap them. [123]

O King ! thus I have told you about Mudrā hands. The persons desirous of the highest Siddhi (achievement) should exhibit these Mudrās in accordance with the Mantra, the Deva and Vidhi [124]

Many Mudrās are described carefully, according to (Mantra, Devatā and Vidhi), the spell, deity and the ceremony. The Mantras are related to the gods. So O King ! the Mudrās should be practised after knowing the Mantra [125]

O King ! O the Chief of the Kings' dynasty, upto this the Nṛtta-Śāstra is briefly described. When described in detail it will have great meaning and it will be the most important thing in the world. [126]

Thus ends the Adhyāya 33, entitled Nṛtta-Śāstra Mudrā, during the discourse between Mārkaṇḍeya and Vajra, in the third Part of Śrī Viṣṇudharmottara.

---

Vajra said Who created this Nr̥tta, some R̥si or some God ? This is a doubt in my mind You know everything so please clear the doubt [1]

Mārkaṇḍeya said In old times, when all the worlds and Sthāvāra and Jangama (movable and immovable) things were destroyed in an Ocean, and when Madhusudana (Kṛṣṇa-Viṣṇu) was lying on the bed-stead in the form of Sesa and O the descendent of the Yadu Dynasty when Lakṣmī was massaging the legs of Viṣṇu, O One having eyes like a lotus, from his navel a lotus arose [2-3]

From it was born Lord Brahmā himself with auspicious four faces O very fortunate one ! O King ! He was born with bodies [4]

There only from the drop of water of the lotus, Madhu and Kaiṭabha were born They were full of Rajo Guna and Tamo-Guna They were thieves and dangerous demons [5]

O King then they both took away four Vedas from Brahmā. So Brahmā whose Vedas were taken away, pleased Madhu-Sudana (Viṣṇu) and said "Vedas are my supreme eyes and vedas are my supreme power O one who kills the enemy (Satruhan) ! as the vedas are taken away by the demons, I have become blind [6-7]

When Brahmā said this, Viṣṇu the best amongst all men (Purusottama) got up from that water and wandered in the Ocean (reservoir of water) [8]

On seeing the very fascinating Lord, moving with graceful movements of the limbs (Angahārath) and strides of feet, Lakṣmī with large eyes felt in deep love for him The Lord also became Aśva-Sīra (having the head of a horse) and in a moment went to the pātāla (underworld) [9-10]

He saw the Demons who had taken away the Vedas He left the body of the Asva-Sira and killed those two very huge Demons Madhu and Kaitabha [11]

After killing them, the Lord of all Gods taking Vedas with him, went to Brahmā, and gave the Vedas to Svayambhū [12]

Giving Vedas he said, "O Pitāmaha create the Universe Then Lord Brahmā, with the collection of Vedas created this universe [13]

O King ! When the Lord went to the lap of the Śeṣa, Lakṣmī asked

Lakṣmī said O Lord of the Gods ! O the holder of Sankha Cakra and Gadā ! O Lord ! I saw your graceful strides in the water Why was it extremely beautiful ? O Lord kindly tell me about it [14-15]

Śrī Bhagavāna said Oh ! One with eyes like Lotus ! I have created this Nr̥tta which is performed with graceful movements of the limbs and the sense-organs and movements of feet [16]

O Auspicious one ! People with devotion will worship me with the Nr̥tta O Goddess ! in the Nr̥tta the imitation of all the three worlds is established [17]

After saying this to her the Lord told these words to Brahmā ! O one knowing the religion (Dharmajña) ! take this Nr̥tta, having some aim and characteristics [18]

After telling this, Kṛṣṇa gave it to Brahmā Brahmā received it and gave it to Rudra Taking the Nr̥tta, Rudra constantly pleased Kṛṣṇa the Lord of the Gods who loves his devotees. [19-20]

O King ! Vāsudeva (Viṣṇu) created Nr̥tta in this way Long ago, in this world movable and immovable things (Sthāvara-Jangama) were destroyed [21]

Henceforth Sankara, the Lord of the Gods, and the doer of auspicious things for men, worships the Lord holding the Cakra and Gadā, by performing Nr̥tta [22]

Thus he got the Nṛtteśvara (the title of the Lord of Nṛtta), and pleased Madhu-sūdana. That Hara (Śankara) also becomes satisfied when worshipped nicely by Nṛtta. [23]

Other Gods also are very well satisfied, when worshipped with Nṛtta. It is said that this (Nṛtta) is promoting the welfare of the Gods. [24]

It is really the Devatva (the quality of God) of the Gods who constantly shine in the sky. The Nṛtta-dāna (offering of Nṛtta) surpasses the offering of Puspa, Naivedya etc. [25]

O the luckiest one ! Keśava is particularly satisfied with the person, who worships the Lord of Gods, with Nṛtta. [26]

One who offers Nṛtta, Gīta and Vādyā to Lord Viṣṇu becomes prosperous and his desires are fulfilled and he enjoys the fruit of a sacrifice (Yajña) [27]

But one should try his best to avoid Kuśilava (dancer, bards) etc., who sells Nṛtta and earn their living. [28]

O you knowing religion (Dharmavit) ! One who worships Gods with Nṛtta, gets all his desired things, and gets the remedy for getting liberation (Mokṣa). [29]

It gives corns, prestige, long life, the heaven and the grace of gods, and it destroys the unhappiness of the unhappy. [30]

It is the preaching for the bewildered, it increases the Saubhāgya of ladies, it gives peace, it gives prosperity, it fulfills all desires, because it is created by Vāsudeva. [31]

O King ! I have briefly told you this much for the welfare of people. So the person wishing to win both the worlds should endeavour for Nṛtta. [32]

Thus ends the Adhyāya 34 entitled Nṛtta-Sāstra-Varnana (the description of Nṛtta Sāstra), during the discourse between Mārkaṇḍeya and Vajra in the third part of Śrī Viṣṇudharmottara.

---

Mārkandeya Said O Sinless One ' hereafter I shall tell you about the Citra-Sūtra (the rules of painting) O the Son of the King ' long long ago, Nārāyana Muni while creating Urvasi composed the Citra-Sutra, due to the desire of welfare of the world. The great sage who wanted to deceive the divine damsels (who had come to lure him) took the juice of the mango tree and created the most beautiful woman in this world Then by the (art of) painting she became the most beautiful and the best Apsarā [1-3]

On seeing her the celestial damsels were ashamed so they went away Thus the great sage, created the art of Citra with all the characteristics and taught it to infallible (Acyuta) Visvakarmā

As in Nr̥tta, so in Citra also the imitation of three worlds is enjoined O the best of Kings ' as in Nr̥tta, in Citra also, the eyes and the expressions, the limbs and their parts all over and the hand poses which are described in the dance (Nr̥tta), should be learnt because Nr̥tta and Citra are considered as excellent

They have not described the measurement in Nr̥tta I speak about them, so listen [4-7]

One should know that there are five types of men Hamsa, Bhadra, Mālavya, Rucaka and Sasaka I shall speak about their characteristics [8]

They are equal in height and breadth They are all to be known from their measurements

O King the measurement of a Hamsa man is 108 Angulas of his own (fingers) The measurement of a Bhadra man is 106 Angulas And O King ' one should know that of a Mālavya is 104 Angulas [9-10]

It is said that the measurements of a Rucaka man is 100 Angulas, and that of a Sasaka man is 10 Angula less (i.e. 90 Angulas)

Space covered by Twelve Angulas is called a Tāla (= Span) The height upto the ankle is said to be one fourth of a Tāla (i.e. 3 Angulas), and the thighs are two Tālas (in length) The legs upto the knees in length are equal to the thighs [11-12]

The Janghās are as long as Uru and the Nābhi (navel) is at one Tāla (distance) from the (Medhra) penis That much is the measurement from navel to the heart and from the heart to the throat [13]

The throat is one third of a Tāla, and the face is one Tāla (in length) The part of the head above the forehead (Lalāta) is said to be one sixth of a Tāla [14]

One should know that the Penis is in the middle (of the entire length of the body) Thus the length of the body is explained

O King ! the head is said to be one Tāla, and the arm is seventeen Angulas, and the fore-arm is said to be that long The half of the chest is 8 Angulas broad O King ! thus the measurement of a Hamsa man is described [15-16]

O King ! according to this the measurement of others also should be inferred O King ! in all of them the length and the breadth are equal in proportion [17]

O the best amongst the Kings ! I have described in general the measurements of the Hamsa King Now O lion amongst Kings ! listen to the measurement of each part of limbs told briefly by me [18]

Thus ends the Adhyāya 35, entitled the description of the length and breadth in Citra-Sūtra, during the discourse between Mārkaṇḍeya and Vajra in the third part of Sri Viṣṇudharmottara

Markandeya Now begins the part of every limb The head measures thirty two Angulas The forehead is 4 Angulas high and 8 Angulas in width The temples are 4 Angulas wide 2 Angulas high, the cheeks are 5 Angulas in length and the chin is 4 Angulas The ears measure 2 Angulas their height is 4 Angulas and middle part is 1 Angula wide For the tip of the ear no definite measure is there

The nose measures 4 Angulas In the front part it is 2 Angulas in height Nose is 3 Angulas in breadth, and two nostrils are 1 Angula long and two Angulas high The middle part between the nose and the upper lip measures half an Angula The upper lip measures one Angula and the mouth is 4 Angulas in breadth The lower lip is 1 Angula thick and chin measures 2 Angulas

There are 24 (?) teeth, out of which eight are large teeth The teeth are  $\frac{1}{12}$  of an Angula long, and the long teeth are  $\frac{1}{12}$  of an Angula

The eyes are one Angula wide and three Angulas long The iris (Kṛṣṇa Mandala) is  $\frac{1}{3}$  of the eye The pupils (Tārās) are  $\frac{1}{5}$  of the eye

The eye brows are three Angulas long and  $\frac{1}{2}$  Angula wide The distance between the two is 2 Angulas

The holes of the ears are 4 Angulas away from the end of the eyes The neck is 10 Angulas wide and 21 Angulas in circumference The distance between the two nipples is 16 Angulas and that between the clavicles 6 Angulas The circumference of the arm round the shoulder joint is 16 Angulas, at a distance of 12 Angulas is the palm, it is 7 Angulas long and 5 Angulas broad The middle finger measures 5 Angulas The index finger is shorter



by the foremost part of the middle finger, and the ring-finger is also equal to that. The little finger is shorter by foremost part than the ring finger. All have three knots forming three equal parts (Parvas-Knuckles). The nails are half the length of the knuckles. The thumb has only 2 knuckles and it is 3 Angulas in length. The circumference of the abdomen is 42 Angulas. From the sources of knowledge the navel is 1 Angula. The breadth of the hip is 18 Angulas and its circumference is 44 Angulas. The scrotums are 4 Angula wide. The penis is 6 Angula in length and that much in circumference. From middle of that the thighs are at a distance of 4 Angulas. The breadth of the knees is twice as many (i.e. eight) Angulas.

The foremost part of the thigh is thrice that much in circumference. It is 5 Angulas broad and its circumference is 14 Angulas. The soles of the feet are 12 Angulas long and 6 Angulas broad. The large toes (Angustha) are 3 Angulas long. The finger next to the Angustha is as long as the Angustha. The remaining are less in length by one eighth part.

The nail of the Angustha is one fourth narrower than the breadth of the Angustha. The nail of the next finger is half of that. The nails of the remaining fingers are one eighth of that (Angustha Nakha). The sum total of all the toes of the feet is 3 Angulas broad and 4 Angulas in height. This is the measurement of a Hamsa. Here are—

The measurement of the remaining Kings of the earth should be inferred by same device in accordance with one's own measurement [1]

A Hamsa man should have moon white complexion, sweet eyes, hands like the king of serpents, nice waist, beautiful face and gait like a swan.

A Bhadra man should be very intelligent and like a lotus in complexion. His forehead is covered with hair, his gait is like an elephant and his arms are full grown up tapering and round [2-3]

A Mālavya man is dark like the kidney-bean or a sea-bird (Mudga-Śyāma). He is beautiful on account of the slender waist. His hands reach the knees. His shoulders are massive. He has broad jaws and nose like an elephant. [4]

A Rucaka has autumn-white complexion and conch like neck. He is very intelligent, truthful, highsouled and very strong. [5]

A Śaśaka is said to be very clever, and a reddish dark more having somewhat variegated colour. His cheeks are full and eyes are sweet. [6]

Thus ends the Adhyāya 36, entitled the description of the measurement in Citra-Sūtra the discourse between Mārkaṇḍeya and Vajra, in the third part of Śrī Viṣṇudharmottara.

---

## ADHYĀYA 37

Mārkaṇḍeya said Five types of men are described according to the measurement of each and every limb and its part O the best of men ! Five types of women should be known [1]

O King ! Each woman should be placed near her man Each one of them should be made to reach the shoulders of the man in proportion [2]

It is enjoined that the waist of a woman should be made 2 Angulas thinner than that of a man Similarly the hips should be made 4 Angulas wider O King ! the breasts should be made charming and in proportion to the chest. [3-4]

All Kings should be made to have the characteristics of Mahā-purusa And all the sovereign kings (Cakra vartī) should be made to have webbed fingers of hands and feet and between their eyebrows, an auspicious circle of hair (ūrṇā) should be drawn [5]

In the hands of Kings three beautiful auspicious lines should be drawn They should be slender, curved and like the scratches made by hare [6]

The hair should be fine, auspicious resembling the deep blue sapphire adorned by its own grease, and itself wavy. [7]

Different kinds of hair are : Kuntala (loose) hair, Dakṣiṇā vartā (curling towards the right), Taranga (Wavy), Simhakesarī (like the mane of a lion) Vardhara (parted) and Juṣṭa-jaṣara (matted) [8]

O King ! The eye should be having the shape of a bow or like the abdomen of a fish, or like a petal of the blue lotus (Utpalā), or the white lotus (Padma), and the fifth is said to be of the form of an arrow (Sarākṛtī) The eye which is 3 Yavas is called Capākāra (shape of a bow) [9-10]

The eye which is 4 Yavas wide is called fish abdomen (Matsyodara), and the eye that is 6 Yavas wide is called a blue-lotus-petal-eye (Utpala-patra) [11]

The eye (Padma-patra-nibha) which is like red or white-lotus-petal, is 9 Yavas in measurement. And the eye having the shape of an arrow head (Śārāṅkṛtī) should be 10 Yavas. [12]

The measurement of the Yava should be calculated proportionate to the measurement of an Angula which has its own standard.

The eye takes the shape of a bow when looking at the ground in meditation. [13]

The eyes of women and the lovers should be made Matsyodarākṛtī (having the shape of the abdomen of the fish). It is said that the eye of an ever-calm person is having the shape of blue-lotus-petal. The eye of the frightened and crying is like the lotus-petal. The eye of the angry and the woe-stricken should have the shape of the arrow-head. [14-15]

O King ! the sages, ancestors and gods, should be made shining with own decoration, having their own colour and taking away the lustre of others. [16]

One should consider very well with his own intelligence and draw a king and his prince, according to the measurement given above. And the picture with the background should be drawn with many rays and beautiful lines. [17]

Thus ends the Adhyāya 37 entitled the description of general measurements, during the discourse between Mārkaṇḍeya and Vajra, in the third part of Śrī Viṣṇudharmottara.

---

## ADHYĀYA : 38

Mārkaṇḍeya : O King ! the eye is charming when it is like the blue lotus petal (Utpala-patrābha), red at the corners, smiling, gentle and has long eye-lashes and black pupils. [1]

O King ! the hands of gods should be doing the welfare of the people. The eyes should be loving, joyful, having the end like a blue-lotus-petal, charming to the mind, beautiful to look at, having black pupils, wide, giving the pleasure of the beauty, having colour of the cow's-milk and having eye-lashes which bend at the end. [2-3]

The face should be completely beautiful and fully developed. It should be well finished benignant, with all the auspicious marks, not triangular and not crooked. [4]

One who wishes good to the people, should discard large circles, triangles and other figures when representing gods [5]

O Perpetuator of Yadu race ! the gods should be drawn according to the Hamsa measure. They should have hairs on their eye-lashes and eye-brows only, the other parts of body, gods should be entirely devoid of hairs.

The dwellers of heaven should look like youths of sixteen years and they should be always having pleasant faces and smiling eyes.

They should be adorned with crowns, ear-rings, necklaces, ornament of upper arm (keyūra), auspicious strings and garlands. They should have long girdles reaching upto the ornaments on the feet Similarly they should have sacred threads and ornaments of the head. O tiger among men ! They should be adorned with beautiful lion cloth on the left reaching below the knee, but the right knee should be shown. Similarly the Muslin cloth on the upper part of the body of gods should be drawn beautifully. [6-11]

O Great King ! round the heads of the gods halo should be drawn It should be in proportion to the heads, and its colour should resemble the colour of the deity [12]

In that case upward look, downward look and side-ward look should be discarded Similarly too small, too big, or depressed or angry, or harsh eye should be discarded [13]

(Because) O the best among Kings ! it is said that upward look causes death, and the downward look causes sorrow, the sideward look causes the loss of wealth, and the (too small) narrowed eyes cause death, (too big) widened and depressed eyes cause sorrow A harsh look causes loss of wealth, and the angry look increases danger [14-15]

O Perpetuator of the Yadu Race ! The image should not have shrunken or inflated abdomen, and they should not be made having wounds on the body [16]

O descendant of the Yadus ! It should not be bent down, or too short or too big in proportion (but proportionate) It should not have rough colour, or widened mouth It should not have (disproportionate) under-sized or over-sized limbs of the body (They should be of prescribed measurement). [17]

An image having shrunk abdomen causes starvation and fear, one with an inflated abdomen causes death Similarly a body with wounds also causes death, and one that is too short destroys wealth, too long one creates sorrow and one with rough colours causes fear [18-19]

The image whose face is wide open, destroys whole of the family Halo in the east causes the loss of wealth, halo in the south causes death Halo in the west causes destruction of sons, and halo in the north increases fear (So the halo should be behind and all round the head ) [20]

The image which is short in proportion causes destruction and one exceeding the measurement ruins the country It is said that a rough image causes death and an angry one destroys beauty [21]

Even though invoked by the best of Brahmins the Gods never enter the images which are short of measurement and devoid of characteristic, only the demons, ghosts and hobgoblins always enter into them. Therefore a great care should be taken to avoid shortness of measurements. [22-24]

An image possessed of all the characteristics is said to be excellent from every point of view. It increases the life-span, fame, wealth, and crops. But if it is devoid of the characteristics it destroys wealth and crops. [25]

O King ! Always the gods should be made beautiful and their gait should be like that of the lion, the bull, the elephant and the swan. [26]

Blessed is the painting with all (Śāstric) characteristics. It brings good luck to the country, the (Maker) Painter, and the King. Therefore an image with all the (Śāstric) characteristics should be properly made by all men with great care. [27]

Thus ends the Adhyāya 38 entitled the characteristics of the image (Pratimā) during the discourse between Mārkaṇdeya and Vajra, in the third part of Śrī Viṣṇudharmottara.

---

## ADHYĀYA : 39

Mārkaṇḍeya said : There are nine positions of variegated colours, with auspicious forms and gestures Please listen to all of them in due order. [1]

The first should be the straight position (Rjvāgata), the second, is the non-straight (Anrju). Then is the (Sācīkṛta Śarīra) with a bent body, and then comes the position with half eye (Ardha-Vilocana). After that comes the side view (Pāśvāgata), then comes cheeks turned position (Parāvṛtta). Then one derived from the back (Pṛsthāgata), Parivṛtta and then completely bending (samānata).

In decoration (Bhūsite-painting) these positions having many varieties (main) are nine. O King ! Now hear from me the nature of each of them, and the way in which they come into existence. [2-4]

The pre-eminent position amongst those mentioned in the beginning has a beautiful body, nicely finished, and distinct qualities of measurement. It is called Rju. It is finely drawn and shaded with ornamental display of light and shade. It faces the spectator. Very pure, charming and adorned by distinct lines and embellishments, the portion on the back should not have diminished limbs. In the Anrju the front-view, face, chest and abdomen should also remain undiminished. Oh ! intelligent One ! they become thinner towards the waist from thighs, and also from the shoulders. Both the nostrils and lips are shortened by a fourth part of their width and other limbs are shortened by one third of their breadth. [5-8]

That which looks charming due to curved posture, and which is well rounded, tender as well as slender in all the four parts is called bent. It is Sācīkṛta. [9-10]



In that half of the eye, eye-brow and the forehead and the nose are shown. Half the eye which remains after division is suppressed by artistic means; and the eyebrow is also artistically suppressed, and painted with gentle lines. The face is neither straight nor in anger, neither black nor shady. [11-12]

O King ! The next position is called, *Ardhavilocana*. There one eye in the face is shown in full, and half of the eyebrow is suppressed. The forehead and one eyebrow are seen, half portion of the temples is seen and half is not shown. [13-14]

Half of the throat-line and only one Yava of the chin are shown. Half front position of the chest is hidden. Only one *Angula* size of the navel is seen. Moreover, three fourth (half and half of that half) portion of the waist and other parts are depicted. Due to these reasons and others, it is known as *Adhyardhākṣa* (or one showing half-eye) [15-16]

The same is optionally called "*Chāyāgatam*" (coming out of the shade or whose one portion is hidden), because in that only the right or only the left side is seen. Remaining parts of the limbs and the movements of the parts are hidden, as in this case one eye, one eye-brow, lower lip and forehead. [17-18]

The one ear, and the half of the chin and the hair should possess grace, sweetness and other qualities and measurement.

It is also called *Pārsvāgata* (derived from the side). It should be called *Bhittika* (painting on the walls). [19]

The position, in which limbs are not very sharply drawn is said *Ganda-Parāvṛtta*-turned back by the cheek. It has appropriate measurement in the proper place. It has got *Kṣaya* called 'dark' in forehead, cheek and arm, and also in chest, waist and other hidden parts. They are darkened in proper parts after knowing the *Dvikala*. They are artistically made slender and look tender. [20-22]

The pictures and wall paintings which show the bodily frame attractive towards the back, are called *Prsthāgata*—derived from the back, as it is in the case of muscles and joints like those of *Sarvajña* with raised eyebrow. In that, the corner of the eye, cheeks and the chest are slightly shown. It is well lighted, well-balanced and attracting the eyes [23-25]

O King ! A figure, whose upper part of the body is turning back and only half is seen on account of the reversed position with a face tainted by envy, is called *Parivṛtta*—turned round, because there is *Parivṛtta* or turning back in it. In it the upper and lower portions of the body are slightly lost in the shade, while half of the body is like that of a rustic, whose middle part is pleasing to the eyes and properly hidden. It upholds the work [26-28]

The position is called *Samānata*—thoroughly bending. In that, buttocks are completely drawn, the soles of the feet are joined, half of the body is faintly seen from the above, two entire soles are shown and lower part of the toes beautiful on all sides, are well finished and not terrible looking. The arms are visible, the head and trunk are well joined and bent down towards legs [29-31]

All these nine positions should be drawn with care and according to the *Māna* (measurement) etc. These nine positions are seen in all conditions. There is none beside and superior to these. I have continuously moved around the world, inhabited by creatures movable and immovable, have narrated the entire group of three *Kṣaya* (decrease) *Vṛddhi* (increase) and *Pramāṇa* (proportionate measurement)

They are of two kinds *Citra* (simple) and *Vicitra* (variegated)

The latter is again of three kinds according to the good result obtained by proportionate measure, whether it be *Uttama* (full), *Madhyama* (middle one) and *Adhama* (small) [31-37]

Now I shall relate to you the rules pertaining to *Kṣaya* and *Vṛddhi* (light and shade or increase and decrease) [38]

These Kṣaya and Vrddhi are not known to the painters by name or other compounds, but these Vrddhi and Kṣaya of many parts of limbs are illustrated in thirteen varieties, seen from many places from the back (? Prsthāgata), from the front (Rjvāgata), half and half (Ardhārdha), quartermiddle (Madhyārdha) bent-face (Sācīkṛta-mukha) bent (Nata) turned back by the cheek (Gandaparāvṛita) and derived from the back (Prsthāgata) The other (five) places which should be known are derived from the side (Pārsvāgata) painted as if going upwards (Ullepa), moving (Calita), with the face upwards (Uttāna) and turned round (Valita). Thus they are in all thirteen places [39-42]

6 King ' All these should be learnt by name and place Here the positions of the feet show a series of motions like Pratyāldha (left knee advanced and the right knee retracted), Vaisākha (feet a span apart) Again the legs are straight (Sama) or half-straight (Ardha-Sama) standing (Susthītāni) and moving (Calāni) The positions of straight and non-straight legs should be of two kinds [43-44]

The position in which legs are standing in the traditional way, is called Samapada (straight leg) The second is Mandala (in circular motion) In other positions, one leg is straight varied and moving The legs of the bowmen are in these positions of Vaisākha (a span apart), Āldha (the right knee advanced and the left leg retracted), and Pratyāldha (the left knee advanced and the right leg retracted) [45-46]

The legs of men with sword and shield have uneven and curved motion Similar to the course of cow's urine, going alternately to the one and the other side zigzagging moving to and fro The persons carrying a pike (Sakti), a spear (Tomara) a stone javelin (Pāśāna), a sting (Bhindiṣpāla) and other weapons walk with difficulty and with one leg in Āldha position, persons who carry a disc (Caakra), a spear (Sūla) a club (Gadā), and a steel javelin walk in a gallop-posture, [47-48]

Sometimes, the running away of a stout man is depicted thus one leg is in the straight position, the other leg is in such a position that the graceful body and the neck is pushed forward [49]

A learned painter should draw a female figure thus one foot is calmly advanced and the big hips are flurried due to the amorous sports [50]

If the figure is devoid of Pramāṇa (disproportionate measurement) it will suffer through the force of time and sentiment (Kālasya Bhāvasya balāt) Considering this by one's own intelligence, a painter should adopt proportion in respect of Kṣaya and Vṛddhi [51]

Thus ends the Adhyāya 39, entitled Kṣaya and Vṛddhi in Citra-sūtra, during the discourse between Mārkaṇḍeya and Vajra in the third part of Śrī Viṣṇudharmottara

---

## ADHYĀYA 40

Mārkaṇḍeya said : Three kinds of brick-powder should be mixed with one third part of the clay. Then having mixed saffron (Kusumbha) with oil, one should mix equal part of (Guggula) gum resin, bees' wax, liquorice, mudga and molasses with it. One third part of burnt lime-stone powder should be added therein. Then it should be mixed with double the pulp of Bilva-fruit and put in a touch-stone mortar, (Khala) for pounding. Then an intelligent painter should add equal portion of sand to it. Thereafter it should be drenched with a little rice gruel water. Whole of this mixture should be put aside for a month only to dry up. [1-4]

When the moisture goes away in a month, a skilful artist should carefully take the dried yet damp paste and apply it to the wall with careful consideration. The coating should be plain, even and well distributed. It should not be too thick or too thin. [5-6]

When the wall (thus plastered) dries up, if that coating is not well done, it should be carefully smoothened by coatings of the paste made of clay mixed with the juice of the Sarja in it and with oil. The wall should be further smoothened down by the anointing (collyrium) constant sprinkling of milk and by careful polish. 6 King ! When the wall is promptly dried up, the painting is never destroyed even at the end of one hundred years. [7-9]

In this way, on the various jewelled floors (lit. surfaces having the crystal like brightness), different figures should be painted with two-fold colours. [10]

When the wall is dried, rough and of good quality on an auspicious day, an artist who loves his master, should put on white dress, restraint himself should worship Brahmins, other experts in painting and the elders according to the precedence,

utter swasti, face towards the east, think of the god and begin painting-work

Then the learned painter should draw outlines, with unoozing white and black brushes, in due order After drawing one should fix them on the measured place, and then proper colours should be filled in The dark or whitish faces of the figures should be painted accordingly 6 King ' I have described their characteristics in detail [11-15]

6 the best of Kings ' Primary colours are said to be five white, yellow, myrobalan (Vilomata), black and blue Intermediate colours are said to be hundred fold The painter should mix the primary colours according to his own imagination and intelligence and make hundreds or thousands of colours [16-17]

When blue is mixed with yellow in abundance, it is called Palāśa It is pure, mixed with white or with predominance of blue [18]

One or more of the shades are used according to the painting It is of three Types with white predominating with very little of white or both in equal parts [19]

O King ' From that one, many shades of auspicious colours such as the yellowish, green sprouts of Dūrvā, green like wood apple (Kapittha), and the dark colour of Kidney-beans or a sea-bird (Mudga syāma) should be painted

When the blue is mixed with very light whitish yellow, more, less or in equal proportions of each other, then becomes different types of colours From them becomes the colour of blue lotus, or the colour of the fine shade of the Māsa (bean) [20-22]

By proper selection and distribution of colours paintings are made beautiful

The painting having reddish colour like red lotus looks beautiful when painted with white lac (Lāksā), and covered by a

coating of lac and resin The painting is done with many other different shades of colours also [23-24]

6 King ! the materials of colour are gold, silver, copper, mica, deep coloured brass, red lead (Sindūra), tin, yellow orpiment (Haritāla), Lime (sudhā), lac, Vermilion (Hingulaka) 6 the best of men ! there are indigo (Nila) and many other substances in each and every country 6 great king, they should be prepared with an astringent A fluid should be made by iron leaves (Loha Patra) (if we take Loha-patra or an iron pan) A mica defile placed in iron should serve as a distiller In this way iron becomes suitable for painting [25-28]

A mica defile placed in iron should serve as a distiller In this way iron becomes suitable for painting In the (work called) Surasendraja bhumija a decoction of hives and Bakula are said to be a distiller of mica In all the colours the exudation of the Sindura is desirable The painting, drawn with a magnificent hairy brush (lit tail), on a canvas dipped in the juice of the best Durvā can not fade away but remains intact for many years though washed by water [29-30]

Thus ends the Adhyāya 40 entitled the multitude of colours during the discourse between Mārkaṇḍeya and Vajra, in the third part of Sri Viṣṇudharmottara

---

Mārkaṇḍeya said Painting is said to be of four Kinds, Satya (True to life), Vainika, Nāgara and Mīśra-mixed Now I tell you about their characteristics [1]

The painting which is like the natural world by things and which is tall, proportionate, and tenderly drawn on a nice background, is called Satya-true to life [2]

The painting which is drawn on a square canvas, and which is nicely finished according to the strict proportion, which is not very long or phlegmatic in figure, is called Vainika [3]

The painting which is round, with firm and well developed limbs and scanty garlands and ornaments, should be known as Nāgara [4]

6 the best among the men ' due to the mixture of the three categories Mīśra gets its name

Methods of producing light and shade are said to be of three kinds Crossing lines in the form of leaves (Patraja), by stumping (Aṛika), and by dots (Binduja) [5]

The first method of shading is called Patraja because they (lines) are in the shape of leaves The Aṛika is called so, because it is very fine The Binduja gets its name from the non-flowing of the brush [6-7]

If the human figure is painted with too big cheeks, too big lips or too big eyes and the unrestrained movements and actions, they are well-known as the defects of the picture (citra). [8]

Spaciousness of back-ground (Bhūlamba), in proportion to the position (sthāna), Sweetness, variety and similarity with nature, and minute execution are said to be the good qualities of the citra [9]



6 the best among the men ! the lines (Rekhā), shades (vartanā) decoration (bhūṣaṇa) and the colour (varṇa) should be known as decorative. [10]

The masters praise the Rekhās (delineation) and the intelligent persons praise (the display of) lights and shades (vartanā), women like the display of ornaments (bhūṣaṇa) and the rest of the people like richness of colours (varṇa). [11]

Considering that, great care should be taken in the work of painting (citra), so that, O the best of men ! it may capture the minds of all persons. [12]

Bad seat, bad conduct, thirst and inattentiveness are said to be the root causes of destroying the painting. [13]

In the work of painting, the ground (Bhūmi) should be well chosen, well covered, very delightful, pleasant in every direction and its surface should be well coated and should be free from insects. [14]

When a learned artist paints with golden colour with charming and very clear lines and the garments according to the particular country and if it is not devoid of the beauty of the proportionate measurement, the painting becomes very beautiful. [15]

Thus ends the Adhyāya 41 entitled the lines and shades (Raṅga-Vartanā) during the discourse between Mārkaṇḍeya and Vajra, in the third part of Śrī Viṣṇudharmottara.

---

## ADHYĀYA 42

Mārkaṇḍeya said : In painting the Kings should be depicted just like gods, but the hair on the body, (moustache, beard etc.) should be drawn one by one. [1]

6 King ! Sages, gandharvas, Daityās, Dānavās, ministers, brahmins, astrologers and family priests (Purohit) should have the body-size of a Bhadra (nobleman). Sages should be drawn, adorned with long tresses of hair clustered on the top of their head (Jatā-jūta-śobhitā) They should have black antelope-skin as upper garment, and they should be emaciated yet full of splendour.

6 great King ! The gods as well as Gandharvas should be done without crowns but they should be adorned with crests. Similarly the Brahmins should be represented with white garments and emitting divine (Brahma) effulgence. [2-5]

6 King ! the ministers, the astrologers and the family priests should be painted with all the ornaments but not with gaudy decorations. They should not have crowns, but they should be made to wear turbans. [6-7]

The Daityas and Dānavas should have frowning faces and round eyes. 6 King ! Their mouths and eye-brows very terrible and their dress should be painted gaudy. [8]

6 King ! the Vidyādharaś should be of the size of a Bhadra. They should be painted with wives and wearing the ornaments and garlands They should be shown either in the sky or on the earth and with swords in their hands. [9-10]

The kinnars, Nāgas and Rākṣasas should be of the size of a Mālavya. 6 king ! Yaksās should have the size of a Rucaka. And the minister and man should be painted having the size of a Śaśaka (type of man). [11]

The Piśācas, dwarfs, hunch-backed Pramathās and (king) enjoying the earth should be represented with the rules of proportion and in accordance with the rules of Rūpa (the form) It is said that their females should be according to their (males) form and measurements [12-13]

Kinnaras are said to be of two kinds some are with human faces and horse-bodies, and others are said to be with horse-faces and human bodies Those with horse-faces should be lustrous and decorated with all (types of) ornaments They should be engaged in singing and playing upon musical instruments

The Rākṣasās should look terrible with their hair erect and eyes deformed [14-15]

The Nāgas should be painted in such a way that they have the shape of gods but they should be adorned with snake hoods

The Yaksas are said to be decorated with ornaments I have already told you about them [16]

There is no special measurements for the Pramathas among gods Similarly the Piśācas should be drawn regardless of proportions [17]

6 great king ! Similarly the groups of gods should be painted having the faces of various creatures They should wear various kinds of dresses, and carry various weapons They should be engaged in various sports and various activities But the ganas of Viṣṇu should have the same outward appearance [18-19]

But out of them four divisions should be made The auspicious ganas of Vāsudeva should be drawn similar to Vāsudeva The ganas of Saṁkarsana, Pradyumna and Aniruddha should be made similar to each of them It is said that they carry the weapons of Saṁkarsana etc and have their power. They should be as dark as the petals of blue-lotus, as white as the moon and have the colour of the Marakata gem and the lustre of vermilion (Sindūra) (20-22)

Similarly the women and prostitutes should have the size of 1 Rucaka As permitted in Sṛṅgāra-erotic feeling the dress of the prostitutes should be gaudy (Uddhata) Women of good family should be made bashful and of the size of a Mālavya Their dresses and ornaments should not be showy [23-24]

6 the best of men 1 the wives of the Daityas, Dānavas Yaksas and Rākṣasas should be made beautiful But 6 king their mothers should be similar to their appearances [25-26]

The wives of Piśācas should be made to have the appearance of the Piśācas

The widows should have grey hair, white clothes and devoid of all ornaments And the hunchbacked dwarfish and an old women should be represented in their natural form [27-28]

In the retinue of royal ladies, the chamberlain (Kancuki) should be an old man

The Vaisya should be of the size of a Rucaka [29]

Similarly the Sūdra should be of the size of a Sasaka 6 King 1 their dresses should be according to their caste The wives of the Daityas, etc should be painted with attendant women [30]

One who knows painting should paint the commandar-in-chief (senāpati) having big head, broad chest prominent nose prominent chin massive shoulders hands and neck He must be proud and largely built He should have 1 forehead with three wrinkles a strong waist and glance like an eagle [31-33]

6 great king 1 the soldiers should be generally painted with frowns on their faces and powerful The warriors should be represented with somewhat short uniform They should have arrogant looks The foot soldiers (Padātayas) should be painted with raised weapons The bodies of the swordmen and shieldmen should be of Karnāṭaka type Best archers and bowmen should be painted with uncovered thighs Their dress should not be very

short and they should be wearing shoes, The elephants, horses etc. should have their own characteristics. [34-36]

Elephant-riders should have dark complexion. Their hair should be tied in a knot, and they wear ornaments. [37].

The uniform of the cavalry should be of the northern type. The Bards (Bandinas) should have arrogant dress. On their neck veins should be shown. Their looks should be turned upwards. [38]

Heralds (Āhvānakās) should be painted with tawny (in colour) and with squint-eyed. They should slightly resemble the Dānavas and generally they carry staffs in their hands. In a fight one should not represent the fighting pairs as the squint-eyed and tawny. [39-40]

The door-keeper (Pratthāra) has a staff in his hand and a sword hanging from his side. He is appreciated when his dress is neither too arrogant nor too simple. [41]

Merchants should be painted with their heads covered on all sides with turbans. 6 the best of men ! the singers, the dancers and the musicians who can play upon the musical instruments should be painted with splendid dress. [42]

The best and the most respectable citizens of the city and country, should be painted almost grey haired, and adorned with ornaments suitable to their rank. They should be wearing white garments, stooping forward, ready to help others, and with a mien calm by nature. [43-44]

Artisans should be painted eager in the pursuit of their own crafts. [45]

The wrestlers should be painted, having broad shoulders, muscular limbs, thick neck, head and lips, with closely cropped hair. They must be hot tempered and arrogant. [46]

6 king ! Bulls, lions and other animals should be drawn in appropriate surroundings, as they are seen in nature.

I have thus described the appearance of objects which are not usually seen. Things which are seen by all should be painted as they are all particularly seen in the nature, because in the painting mainly the likeness is admired (47-48)

6 the best among men ! Men should be painted according to their country, their colour, dress and appearance should be depicted by intelligence [49]

6 king ! One should carefully and intelligently ascertain the country, employment and the place of the man and accordingly the seat, bed, the vehicles and the dress should be depicted [50]

Rivers should be depicted in human form, and with their conveyances (Vāhanas). In their hands there should be full pitchers and their knees should be bent [51]

6 the best of all men ! the peaks of the mountain should be shown on the head (of the personification). Similarly the beautiful land of the islands should have hands, and 6 king ! the mountains should have hands in the form of peaks. 6 the best of men ! the oceans should be depicted having the jewel-vessels in their hands. In the place of halo of the seas water should be painted, and the signs of weapons should be shown on their heads [52-54]

For representing a reservoir of water a pitcher should be shown, and to depict a conch-shell a conch-shell should be drawn, And the king of kings ! a lotus should be painted for a lotus and for all other things the representation should be made in accordance with their nature. Every part of the painting should agree with the general treatment of the whole object. For the divine beings the distinctive marks should be rosary and the book [55-56]

Here after I shall speak about the appearance of things actually seen. A learned artist should depict the sky without any special colour and full of birds [57]

6 king ! Similarly the sky should be depicted adorned with stars and the land should be painted with forest-regions with their distinguishing traits

6 best of the kings, similarly the mountain should be depicted with a group of rocks, peaks, metals, trees streams and snakes [58-59]

Similarly the forest should be painted with various trees, birds and beasts of prey

6 king, a learned artist should depict water, with innumerable fish and tortoises, by lotus-eyed aquatic animals and with other qualities natural to water [60]

A learned painter should show a city by various temples of gods, palaces, markets, houses and beautiful royal roads A village should be intelligently shown by a collection of residences with gardens [61-62]

All the fortresses should be shown as placed on good ground with battlements, ramparts, high mountains and entrances in their enclosures Market places should be depicted containing the articles of merchandise The drinking places should be shown full of men engaged in drinking And the men engaged in gambling should be represented devoid of upper garments The winners should be shown joyful and the losers full of grief [63-65]

The battle-field should be depicted containing four divisions of army (elephant corps, cavalry, chariot corps and infantry) with soldiers engaged in fighting strewn with the limbs of dead persons and besmeared with blood [66]

6 king the burning ground (smaśāna) should be shown with funeral piles (Citā) and dead bodies A road should be shown with caravans of camels and other animals carrying burdens [67]

The night should be shown, with moon planets and stars, with approaching thieves and men in fast asleep and the others engaged in the worldly things [68]

In the first part of the night (Abhisārikā) the woman going to meet her lover should be shown The dawn is to be shown by the rising sun, dim lamps and crying cocks, or sometimes

by the people eager to begin their work so also a monkey. The evening (Sandhyā) should be depicted by red glow and by Brahmins engaged in their daily rituals. [69-70]

The darkness should be shown by men moving with the touch of the hands. The moon-light should be shown by moon and the blooming of Kumuda (night) lotus. A step-well should be shown with full of flower-dust and covered with heaps of leaves. The rain should be shown pouring and men well covered [71-72]

The sun-shine should be depicted by the creatures suffering from heat. The spring-season (Vasanta) should be exhibited by blooming vernal trees, cuckoos, the swarming bees in abundance and the merry men and women

Similarly the summer should be shown by men tired, with deer seeking the shade of trees, with buffaloes smeared with mud and with dried up ponds

Rainy season should be exhibited by the clouds lowered down by the water-load and made adorned by the rainbow, flashes of lightning, the birds hiding in the trees and lions and tigers sheltered in caves [73-76]

The autumn (śarada) should be depicted by drawing the earth covered with the trees full of fruits, and ripe cornfields, and with the water ponds full of the swans and the lotuses. [77]

A learned (painter) should paint the dewy season (Hemanta) with the horizon full of frost, the earth lopped of the crops and the ground covered by dew-drops. [78]

A learned painter should paint the winter (śiśira) with the directions covered with hoary-frost, with shivering men and delighted crows and elephants. [79]

6 king ! After observing the world, one should indicate seasons by means of flowers and fruits of trees and by means of ruts of animals. [80]



Sentiments and expressions should be represented as already spoken of. Here in painting an artist should suitably employ what was said in dancing [81]

A painting in which an object is devoid of shading (Vartanā) is called mediocre (Madhyama). A picture which is shaded in some part and not shaded in other parts is bad (Adhama). A picture which is shaded all over is the best (Uttama). The painting in which everything is drawn in acceptable form, in its proper position in its proper time and age becomes excellent. Otherwise it is contrary to it [82-83]

A painting drawn with care, pleasing to the eye, thought out with supreme intelligence and remarkable by its execution, beauty, charm, taste and such other qualities yields the desired pleasure [84]

Thus ends the Adhyāya 42 entitled the form of painting (Rupa Nirmāna), during the discourse between Mārkaṇḍeya and Vajra, in the third part of Sri Viṣṇudharmottara

---

## ADHYĀYA 43

Mārkaṇḍeya said The sentiments represented in painting (Citra-Rasās) are said to be nine Sṛṅgāra (erotic), Hāsyā (humorous), Karuṇā (pathetic), Vīra (heroic), Raudra (furious) Bhayāṇaka (fearful), Bībhatsa (disgusting), Adbhuta (causing wonder) and Śānta (peaceful). [1]

That which is full of beauty on account of splendour, sweetness and nicety of the lines of form dress and ornaments according to the taste of the learned causes Sṛṅgāra Rasa [2]

That which is hunch-backed, dwarfish or somewhat deformed in appearance or un-necessarily contracted hands creates the humour (Hāsyā Rasa) [3]

In Karuṇā Rasa (Pathetic sentiment) a painter should depict begging separation, desertion sale, calamity compassion etc [4]

Harshness, passion anger, poisoning food for killing are befitting the occasion then they give rise to Raudra Rasa, in which there should be flashing weapons and bright ornaments [5]

Display of prowess etc arising out of an oath combined with a look of nobleness with a smile or raised eyebrows give rise to Vīra-Rasa (heroic sentiment) [6]

Wicked, dreadful looking and almost mad, vindictiveness, bent on killing-these should be used to give rise to Bhayāṇaka Rasa (Fearful sentiment) in painting [7]

The painting which depicts a terrible scene of execution, looking loathsome due to the representation of cremation ground (Smaśāna), becomes the best painting to give rise to Bībhatsa Rasa (loathsome sentiment) [8]

When a picture shows thought and a slight horripilation and the submissive face of Tārṅgya (an owl) and other (similar figures), it indicates Adbhuta Rasa (sentiment of wonder) [9]

Whichever picture depicts the benign appearance, meditation, yogic postures and sitting of many asectic people, gives rise to *Sānta Rāsa* (the sentiment of peace) [10]

Pictures at home should depict *Sṛṅgāra*, *Hāsyā* and *Sānta rāsa*. The rest should never be used in the house of anyone [11]

In the temples of gods and the palace of kings all the sentiments should be taken resort to. But they should not be used in the residential quarters (*Vāsa-Grha*) of the rulers. In the assembly houses of the king's palaces all the sentiments should be used except the assembly hall of the kings and the temples of gods, in the houses inauspicious and disgusting scenes like battle, cremation ground, sorrow due to dead and pity due to miserables and ugly things should never be shown. Similarly O King ! the bulls with *Nidhi* horns, and the elephants with *Nidhi* trunk, (Nine) *Nidhis*, the sea, *Vidyādhara*s, sages *Garuda*, *Hanumāna* and others which are celebrated as auspicious in the world, should always be painted in the residences of men [12-16]

But 6 king's painting-work should not be done by himself in his own house

Weakness, thickness of lines, want of articulation, and the improper juxtaposition of colours are said to be the defects of painting [17-18]

Proper position, proportion, spacing, gracefulness, articulation, resemblance, decrease and increase are said to be eight good qualities of painting [19]

Painting which has not proper position which is devoid of appropriate *rāsa*, and which is empty to look at, hazy with darkness and devoid of life-essence (*Cetanā*) – is not called praiseworthy [20]

6 King ! The picture which seems as if dancing by its posture or appears to be frightened, laughing or graceful appears to be as if living [21]

The picture which is as if breathing, is endowed with good qualities

In auspicious painting the pictures depicting defective limbs, darkness, emptiness, overwhelmed with fear of diseases, and covered all over with hair should be avoided [22]

An intelligent painter should paint what looks probable but never depict what transcends it

6 King ' a painting drawn by the skilled, the righteous and well versed persons in Sāstras brings on prosperity and remove adversity very soon [23-24]

It removes and curbs anxiety, increases good future, causes unequalled and pure delight, destroys the evils of bad dreams and pleases the household deity The place where a picture is firmly placed does not look empty [25-26]

He who paints a picture giving Dharma, (religion), Artha (money), Kāma (desires) and auspicious things not adorned but large ears, pierced with a stud is considered to be a great painter [27]

He who paints waves, flames smoke and streamers fluttering in the air, according to the movement of the wind should be considered a great painter [28]

He who paints sleeping persons having life-movements and the dead devoid of life-movement, and one portion of the body lower than the other is a real painter [29]

In painting one should carefully avoid placing one figure in front of the other In all the cases regular succession is praiseworthy [30]

6 King ' the rules regarding the painting should also be applied to carving in gold, silver, copper and other metals The image-making from stone, wood and iron should be done in the way it is shown in the painting [31-32]

(south) side is Nārasimha (that of Man-lion), the face on the back (west) side is Kāpila and that on the left (North) is Varāha (that of the boar-incarnation).

He (Viṣṇu) wears a Vana-mālā (long garland of flowers). In his right hands there should be arrows, a rosary, a club and so forth, and in other hands there should be a shield (carma), a garment, and a rainbow. [11-13]

6 knower of the religion ! Now listen, to the description of the image of Pinākinā (Śankara, the carrier of Pināka bow).

One should make Mahādeva, god of gods, seated on a bull. 6 the scion of the Yādava family ! his five faces should be made. All of them should be placid (Saumya), but the face on the right side (South) should be fierce. He must be wearing the garland of skulls, huge, and the destroyer of the universe. All the faces except the leftside (Northern) one, should have three eyes. In his matted hair (Jaṣā-Kalāpa) there should be a big crescent moon. In the top of it the fifth face should be made. His sacred thread and the Vāsuki serpent should be made. God of gods Mahēśvara should be made of ten-arms. 6 one having big arms ! In his right hands there should be a rosary, a trident, an arrow, a staff and a lotus. Similarly in the left hands of the god of gods, the trident-holder, citron, a bow, a mirror, a water-pot (Kamaṇḍalu) and the shield should be made. The colour of his body should resemble the rays of the moon. [14-20]

Thus I have told you about the images of Lord Janārdana having three forms 6 King ! Now I tell you about the nature of the lotus, on which the Arcanā (worship) should be done. [21]

Thus ends the Adhyāya 44 entitled the making of Trimūrti during the discourse between Mārkaṇḍeya and Vajra, in the third part of Sri Viṣṇudharmottara.

Mārkaṇḍeya said The lotus, with beautiful filaments and only two hands in measurement should be made from gold, silver, copper or brass 6 King ' It should be divided into eight parts The pericarp should be round and raised by one-eighth part and clinging to the petals Round the pericarp, surcharged with round seeds, measuring a Yava only, fifty-two petals should be made It should be made in width by the one sixteenth part (of two Hastas) The remaining part should be filled with eight very glossy petals [1-4]

Then its installation should be made and on it gods should be worshipped Brahmā should be worshipped there, Hari should be worshipped there, Rudra should be worshipped there and Śrī (Lakṣmī) should be worshipped there, Indra the lord of the world and the king of gods should be worshipped on it, and the sun and the moon also should be worshipped there

One should worship the god for whom the lotus was intended and installed no other god should be worshipped (on the lotus) [5-8]

Thus I have told you about the form of the lotus By the lotus whole of the earth is symbolized On that gods should be worshipped because when they are worshipped on it they give boons [9]

Thus ends the Adhyāya 45, entitled the narration of the form of the lotus, during the discourse between Mārkaṇḍeya and Vajra in the third part of Śrī Viṣṇudharmottara

---

Vajra said You have said that the Supreme God (Purusa) is without Rūpa (form), Gandha (Smell) and Rasa and yet destitute of Sabda (sound) and Sparsa (touch), so how can this form be made ? [1]

Mārkaṇḍeya Said Prakṛti and Vikṛti came into existence through the form of the Supreme Soul The form which is not seen is called Prakṛti [2]

The form should be known as Vikṛti (Transformation of Him) It is called the universe Worship and meditation etc are possible only of manifested form of the Supreme Being [3]

The form of the Supreme deity, manifested by him, should be worshipped according to rites With great difficulty, the living beings can apprehend the unmanifested form, so the Supreme Lord has exhibited that form by his own sweet will And gods point out that form in His various manifestations [4-5]

Due to that reason worship of the manifested form (of the Lord) is enjoined That form is full of significance I tell you about it, you listen [6]

Due to the prominence of rajas the colour is reddish So Brahmā, the best of the gods and greeted by all the living beings should be known as resembling the tip of the lotus [7]

Rg-Veda is his side face (Eastern direction), Yajurveda is the right hand side (Southern direction), Sāma-Veda is on the back side (Western direction) and Atharva-Veda is on the left hand side (Northern side) [8]

The Vedas should be known as faces and the four directions are the arms The movable and the immovable (of) all worlds are the waters [9]

Brahmā holds those (primeval) waters. So he has a Kamandalu (water-vessel) in his hand. The rosary in the hand of Brahmā indicates Kāla (the time). Kāla is called so, because he devours all the beings. [10]

All sacrifice is propagated by all white and non-white (Pious and impious) actions. Therefore the garment of the Lord, the hide of the black antelope is white and non-white. [11]

The seven regions are known as Bhūḥ, Bhuvah, Svaha, Mahah, Jana, Tapa, and Satya. These regions are the swans in the chariot of the great lord Brahmā. [12-13]

6 the best of the kings ! the pericarp of the lotus which grew from the navel of Viṣṇu should be known as Meru. [14]

6 King ! everywhere the steadiness is the result of meditation, hence Brahmā sits in that meditative position by means of his corporal lotus seat. [15]

One should think about the formless best destination of the Supreme Soul. For visualising the worlds he sits with eyes closed in meditation. [16]

6 King ! Similarly the vegetations, the cause of sustenance of the world should be known as the matted hair (Jatā) of Brahmā who is a great soul and who can go everywhere. [17]

All the places of Vidyā (learning) which illumine the worlds, should be known as the various ornaments of that great lord. [18]

This form of that uncomparable one that pervades the whole world has been narrated to you. Thus the Pre-eminent One of the world occupies the whole world, with his body. [19]

Thus ends the Adhyāya 46, entitled the making of the form of Brahmā, during the discourse between Mārkaṇḍeya and Vajra, in the third part of Śrī Viṣṇudharmottara.

---



## ADHYĀYA 47

Mārkaṇḍeya said The universe is regarded as the Vikṛti (Transformation) of the Supreme Being All transformation consists of Kṛṣṇa (black colour) and through that the worldly life is sustained [1]

That lord the creator of all creatures assumes the Kṛṣṇa form

The wearing of all ornaments by Brahmā is applicable to Hari also [2]

Hari sustains by his bosom Jñāna (knowledge) as the stainless Kaustubha (jewel)

6 king ! Vanamālā is said to be black (Kṛṣṇa), long and variegated, by which this whole universe, movable and immovable, is bound together Avidyā, which supports this saṁsāra (worldly life) is his garment [3-4]

Vidyā is pointed out as white and Ajñāna (non learning) is said to be black But this Ajñāna is said to be in the middle (of Vidyā and Avidyā) [5]

It is neither black nor white Hence Vidyā is the best Mind existing in all creatures supports the intermediate space, which is like gold The mind which is in all creatures should be known as Garuda Hence there is nothing which is more quick and powerful than the mind [6-7]

6 the knower of the religion ' The four directions and same number of quarters are indicated as the eight arms of Viṣṇu, the carrier of the bow named Sāraṅga [8]

6 descendant of Yadu ! strength, knowledge, sovereignty and energy are the four faces of the Lord of gods. [9]

Lord Vāsudeva, Lord Saṁkarsana, Pradyumna and Aniruddha are said to be the manifestations of the four attributes beginning with strength. [10]

Each of these great souls should have two hands and one face.

The sun and the moon should be known as the hands of Vāsudeva, and the club and the plough as the hands of Saṁkarsana. 6 strong armed one ! the bow and the arrow should be known as the hands of Pradyumna, and an intelligent one should know that there are the shield and the sword in the hands of Aniruddha.

The sun and the moon should be known as Purusa and Prakṛti. [11-13]

These two are the disc and the club in the hands of Vāsudeva. Know the plough to be the Time (Kāla) and the club to be the Death. With these two the fierce (Rudra) Saṁkarsana draws the movable and immovable universe. [14-15]

It is said that in the hands of Pradyumna is the Śāranga bow and arrow made of fire. O knower of religion ! Sāṁkhya considers a bow as an Yoga. With them the yogis hit the supreme target, namely the object of contemplation. [15-16]

6 one having massive hands ! In the hands of Brahmā and Aniruddha there is the shield. It should be known as the covering of Ajñāna which is the cause of the universe. [17]

Vairāgya (renunciation) is the Nandaka sword. The ascetics cut the bondage with it, and take delight, so it is called Nandaka (giving delights). [18]

Thus I have narrated to you the form of that Form-less (Being who) covers all the universe. The Lord who is the pre-eminent of the universe, supports the entire world through this form. [19]

Thus ends the Adhyāya 47 entitled the description of the form of Visnu, during the discourse between Mārkaṇḍeya and Vajra, in the third part of Śrī Viṣṇudharmottara.

---

## ADHYĀYA 48

Mārkaṇḍeya said 6 strong-armed one ' Sadyojāta, Vāmadeva, Aghora, Tatpuruṣa are the four faces of Śiva, and īśāna should be known as the fifth face [1]

The earth is said to be Sadyojāta, similarly water is said to be Vāmadeva Light is Aghora, similarly the wind should be regarded as Tatpuruṣa [2]

And the fifth face īśāna on the top is the sky

Now I shall speak about the five faces of Śiva one by one. [3]

The front face (Eastern) of Lord Śambhu should be known as Mahādeva. The three eyes of it are moon, Sun and the fire [4]

The right hand side (Southern) terrible (Raudra) face is known as Bhairava The (Western) face on the back is called Nandi-Vaktra [5]

The left hand side (Northern) face should be known as Umā-Vaktra, the face of Pārvatī and his fifth auspicious face should be known as Sadāśiva [6]

They all have three eyes except Vāmadeva who has only two eyes The face of Mahādeva is the earth Then is the Bhairava Mukha which is the light (Teja) [7]

The Nandi face is the wind and the Umā face is called water. 6 the delighter of Yadus ' The Sadāśiva Mukha should be known as the sky [8]

The directions and the quarters are his ten hands according to two hands per face. In the hands of Mahādeva there should be the rosary (Aksamālā) and water-pot (Kamandalu) (9)

6 strong-armed one ' In the hands of Sadāśiva face there should be the bow and arrow. The bow belonging to Maheśvara is called Pināka. [10]

6 the destroyer of enemies ' they are already described In the hands of Bhairava there are the staff and the citron (Mātulunga) [11]

The staff in the hand signifies death similarly the citron in the hand 6 king ' symbolises all the atoms of all the seeds of the universe [12]

It contains full of seeds lying in the hand of Bhairava 6 delighter of Yadu ' the shield and the trident should be known in the hands of Nandi [13]

The nature and the significance of the shield and the trident are described by me before, in Dharma-Vyākaraṇa

The unseen Trisūla-danda is manifested in the trident 6 the best of kings ' The three points should be known as Sattva, Rajas and Tamas [14-15]

In the hands of Devī face (Umā-vaktra) form there should be mirror and the lotus Pure knowledge is the mirror and the renunciation is the lotus [16]

The matted locks (Jaṭāh) of the great god Mahādeva are said to be brāhmanas, the crescent moon on the head of Sambhu represents (six kinds of) Aisvaryas, and the anger which destroys three worlds is called Vāsukī, the king of Nāgas [17]

The extensive and variegated thirst (Trsnā) for life is said to be tiger-skin and the bull is said to be Divine, Dharma having four feet [18]

The non-existence (Abhāva) of this world is called Prakṛti Prakṛti is all white hence Mahesvara is white [19]

Thus I have narrated to you the form of that Formless Being who covers all the universe, that chief one in this world sustains the entire world, through this form [20]

Thus ends the Adhyāya 48 entitled the making of the Mahādeva form, during the discourse between Mārkaṇḍeya and Vajra, in the third part of Sri Viṣṇudharmottara

## ADHYĀYA 49

Vajra said : 6 unmoved one, tell me about the making of the image of Nāsatyas, because it is said that you know everything about the form of Nāsatyas. [1]

Mārkaṇḍeya said : The physicians of gods should be made in the company of gods. They should have two arms, the colour like that of the lotus-leaves and the garments like lotus-leaf. They should be wearing all kinds of ornaments, and particularly their eyes should be beautiful. In their right hands divine medicinal plants should be placed, and 6 the twice-born ! in his left hands two books, worth seeing, should be shown, 6 descendant of Yadu, on the right side of the one and on the left side of the other a pair of women, beautiful and looking charming should be made. Their names are Rūpa-sampat and Ākṛti. [2-5]

Rūpa-sampat is said to be of the colour of the Madhūka flower, and in this world Ākṛti is said to be like the reed-stalk. They should not be represented having a pot in their hands, or wearing the garments as white as the moon. [6-7]

6 chief of the Yadu race, thus I have told you about the form of Nāsatyas. He who meditates or worships them on this earth becomes the destroyer of all (dangers, diseases) of men. [8]

Thus ends the Adhyāya 49, entitled the making of the form of Nāsatyas, during the discourse between Mārkaṇḍeya and Vajra. in the third part of Śrī Viṣṇudharmottara.

---

## ADHYĀYA · 50

Vajra said 6 the best of Bhṛguṣ ! 6 the immovable ! tell me fully the process of making the images of Sakra (Indra), Kīnāśa (Yama), Varuna and Dhanada (Kubera), with the aim behind it [1]

Mārkaṇḍeya said Śakra, the king of gods, should be of white colour, sitted on an elephant having four tusks On his left lap Sacī guarded by him should be placed [2]

He must have the golden complexion and should be wearing blue garments and adorned with all the ornaments. His eyes should be going obliquely to the forehead [3]

Sakra should be made having four hands and Sacī having two hands In the right two hands of Śakra there should be a lotus and the elephant goad [4]

The left one should be placed behind Sacī and the other one holding Vajra (the thunder-bolt)

In the left hand of Sacī there should be the sprouts of Santāna tree (Santāna-mañjarī), and the right hand should be resting on the back of the king of gods [5]

Brahmā himself has prescribed that he (Indra) should be wearing the ornaments and shall have four hands The god of gods Sambhu has said that he should have three eyes [6-7]

He is of golden colour because he is the abode of all types of brilliance It is said that his blue cloth is really the sky [8]

The command that subdues all creatures is in the form of elephant-goad in his hand 6 the lord of the earth ! the auspicious Maghavān, the prosperous chief of the god, in his hand holds a lotus, which is like the goddess of fortune (sitting on the lotus)

It is said that the thunderbolt in the hand of Śakra is the anger which subdues the wicked. [9-10]

Vāsudeva is known as Śakra. So Śacti is regarded as Lakṣmī. And the sprouts of Santāna tree in her hand should be known as progeny. [11]

Airāvata is known as wealth and its tusks are said to be very powerful strength, the powers from divine agency, wise counsel, suzerainty and exertion. [12]

O king ! I have narrated to you this Śakra form of Vāsudeva, the king of gods.

Now I will tell you the form of Yama, who controls the happiness and the misery of men. [13]

Thus ends the Adhyāya 50, entitled the making of the form of Śakra, during the discourse between Mārkaṇḍeya and Vajra, in the third part of Śrī Viṣṇudharmottara.

---



## ADHYĀYA 51

Mārkaṇḍeya said Yama should be represented sitting on a male buffalo (Mahisastha), resembling in colour the water-laden cloud, wearing a garment of heated gold, and adorned by all ornaments [1]

Dhumornā (his wife) having the colour of blue lotus, should be placed on the left lap She should be shown having two hands and Yama should be having four hands [2]

In the right hand of Yama there should be a sceptre and a sword On the top of the sceptre a face adorned with a row of flames should be made [3]

One left hand should be on the back of Dhūmornā and the other hand should carry the shield And the right hand of Dhūmornā should be on the back of Yama [4]

In her left hand there should be a beautiful citron and on his right placid-looking Citragupta with two hands wearing the dress befitting his form should be represented In his right hand there should be a pen and in the left a leaf should be shown [5-6]

On his left terrible looking Kāla holding a noose should be made Know Yama to be Samkarsana assuming a Tāmasi body, for the destruction of all the worlds to maintain the moral law He is said to be of the colour of the petals of the blue-lotus, because he has a Tāmasi body [7-8]

6 destroyer of the enemies ! His garment is celebrated through Vāsudeva Brahmā has specified the four handedness of that great god (Yama) and Brahmā has mentioned about the ornaments worn by Yama

That loss of consciousness or death of human beings should be known as the male buffalo. [9-10]

The unerring sceptre which Yama holds in his hand represents Death. Aniruddha has prescribed that he (Yama) should hold the sword and the shield. [11]

6 delighter of Yadus, Dhūmorṇā should be known as Kāla-Rātri. Śūlti (Śiva) has enjoined that she should carry citron. [12]

The soul in all the bodies is really pointed out as Citragupta. The leaf represents Dharma (religion) and Adharma (sins) and the pen writes them. [13]

The Kāla by his own form going with Yama is the destroyer of everything. The formidable noose in his hand is the inaccessible path of Yama. [14]

Vajra said : The form of Viṣṇu causing destruction is regarded as Saṁkarṣaṇa. That god was described by you as grand and having a body as white as the moon. [15]

Why Yama causing destruction has a black (Kṛṣṇa) form ? 6 propagator of Bhṛgu race, remove this doubt of mine. [16]

Mārkaṇḍeya said : The Saṁkarṣaṇa form of Viṣṇu causing destruction is terrible (Rudra). At the end of a Kalpa, that form brings about the destruction of the worlds. [17]

6 the knower of the religion ! When the world comes to an end, it goes into Prakṛti. That is why, one having the colour of Prakṛti brings about the destruction of the worlds. [18]

That (god) in the shape of Yama brings about the destruction of all creatures again and again, yet it never supports the combination of all creatures in Prakṛti. Then in that Vikāra (transformation) consisting pleasure and pain, he brings about the form and colour of the Vikāra and there-by it destroys the world. [19-20]

This form of Yama, which destroys the sins of all gods, is described to you. 6 great-souled one ! now I tell you, how to make the image of Varuṇa, the lord of waters [21]

Thus ends the Adhyāya 51, entitled, making of the image of Yama, during the discourse between Mārkaṇḍeya and Vajra, in the third part of Śrī Viṣṇu dharmottara.

---

Mārkaṇḍeya said : The lord of waters—Varuṇa should be made, sitting in a chariot with seven swans. He must be resembling the colour of glossy Vaidūrya gem and wearing white cloth. [1]

O King ! That god with four hands has slightly big belly, is adorned with the necklace of pearls, and has all the ornaments. [2]

On the left hand side a flag with the emblem of Makara (crocodile) should be made, and over his head there should be a very white Chatra (umbrella). O king ! on the left lap his wife Gaurī with all beautiful limbs, and with two hands should be made. In her left hand there should be a lotus and her right hand should be placed on the back of the god (Varuṇa). [3-4]

In the (two) right hands of god a lotus and a noose, and in his (two) left hands a conch and a jewel-box should be placed. [5]

On his right hand side goddess Gaṅgā should be shown sitting on a crocodile and having a cāmara. She should be having hands like lotus and a beautiful face. She should be as white as the moon. [6]

On his left Yamunā should be shown sitting on a tortoise, and with cāmara (in hand). She should be placid, and like a blue lotus in colour. She should have hands like the blue lotus. [7]

O king ! as the colour of water is like that of Vaidūrya, Varuṇa assumes that colour to show favour to both of them. [8]

O the best of the twice-born ! they are very white in their natural colour, so his garment is very white like them. [9]

Vajra said : How did you tell the true and untrue colour of the water ? I am very eager, so I want to hear about it. [10]

Mārkaṇḍeya said : 6 delighter of Yadus ! the untrue colour of waters is that of Vaidūrya but the colour of the sky reflected in them is seen like that. [11]

6 King ! the colour of the waters seen in the falling waterfalls resembles moon-light. That is the colour in natural condition. [12]

Varuna the lord of waters is Pradyumna, the descendant of Vāsudeva. 6 the delighter of Yadus ! His wife Gaurī should be known as Rati. [13]

6 the lord of earth ! the delightful lotus in her hand represents good luck, 6 strong-armed one ! the lotus in the hand of Varuna represents the Dharma (religion). [14]

Know the conch to be riches, and the noose to be the bondage of Samsāra (worldly life), and the jewelled vessel in his hand should be known as the earth containing all jewels. [15]

The fame is the very white umbrella, and the crocodile (Makara) the happiness. Brahmā has narrated the ornaments on his hands. [16]

6 best of the best men ! In this world seven seas are well known : the sea of salt, the sea of milk, the sea of ghee, the sea of sour-milk, the sea of rice-gruel, the sea of sugar-cane juice and the sea of liquor. They are the seven swans in the chariot of that high-souled one Varuna. [17-18]

6 twice-born ! Yamunā represents his shadow and Bhāgīrathī represents the success, and the crocodile and the tortoise represent Vanity and Time. [19]

The lotus in the hand of heavenly Gangā and the blue lotus of Yamunā represent increasing prosperity. [20]

Thus I have narrated to you, the image of the lord of waters (Varuna), who carries the noose of head.

6 the moon of the Yadu-race ' here after, I tell you about the image of the lord of riches (Kubera). [21]

Thus ends Adhyāya 52, entitled the making of the image of Varuna, during the discourse between Mārkaṇḍeya and Vajra, in the third part of Śrī Viṣṇudharmottara.

---

## ADHYĀYA 53

Mārkaṇḍeya said The wealth-giver Kubera should be made having the colour of a lotus-leaf and a man as his Vāhana (carrier) He must be having the colour of gold, all kinds of ornaments, a big belly, four hands and yellowish eyes, a dress of northerners and many necklaces resting on his belly [1-2]

He must have two large teeth in his mouth, and moustache-beard on his face On his head, the crown crushing his enemies should be made inclined towards the left [3]

On his left lap boon-giver Riddhi-devī should be placed She must have two hands out of which the right hand should rest on the back of the god [4]

6 the destroyer of the enemies ! his left hand should be made holding a jewelled vessel In the two right hands of Kubera a mace and a Sakti (spear) should be made [5]

There should be a flag having the emblem of a lion and a palanquin near the feet His treasure-boxes should be made in the form of conch and lotus, filled with treasure [6]

His face is inclined side ways between the conch and the lotus You should know the lord of riches (Kubera) as Aniruddha [7]

Brahmā has prescribed the decoration and ornaments (on his body) The wealth well known as gold is the chief of all riches [8]

Through his favour one wears cloth like gold

His Sakti (spear) is traditionally said to be the power, and the mace stands for polity (Danda niti) [9]

Rddhi is said to be the worldly life. Its nature should be known. The jewelled vessel in her hand is said to be the receptacle of good qualities. [10]

Know that the man is the kingdom, on which the god always rules. By the nature the conch and the lotus should be known as treasures. From them wealth flows perpetually. [11]

The flag marked of a lion should be known as desire. 6 dear one ! the two large teeth represent the punishment and reward of that great souled god. [12-13]

6 King ! This is the description of Kubera, the king of Yaksas, residing in the forest named Ananta-Damstra in Yaksanada (the river of Yaksas).

6 one with wide and red eyes ! tell me now what I shall tell you the next. [14]

Thus ends the Adhyāya 53, entitled the making of the image of Vaiśravaṇa (Kubera) during the discourse between Mārkaṇḍeya and Vajra, in the third part of Śrī Viṣṇudharmottara.

---



## ADHYĀYA 54

Vajra said - 6 descendant of Bhṛgu ! I wish to hear about the making the image of Suparna (Garuda), Tāla, Makara, Mṛga and the Marutas [1]

Mārkaṇḍeya said Tārksya (Garuda) should be made, resembling the emerald (Māṛakata), and having the nose in the shape of an owl (Kauśika), He should have four hands, round eyes and face, and the thighs and legs like a vulture. He must be adorned with two wings and shining due to lustre, but devoid of feathers [2-3]

In his two hands an umbrella and a full pitcher should be given and the (remaining) two hands should be folded (forming an Añjali) [4]

But when the Lord (Viṣṇu) is on the back, the two hands should not carry the umbrella and the pitcher, but they should be made to support the feet of the Lord. [5]

He should have slightly big belly, and adorned by all the ornaments.

Tāla should be made having the shape of a palm fan. Makara should have the shape of Makara (alligator) on the top of it. Acyuta like a Mṛga (? a star) [6]

Mind, world, love and work in succession are traditionally, said to be Vāsudeva, Acyuta, Strong-armed Pradyumna and Aniruddha respectively [7-8]

## ADHYĀYA 55

Vajra said : 6 the knower of Dharma ! Kindly tell me about the making the images of Śiva, Agni, Nirṛti and Vāyu, because in it I have a great doubt. [1]

Mārkaṇḍeya said : Śiva should be made having four hands. The left of his body should form Pārvatī. In his two right hands there should be a rosary and a trident. [2]

6 the delighter of Yadu ! in his left two hands a mirror and a blue lotus should be shown. 6 one with great luck ! Śambhu should be with one face, and two eyes; and adorned by all ornaments. The left part of the body is in the form of his beloved Pārvatī. 6 one with strong arms ! It signifies that Prakṛti is not separated from Purusa. [3-4]

That is why he is well-known as Gaurī śarva and worshipped by all men. The cause of trident etc., is already explained to you by me. [5]

I have described to you this form of īśāna. Now hear the description of the image of Agni, which is always Dharma, for which the Vedās became current in this world, and which is the mouth of all gods and demons. [6]

Thus ends the Adhyāya 55 entitled the making the image of Gaurīśvara during the discourse between Mārkaṇḍeya and Vajra, in the third part of Śrī Viṣṇudharmottara.

---

## ADHYĀYA : 56

Mārkaṇḍeya said . One should make Vahnī (Fire-god) red, having matted locks (Jaṭā-dhara) and wearing the garments of smoke-colour, and the garlands of flames That lord of all gods, should be placid and having three eyes, moustache and beard, four hands, four big teeth, and vāta (wind) as his charioteer He should be sitting on the chariot yoked by four parrots and with smoke as banner. [1-2]

On his left lap goddess Svāhā with a jewelled vessel in hand, should be seated as Śaśī with Śakra In the two right hands of Vahnī there should be flames and trident, and in the left hand a rosary

The colour of the light is red so the colour of Vahnī is traditionally said to be red His having the wind as his charioteer and his having smoke as banner is seen by everyone, similarly his having the garments in the form of smoke of sacrifice [3-5]

Sambhu has explained the significance of the rosary, trident, matted locks, three eyes and the wearing of all ornaments [6]

The best abode is in form of flames through that Fire-god receives the oblations directed towards him 6 killer of enemies ! he having received, carries them to all gods [7]

The punishment of words, Vāg-danda, (censure), Dhigdanda, fine of money, Dhana-danda and the fourth punishment of killing (Vadha-danda) are said as his large teeth [8]

Darbha (grass) is specified his brightly purified moustache The vedas are the parrots yoked to the chariot of that great soul [9]

Thus the image of Agni is described to you. It destroys the sins of people and gives them success. 6 King ! you, who are invincible should meditate upon that at the time of sacrifice and in all ceremonies of fire. [10]

Thus ends the Adhyāya 56 entitled the making of the image of fire-god (Agni), during the discourse between Mārkaṇḍeya and Vajra, in the third part of Śrī Viṣṇudharmottara.

---

## ADHYĀYA : 57

Mārkaṇḍeya : Virūpākṣa has expanded eyes, a majestic staff, bright face, erect hair, two hands, yellow moustache and terrible face. [1]

His colour is reddish dark. He wears dark garments and all the ornaments. In his hands there are the staff and rein of the camel (or the bull with a hump). [2]

His wife goddess Nirṛti with dark limbs, dark face and carrying a noose in hand, should be placed on his left. [3]

Kāla (time) is called Virūpākṣa and death (Mṛtyu) is called Nirṛti, 6 King ! therefore they have dark appearance (Tāmasam Rūpam) and dark garments. [4]

The staff in his hand signifies death and the reins of the camel signify the bondage. His conveyance (Vāhana), the camel on his left is great delusion. [5]

I have narrated to you the form of the body of Virūpākṣa who is the unrivalled lord of demons.

6 King ! now I tell you the image of Vāyu, having the best lustre. [6]

Thus ends the Adhyāya 57 entitled making the image of Nirṛti during the discourse between Mārkaṇḍeya and Vajra, in the third part of Śrī Viṣṇudharmottara.

---

## ADHYĀYA 58

Mārkaṇḍeya said : Vāyu (the Wind-god) is having the colour of the sky. His form also should be like the sky. He should be beautiful and with two hands. His garments should be flowing with the wind. [1]

6 twice-born ! on his left his wife Śivā should be shown, as if desiring to go, and Pavana (the wind-god) should be made holding the end of the garment. [2]

Similarly the goddess Śivā should be made the most beautiful woman, and the Wind-god should have face with open mouth (Vyāvṛtta) and dishevelled hair. [3]

Vāyu gives shelter to various smells and colours, and supports them by his motion, that is why he has the black colour of the sky. [4]

His garment is said to be the sky. His motion is the goddess Śivā and the Anīla (Wind) is Aniruddha i.e. unobstructed. [5]

6 King ! thus I have described to you the image of Pavana pervading all the universe, and that of the goddess Śivā, known to all the twice-born as the holiest form. [6]

Thus ends the Adhyāya 58 entitled making the image of Vāyu (the god of wind), during the discourse between Mārkaṇḍeya and Vajra, in the third part of Śrī Viṣṇudharmottara.

## ADHYĀYA : 59

Mārkaṇḍeya said : Now I tell you about the making the image of Bhairava. He should be made having a big belly, round tawny eyes, terrible face with big teeth, two wide nostrils, garland of Kapāla (skulls), and ornaments of snakes on all sides. [1-2]

He must be made frightful and frightening the goddess Pārvati (the daughter of the mountain Himālaya) by the snakes and with the garment of elephant's skin, resembling the clouds full of water. [3]

He must have many hands adorned with all kinds of ornaments. The hands should be like big Sāla trees, and having auspicious sharp nails. [4]

This swaying image of Bhairava is very famous. The same when shown in front, it is called Mahākāla. [5]

In his hand he should have a snake. In his left the goddess Pārvāti (the daughter of the mountain) should be placed. She should not be in front of him. [6]

She should not be white or red in front of the chief group of the mothers, but his entourage should be shown and his Ganas of many forms should be made. [7]

Thus ends the Adhyāya 59 entitled making the images of Bhairava and Mahākāla during the discourse between Mārkaṇḍeya and Vajra, in the third part of Śrī Viṣṇudharmottara.

---

## ADHYĀYA 60

Vajra said : 6 propagator of Bhrgu-race ! 6 lord ! Kindly tell me about making the images of Viṣṇu, goddess of earth (Bhūmī), Ambara (the Sky-god) and Brahmā [1]

Mārkaṇḍeya said Lord Hari (Viṣṇu) is having one face and two hands He carries the club and the disc The other description of body of the Lord praising him, is already narrated [2]

Māyā the illusory power of Viṣṇu which binds the world is traditionally called Gāhvarī and the club in the hand of the Lord always subdues all the creatures She herself is Lakṣmī, Dhṛtī Kīrtī, Puṣṭī, Sraddhā, Saraswatī, Gāyatrī, the mother of the Vedas, and the Kālarātrī too , [3-4]

The disc in the hand of Viṣṇu is the wheel which sets the world moving 6 big-armed one ! it is also the wheel of religion (dharma-cakra), the wheel of time (Kāla-cakra) and the zodiac (Bha-cakra) [5]

Lord Viṣṇu is Dhruva (polar-star), the Valiant one always causes the Zodiac move That is why the Lord, who is the chief in this world holds the disc in his hand [6]

Thus ends the Adhyāya 60 entitled making the image of Viṣṇu during the discourse between Mārkaṇḍeya and Vajra, in the third part of Śrī Viṣṇudharmyittara

---



## ADHYĀYA : 61

Mārkaṇḍeya said : Maṭi, the Earth-goddess should be made, having the colour of the parrot, and adorned with the divine ornaments. She should have four hands and placid-body, and garments as white as the rays of the moon. [1]

6 the delighter of the Yādavas ! In the hands of (Bhū) the Earth a jewelled-vessel, a corn-vessel and a vessel full of medicinal plants and a lotus should be made. [2]

She should be made seated on the back of the four elephants of the quarters (Diḡ-nāgas). The goddess with all the vegetable life, is traditionally said to be of white colour. [3]

Her white garment is religion (Dharma), and the lotus in her hand is wealth (Artha). [4]

The significance of the rest is known to the wise, so 6 king ! it is taken as described to you by me.

Hence I narrate to you, the form of the form-less sky, which is described by the Siddhas. [5]

Thus ends the Adhyāya 61 entitled making the image of the Earth-goddess (Bhūmi), during the discusse between Mārkaṇḍeya and Vajra, in the third part of Śrī Viṣṇudharmottara.

---

## ADHYĀYA : 62

Mārkaṇḍeya : The Sky should be made to have the colour of the blue lotus and wearing the garments of that colour. He should have two hands carrying the moon and the sun, and he should be placid-looking. [1]

6 king ! thus I have described to you the image of the sky which is formed.

Now I narrate the image of that unrivalled grandfather (Brahmā). Bear it in mind. [2]

Thus ends the Adhyāya 62 entitled making the image of the sky, during the discourse between Mārkaṇḍeya and Vajra, in the third part of Śrī Viṣṇudharmottara.

---

## ADHYĀYA 63

Mārkaṇḍeya said : Brahmā should be made, sitting on the petal of the lotus and having four faces.

Sāvitṛī should be seated on his left lap. 6 one who knows the religion ! She should have the colour of the sun, and have a garland of rosary in her hand. 6 the lord of the earth ! All other things of the form should be as described before. [1-2]

6 placid one ! this kind of image of Grandfather Brahmā, giving boon should be made. Or the image of the Grandfather Brahmā, the unrivalled boon-bestower, under whose control lies the entire world, should be made as described before. [3]

Thus ends the Adhyāya 63 entitled making the image of Brahmā, during the discourse between Mārkaṇḍeya and Vajra, in the third part of Śrī Viṣṇudharmottara.

---

## ADHYĀYA 64

Mārkaṇḍeya said Devī Sarasvatī should be made adorned with all kinds of ornaments Standing and having four hands [1]

In her two right hands there should be a book and a rosary and in the left two hands vīṇā (Indian lute) and Kamandalu (water-vessel) [2]

She should stand with feet placed together, and her face should be made having a moon-like face The Vedas should be known as her hands and all Sāstras or Sciences as the book [3]

6 King ' The Kamandalu should be known as the nectar of all Sāstras and the rosary in her hand is time (Kāla) [4]

The Vainavī (?Vīṇā) should be known as the success incarnate There is no doubt about it Her face is Sāvitrī (Gāyatrī) Mantra celebrated as the foremost [5]

The eyes of the lotus-eyed one should be known as the moon and the sun [6]

I have narrated to you this very charming and holy form of Sarasvatī 6 chief of the kings ' the person desiring success should make it and meditate upon it [7]

Thus ends the Adhyāya 64 entitled making the image of Sarasvatī, during the discourse between Mārkaṇḍeya and Vajra in the third part of Śrī Viṣṇudharmottara

---

## ADHYĀYA 65

Vajra said 6 born of gods ! Kindly tell me about the making the image of Sesa who is the immeasurable powers of Viṣṇu and who supports the earth [1]

Mārkaṇḍeya said Sesa should be made, like the moon, and having the hood as bright as jewels He should have four hands, and blue garments He should be wearing all kinds of ornaments [2]

6 the delighter of Yadu ! Many haads should be made, and the hood, which is in middle on that, beautiful earth should be made [3]

In the two right hands of the god there should be a lotus and a mace, and in two left hands there should be the plough and the conch and the sea of liquor (Surāmbudhi) [4]

6 one with big hands ! the Tāla tree is said to be the universe The plough and the mace are well-known 6 the supporter of Yadu-race ! Vanamālā is also famous about which I have told you before [5]

By the god (Ananta) this earth with mountains forest and woods, is supported [6]

On the middle hood, earth should be placed by him [7]

6 the chief of the Yadu-race ! Let your desire for fame be satisfied by her, who is surrounded by hoods I have thus described to you, the image (of Ananta who is the form) of unthinkable great god Viṣṇu [8]

Thus ends the Adhyāya 65 entitled making the image of Seṣa (Ananta), during the discourse between Mārkaṇḍeya and Vajra, in the third part of Śrī Viṣṇudharmottara

---

## ADHYĀYA 66

Mārkandeya said 6 the best of the Kings ' The god Tumburu should be made, seated among divine mothers on a bull, and having four faces like Sarva Through me Mahādeva has described his (Tumburu's) form [1-2]

In his hand carrying a citron there should be made a skull The citron should be made as explained by Tryambaka (Śiva) [3]

On his right two divine mothers should be there, and on his left another pair of divine mothers [4]

Jayā and Vijayā should be made on the right, while Jayantī as well as Aparājitā should be made on the left [5]

They all should have two hands and four faces In the left hands of all there should be skulls [6]

6 great king ' in the right hand of Jayā a staff should be placed, and in the hand of Vijayā should be placed a sword with the colour of the mixed collyrium [7]

6 king ' Jayantī should have a rosary in her hand and Aparājitā should have small javelin in her hand [8]

One foot of all of them should be made to rest on a stool 6 king ' the right should be placed on the conveyance and the left should be made bent [9]

Jayā should be carried by a man, and Vijayā should be riding an owl Jayantī should be riding on a horse and Aparājitā should (is) borne on a cloud [10]

Jayā should be made white and Vijayā red O son of Yadu ' Jayantī should be yellow and goddess Aparājitā black Great god Tumburu should be made as white as the rays of the moon [11-12]

That glorious god the protector of the world, for pleasing the goddesses should be there among them. That adorable god, fulfilling the desires of the worshippers, and killing the enemies of the gods (Tri-daśāṇi-hantā), sits there [13]

Thus ends the Adhyāya 66 entitled the making of the image of Tumburu along with four goddesses, during the discourse between Mārkaṇḍeya and Vajra in the third part of Śrī Viṣṇu-dharmottara.

---

## ADHYĀYA : 67

Vajra said : You narrated before, making the image of fire-god and the lord of waters. Like those two, kindly tell me about the image of Sun-god and the Moon-god. [1]

Mārkandeya said : The sun should be made with auspicious moustache. He should have the colour of the ornaments of vermillion, northern garment, good form, and all types of ornaments. He must have four hands and great lustre. He must be well-covered by an armour. His girdle known as Yāviyāṅga should be made. [2-3]

In his left and right hands sunbeams-reins should be made, and he should have auspicious garlands full of flowers and rising up. [4]

On his left Daṇḍa (Sceptre) with very nice (human) form should be made and on the right Pingala having deep tawny colour should be placed, [5]

6 the descendent of Yadu ! both of them should have Northern dress. On their heads Vibhāvasu (sun-god) should put his (remaining) two hands. [6]

Pingala should have a pen and a paper-leaf in his hand, and the god (Danda) should be carefully made to have a spear. [7]

Similarly on the left of the sun-god a lion and a flag should be made. On his two sides his four sons Revanta, Yama and two Manus should be made. [8]

Or sun, the king of planets should be made surrounded by planets. [9]

On his all sides, there should be his four wives Rājāṇī, Rikṣubhā, Chāyā, and goddess Suvarcalā. [10]



The sun-god, whose charioteer is Aruna, should be seated on the chariot with one wheel, seven horses and bearing six spokes. [11]

The seven metres Gāyatrī, Uṣnik, Anuṣṭubh, Brhātī, Pañkti, Triṣṭubh and Jagatī are the seven horses of the chariot of Sun-god, [12]

He supports the entire universe with the rays (reins). The lion in his flag is celebrated as the incarnation of Dharma (religion).

The god supports whole world situated on his girdle. Rājā is celebrated as the earth, Riksubhā as the sky and Chāyā as the shadow. Lustre is said to be Suvarcalā. They are the wives of the sun-god. The glorious god is of red colour because he is the abode of light. [13-15]

He possesses unbearable heat so his limbs are hidden. Thus the Sun is celebrated as the abode of all. [16]

Thus I have narrated to you the form of the Sun-god, who is the lord of the day, who is present all over the world, the abode of light and heat, very bright, the lord of all and eternal.

Thus ends the Adhyāya 67 entitled the description of the image of Āditya, during the discourse between Mārkaṇḍeya and Vajra, in the third part of Śrī Viṣṇudharmottara.

---

Mārkaṇḍeya said Lord Moon-god should be made highly lustrous, having white body, wearing all ornaments, white garment and four hands. [1]

In the hands of the god there should be two white night lotuses (kumuda). Lustre (Kānti) personified should be on his right side, and on his left side Beauty (Śobhā) having matchless loveliness in the world should be made. In a corner of the left side there should be his ensign bearing the mark of a lion, as in the case of the sun. [2-3]

His chariot should have ten horses, two wheels, and Ambara (sky) as his charioteer. The ten horses of Moon-god (Candramasa) are Sraja, Trimanā, Vṛsa, Vāji, Haya, Nara, Vāk, Saptadhātu, Hamsa, Vyoma Mrga [4-5]

Or his wives called constellations (Naksatra) extremely beautiful and twenty-eight in number. [6]

Or eighty two different forms (bhāvās) of god's body should be made. 6 King ! 6 delighter of Yadus ! in ancient times, in the war of gods and Asuras, the constellations (Udus), through their wish multiplied their bodies, as the gods took the form of their masters. Then the Demons were Killed. [7-8]

The god, whose form was assumed by the constellation, was celebrated as the presiding deity of the constellation. [9]

6 Yādava ! then again in the war of gods and Demons, divine female forms in the same number were also made by their earnest desire. [10]

Their complexion and number (Varna-Sankhyā) should be known as before All the worlds bow down before these accomplished ladies [11]

6 the knower of religion ! That is why Moon-god is traditionally known as the father of all the worlds And when he is created whole world is delighted [12]

That Moon-form of Lord Viṣṇu should be known as the best The night lotuses in the hands of Moon-god should be known as delight and graciousness [13]

6 the delighter of Bhṛguṣ ! the nature of the Beauty and Lustre are explained The Moon is made of the essence of water, so he is white in colour [14]

The forefathers said that the nectar is the abode (essence) of water and Moon is indicated as that neectar 6 King ! Those who know Dharma having a flag marked with a lion, say that the horses of Moon-god are the ten quarters [15]

Thus ends the Adhyāya 68 entitled the description of the image of Moon-god, during the discourse between Mārkaṇdeya and Vajra, in the third part of Sri Viṣṇudharmottara

---

## ADHYĀYA 69

Vajra said 6 one with big hands ' Kindly tell me about the making of images of planets, because I believe that you know everything in this regard [1]

Mārkaṇḍeya said Bhauma (Mars) should be made like Agni (fire-god) and sitting on a golden chariot with eight horses Budha (Mercury) should be made like Viṣṇu and on a chariot like that of Bhauma [2]

Brhaspati (Jupiter) should have two hands and the colour of heated gold In his hands a book and a rosary should be placed [3]

The preceptor of gods (Guru) should be wearing yellow garment (pītāmbara) and all the ornaments He must be on a divine golden chariot with eight horses and a charming look [4]

Sukra (Venus) should be made having a white body and wearing a white garment He is said to have two hands, holding a treasure and a book 6 the delighter of Bhṛgu ' he shines on a chariot with ten horses [5-6]

Śani (Saturn) should be made dark and wearing dark garment He should have extended veins, and two hands carrying a staff and a rosary He should be seated on an iron-chariot drawn by eight serpents [7]

Rāhu should be seated on a silver chariot with eight horses. Only his head having the hair erect, round eyes furnished with one hand should be made Only right hand should be made, and that should be empty. [8-9]

One who knows, should make the form of Ketu similar to that of Bhauma, 6 king ! only (a chariot with) ten horses should be made [10]

Thus ends the Adhyāya 69 entitled making the images of Mars and other planets, during the discourse between Mārkaṇḍeya and Vajra, in the third part of Śrī Viṣṇudharmottara

---

## ADHYĀYA 70

Vajra said 6 one with immeasurable lustre ' 6 one knowing religion ' Kindly describe to me the Images of two Manus as you have described Yama and the king of gods [1]

Mārkandeya said The present Manu should be made having the characteristics of a king but the future one should be made without all the ornaments having matted locks and a rosary and carrying a water-vessel (Kamandalu) As he is engaged in penance he is full of lustre, but lean [2-3]

All other future Manus should be having the characteristics of ascetics 6 Yādava ! He should be made like Sāvarṇi Manu [4]

All the past Manus should be made having the characteristics of a king Lord Revanta should be made like the sun and on the back of a horse [5]

Thus ends the Adhyāya 70 entitled the making of images of Manus, during the discourse between Mārkandeya and Vajra in the third part of Sri Viṣṇudharmottara

---

Vajra said 6 one with immeasurable lustre ! tell me about the making the images of deities of planets [1]

Mārkaṇḍeya said I have already described to you the image of fire-god and the lord of waters (Varuna) Similarly I have told you about Viṣṇu and the king of gods (Devendra) [2]

6 descendant of Yadu ! Now I tell you about the image of Kumāras having four forms Kumāra, Skanda, Viśākha and Guha [3]

Kumāra should be made, having six faces and adorned with the feather of a peacock He should wear red garments and have the best peacock as his Vāhana [4]

In his right hands a cock and a be'l should be made In his left hands Vajrayanti flag and a spear (Sakti) should be given [5]

Skanda, Viśākha and Guha should be made like Kumāra They should not have six faces, and they should not be on the peacock [6]

That eternal Lord Vāsudeva manifested himself as four-fold Kumāra wishing to lead the army of gods [7]

Bhadrakālī should be made charming and having eighteen hands She should be standing in the Ālīdha posture on a chariot drawn by four lions [8]

6 descendent of Yadu ! In the hands of Bhadra-kālī there should be a rosary, a trident, a sword and a shield, bow and arrow the conch and the lotus Sruk and Sruv (spoon and ladle used in the sacrifice), altar (Vedi) and Kamandalu, the staff and spear, and the skin of black antelope and the fire should be given [9-10]

The hands of Bhadra-kālī should be bestowing peace 6 one with great luck ! one of her hands should hold a jewel-vessel [11]

Prajāpati should not be on a carriage of swan He should not be made four-faced Other characteristics are like Brahmā [12]

Viṇāyaka should be made having the head like an elephant and four hands In his (two) right hands there is a rosary and a trident and in his (two) left hands there should be a vessel full of sweet-balls and an axe 6 destroyer of the enemies ' his left tusk should not be made He should be sitting on a seat resting his one leg on the foot-stool and in his palm there should be a vessel full of sweet-balls [13-15]

6 the descendent of Yadu ! he should be made having a big belly and motionless ears He should wear the skin of a tiger and have the serpent as his sacred thread [16]

Lord Viśva-karmā should be made having the form of the sun-god He should have two hands like Sandamśa form, and a lustrous body [17]

He is traditionally called Viśva-Karmā, because he creates the universe Lord Viṣṇu who created the universe is called Viśva-Karmā [18]

Thus ends the Adhyāya 71 entitled making of the images of Kumāra etc during the discourse between Mārkaṇḍeya and Vajra in the third part of Sri Viṣṇudharmottara

---

## ADHYĀYA : 72

Vajra said 6 divine one ' 6 you worshipped by gods ' kindly tell me about making the images of the Vasus, of Āngirasa and of the Visvadevas, the Rudras, the Bhrgus, the Sādhyās, Ādityas, and Maruts [1-2]

Mārkandeya said The Vasu named Dhara should be given the form of Prajāpati, and the form of Viṣṇu should be given to Vasu named Dhruva Some should be given the form of the moon, and Anala that of Vāyu should be given. Anala has the form of fire-god To ॥Prabhāsa that of Varuna should be given. [3-4]

Similarly the Visvadevās should be given the divine form of Indra The King of serpents is devoid of an eye, but with bent forehead. [5]

Similarly Āngirasa god, should be given the form of Jiva rūpa (Bṛhaspati), the Rudras the form of Mahēśvara, and the Sādhyās the form of Viṣṇu [6]

6 the descendent of Yadu ' Twelve Ādityas should be given the form of the Sun In their different works they are traditionally said to be similar to the rising sun [7]

Viṣṇu, Indra and Varuna should be made as I told you before. Maruta deity should be made in the form of Sukra [8]

Thus ends the Adhyāya 72 entitled making the image of the Vasus, during the discourse between Mārkandeya and Vajra in the third part of Śrī Viṣṇudharmottara.

---



Vajra said 6 one with great luck ! Kindly tell me about the images of other gods, because you are said to be omniscient [1]

Mārkaṇḍeya said Lord Kasyapa should be given the form of Prajāpati Ancient divine mothers Aditi, Diti, Danu Kāsthā, Danāyu, Sīmhitā, Muni, Kadru Krodhā, Turā Prādhā, Vinata, Surabhi, and Khaśā should be made beautiful and having two hands [2-3]

6 the delighter of Yadu ! of these Aditi, Diti, Vinatā, and Surabhi, the glance should be mild [4]

6 best of Yādavas ! all the divine mothers should be made by this kind of image-making [5]

The other wives of Kasyapa should have agitated eyes

Dhruva, the lord of the group of planets should have the form of Viṣṇu He must have two hands, in which there must be a disc and reins He must be beautiful and placid-looking

Agastya, the great sage should be given the form of future (Bhaviṣya) Manu [6-7]

So also Bhṛgu and other great sages Jayanta, the son of Sakra should be made beautiful having two hands with bow and arrows, grand and placid-looking [8-9]

Lord Bala the son of Yama should be made having a shield and a spear

Puskara should have the lustre like the leaf of the Lotus In his both hands there should be given a sword and a book [10]

Jyotsnā (Moon-light) the daughter of the moon is matchless in this world and adorned with all ornaments, she should be placed on the left of Puskara [11]

The lord Nala-Kūbara the source of wealth should be made beautiful in form, with a face having two tusks and a jewel-vessel in his hand. [12]

The learned should make the image of Manibhadra similar to wealth-giver (Kubera). Palanquine (Śibikā) should not be made for him, but with his wife he should have a man as his carrier (Vāhana). [13]

Purojava, the son of Vāyu (the wind-god) should be made having the form of Vāyu; and Lord Varcā, the son of Soma, should be made very beautiful, and having a lotus as a plaything (Līlā Kamala) in his hands. With which he becomes lustrous. [14]

Nandi should be made, having three eyes, four hands and strong arms. He should have the colour of Sindūra or Aruna, and should be wearing the hide of the tiger. In his (two) hands a trident and a javelin should be given. The third one should be raised above the head, and the fourth should be in a threatening pose and looking at people coming from a distance. [15-17]

By this form only, the learned should know Virabhadra.

I shall tell you about the form of Dharma afterwards. [18]

Artha (the god of money) should be given the form of Lord Dhanada (the giver of wealth, Kubera).

Kāmadeva (god of love) should be made full of matchless beauty in this world. He should be made having eight hands and adorned with the conch-shells and lotuses. He should have hands holding bow and arrows, and his eyes should indicate intoxication through drink. [19-20]

Rati, Prīti, Śakti and shining Mada-śakti, these four wives should be made having charming beauty. [21]

His four hands should rest on the bosoms of his wives. Makara (crocodile) should be made his flag, and that great god should have five-arrow-heads. [22]

On his left side, Nidrā (sleep) with hand put on the waist, should be made, and on her right side there should be Samkarsana [23]

Similarly Vāsudeva and son Maikāna are on the left 6 sinless one ' I shall tell you about the image of Lakṣmī afterwards. [24]

Goddess of Learning, Devī Sarasvatī [should be made, with four hands. 6 the delighter of Yadu ! in her hands rosary, the trident, the book and the watervessel (Kamandaḷu) should be made. [25]

Goddess Vārūṇī should be exceedingly beautiful and having a Kalaśa (pitcher) [26]

Cāmundā is said to be subduing all creatures That mighty goddess should be made, having a drooping belly, and the bosom covered by a red cloth She should have many hands with weapons-like trident etc. and a big chariot. [27-28]

Similarly three faced (Trimukhī) Śuskā should be particularly made shrunk. The goddess should have many hands and is surrounded by snakes. [29]

Bhīmā should have the garland of skulls and carry a skull-staff (Khaṭvāṅga). The messenger auspicious Śivā should be made having the face like a bitch fox. [30]

6 King ' the goddess has four hands and standing in the Ālīdha pose, holds a vessel of blood (in her one hand), and (in other two hands) She carries a sword and a spear. In her fourth hand she should carry the flesh.

The mothers (Mātara), about whom I told you before, should have the marks similar to the gods and should have suitable forms. [31-32]

The mighty goddesses, whose form is not described, should be dancing and carrying blood-vessels and flesh [33]

The Eastern Direction should be a girl (Bālā) red and sitting on an elephant. South-eastern Direction should be a grown up girl, having lotus-colour and sitting on a female elephant. Southern Direction should be a young lady yellowish in colour, and sitting on a chariot. [34-35]

The South-Western Direction, belonging to Varuna the lord of waters, is dark-yellow and seated on a camel. The West Direction is dark, fallen from the youth and seated on a horse. [36]

6 the delighter of Yadus ! Wadavā (North-West Direction) is blue in colour and on the verge of getting grey hair. The North Direction is white, old and is seated on a man. [37]

The North-east should be very old, pale and seated on a bull. The lower region is similar to the earth and the upper-region is similar to the sky. [38]

Kāla, the Time should be made terrific, having a fearful face, and the serpents and scorpions as the hair on the body. He should have a noose in his hand. [39]

Fever should be made fierce, having three legs, three bewildered eyes, three faces, three hands and ashes as his weapons. [40]

Dhanvantari, the physician of gods, should be made good-looking and with a beautiful form. In his two hands he should have a pitcher (Kalaśa) full of nectar. [41]

Sāmaveda should be made powerful but with the face of a Horse. Or an intelligent one should give the form of gods to Vedas. [42]

The Ṛgveda is traditionally known as Brahmā, the Yajurveda as Vāsava (Indra) similarly the Sāmaveda is known as Viṣṇu and the Atharvaveda as Śambhu. [43]

Śikṣā should be known as Prajāpati and Kalpa is celebrated as Brahmā. Grammar (Vyākaraṇa) is said to be Sarasvatī, the goddess of learning, and Nirukta to be Lord Varuna. [44]

Chanda is the altar (citi) similarly Jyotiṣa (Astrology) is lord Sun. Mimāṃsā is Lord Moon and Nyāyamārga is the Wind. Dharma-śāstras are Dharma himself and similarly Purāṇa is Manu. Itihāsa is Prajāpati, and Dhanurveda is Śatakṛatu. [45-46]

Āyurveda is Lord Dhanvantari himself. Phalaveda is goddess Maṭi, and Nṛtta-Śāstra, the science of dancing is Maheśvara. [47]

Pañcatātra is Saṃkarsana and Pāśupata is Rudra Pātañjala Yoga is Ananta and Sāṃkhya the sage Kapila. [48]

All the sciences of money (Artha-Śāstra) are known as Kubera, the Lord of money. All the sciences of Arts (Kālā-Śāstra) represent Kāmadeva, the master of the world. [49]

All the other sciences are said to be produced by that author, who is the deity of that particular science. He is like the incarnation of that science. [50]

6 Killer of the enemy ! the image of the different limbs of time should resemble the form of their own gods. 6 the moon of the Yadu Race ! thus I have told you, the image of all the best gods. [51]

Thus ends the Adhyāya 73 entitled making of the images of gods, during the discourse between Mārkaṇḍeya and Vajra, in the third part of Sri Viṣṇudharmottara.

---

## ADHYĀYA 74

Vajra said Oh sinless one ! Kindly tell me about the making the form of a Linga [1]

Markandeya said When a Linga is worshipped, the worship of the world is accomplished Its upper portion should be made round, the middle portion should be made octagonal and the portion near the Brahmapīṭha (lower-most portion) the square The round portion should be shown completely but the octagonal portion should be inserted in the Pīṇikā, and the square portion should be in the Brahmapīṭha The learned should know that Brahmapīṭha is below Bhadrā-pīṭha The hem should be well rounded and curved from the front towards the top of the Linga The upward height should be double That and other characteristics of the Linga are laid down by the learned as in Brahmasūtra [2-5]

Thus ends the Adhyāya 74 entitled the making of the image of the Linga, during the discourse between Mārkaṇḍeya and Vajra, in the third part of Śrī Viṣṇudharmottara

---

## ADHYĀYA 75

Vajra said : Oh the best amongst the upholders of all the religions ! Kindly tell me in detail about the form of Vyoman, (the upper region), because when the Vyoman is worshipped, the worship of the world is accomplished. [1]

Mārkaṇḍeya said : Oh one with long arms ! the lower-most part (of the Vyoman) should be square and then circular, then slightly four-sided and then fully square, and then placed like Meru. This third (lowermost) part of Vyoma, is called Bhadrapiṭha. This is the characteristic of all the Bhadrapiṭhas. It has columns and its middle portion is quadrangular [2-4]

On the top-most Bhadrapiṭha portion a lotus with eight beautiful petals should be placed and on the Karnikā (the pericarp) there is the Sun-god. On the petals Dikpālas should be placed in their respective directions. Under the Brahmapiṭha the Earth should be fixed. Therefore the upper region is known as Antarikṣa. All the best of gods live there. [5-7]

Oh one with long arms I have described to you Vyoma (the sky) which is full of gods. By worshipping it all desires are fulfilled. Oh the only hero in the world ! Oh the chief of the Yadu family ! I have completely described to you the true form of Vyoma. By worshipping Vyoma the entire world with all moving and non-moving entities are worshipped. [8-9]

Thus ends the Adhyāya 75 entitled making the image of Vyoma, during the discourse between Mārkaṇḍeya and Vajra, in the third part of Śrī Viṣṇudharmottara.

---

## ADHYĀYA 76

Vajra said ! O delighter of Bhṛgu ! Nara and Nārāyaṇa should be made with what form ? How should Hari and Kṛṣṇa be made ?

Mārkaṇḍeya said : Oh one with strong-arms ! Nara should be made green like Dūrvā grass, and having two hands. Nārāyaṇa should be having four hands and the colour of blue-lotus petal. [1-2]

In between them Badarī adorned with fruits should be made. Along-side Badarī, both of them (Nara and Nārāyaṇa) should be made, wearing rosaries, and seated on a splendid and beautiful chariot with eight wheels drawn by the elements (Bhūta). They should be self-contained and wearing the hide of black-antelope and having round matted hair, Their one foot should be placed on the chariot and the other one touching the knee. Here Hari should be made like Nara (a man) and Kṛṣṇa also resembling the image of Nārāyaṇa, [3-5]

Thus ends the Adhyāya 76, entitled making the image of Nara-Nārāyaṇa (Hari) kṛṣṇa during the discourse between Mārkaṇḍeya and Vajra, in the third part of Śrī Viṣṇudharmottara.

---



## ADHYĀYA 77

Vajra said : O one who knows Dharma ! O the tormentor of the enemy ! Kindly tell about making the image of Dharma (Religion), Jñāna (knowledge), Vairāgya (Detachment) and Aiśvarya (Wealth). [1]

Mārkaṇḍeya said : One who knows, should make Dharma four-faced, four-footed, four-armed and of white colour. He should be wearing white garments, and all ornaments. [2]

In his right hand there should be a rosary, and in his left hand a book. On his right side there should be Adherence (Vyavasāya) in person and on the left most beautiful Happiness (Sukha) should be made. The hands of Dharma should be placed on the heads of both of them. [3-4]

The rosary is traditionally known as Kāla (time) and the book is (Āgama) or knowledge. The four faces are Yajña (sacrifice), Satya (truth), Tapas (austerity) and Dāna (gift giving) [5]

Deśa (place), Kāla (time), purity and cleanness (purification) are said to be, his hands. Oh knower of the religion ! Śruti (revelation), Smṛti (recollection), Sadācāra (good behaviour) and Priyamātmanah (one's own self-contentment) should be known as the four feet of the god. Due to the predominance of Sattva he is white and he is celebrated as having knowledge as his garment. [6-7]

Or his fourteen wives should be made : Kīrti (fame), Lakṣmī (fortune), Dhṛti (fortitude), Medhā (intellect), Puṣṭi (development), Śraddhā (faith), Kriyā (activity), Mati (judgement), Buddhi (intelligence), Lajjā (bashfulness), Vapuḥ Śānti (peace), Siddhi (Success), and Tuṣṭi (satisfaction)—these are all the wives of Dharma. All of them should be made very beautiful and lustrous.

They should have two hands and nice ornaments. If one is initiated with one's wife (into Dharma), then one is established in Dharma [8-10]

Thus ends the Adhyāya 77 entitled making the image of Dharma, during the discourse between Mārkn̄ḍeya and Vajra, in the third part of Śrī Viṣṇudharmottara

---

## ADHYĀYA 78/1\*

Mārkaṇḍeya said : Vairāgya-renunciation should be known as Pradyumna residing in the body of Kapila. (Kāpītm Tanum). His hand should be placed in the middle and his other hand should be attached to it [1]

His other two hands should carry Sankha-conch and Cakra-disc. He should be sitting on the seat of a lotus-Padmāsana, and his eyes should be closed in meditation. [2]

That Lord Kapila should be made such that he [is difficult to look at due to the matted locks (Jaṭā), his shoulders should be muscular due to the breath control and his two feet should have the mark of the lotus. (3]

6 King ! he is wearing the hide of a deer Mṛgājina-dhara, and having auspicious sacred-thread-Yajñopavīta. The lord sits on the middle of the great lotus and chants the mantra of the Lord. [4]

That great personality is sitting in the mental state of renunciation. His position is the highest position. That ancient personality is the preacher of Sāṅkhya philosophy. He meditates in such a way that he is the concealer (Goptā) of this world. [5]

Thus ends the Adhyāya 78/1 entitled 'making the form of Vairāgya renunciation' during the discourse between Mārkaṇḍeya and Vajra in the third part of Śrī Viṣṇudharmottara.

---

\* The vyākṛteśvara press edition omits this adhyāya.

## ADHYĀYA 78/2

Mārkaṇḍeya said O Tormentor of the strength of the enemies ! Lord Viṣṇu, who assumed the body of the Man-lion (Narasimha) is called Jñāna (knowledge), by persons knowing Dhyāna (meditation) [1]

He with heavy shoulders, and neck, with lean waist and thin belly, should be seated in the form of a man, on a throne in an Ālīdha pose, He should be lustrous and adorned with all ornaments His face should be surrounded by a garland of flames and should have flames as his manes [2-3]

On the knees of the god, the demon Hiranyakaśipu, having the colour of blue lotus should be tearing the chest of Hiranyakaśipu, with his sharp nails. [4]

The learned knows Hiranyakaśipu to be ignorance (Ajñāna).

The lord embodying the soul of Samkarsana, is the destroyer of ignorance [5]

Oh twice-born ! this god Samkarṣana always tears open three fold impurities of this world, arising from speech, mind and body [6]

Harī, the part manifestation of Samkarṣana assuming the body of the Man-lion (Narasimha) becomes the destroyer of three kinds of Tamas (Ignorance). [7]

In this world no other kind-form like him exists. The Nṛsimha form of the god is the destroyer of all ignorance. [8]

or Lord Harī, with two hands resting on the head of Gadā (the personified club), should be seated at ease on a lion-throne adorning it. [9]

The lord, with a body full of a garland of flames, and holding conch-shell and lotus, should have placed his raised foot in the hands of the Earth in human form [10]

Nṛsīmha should be adorned by hands with the emblems of the conch-shell, the disc, the club and the lotus His hair should be adorned by the curling flames of fire [11]

Or Narasīmha should be made difficult to look at on account of Prabhāmandala (halo) He should be furnished with all decorations or devoid of ornaments [12]

Nṛsīmha, the lord of worlds, the abode of lustre, and like the sky is knowledge I have described the three kinds of form of that inscrutable Janārdana [13]

Thus ends the Adhyāya 78/2 entitled making the image of Nṛsīmha, during the discourse between Mārkaṇḍeya and Vajra, in the third part of Srī Viṣṇudharmottara

---

## ADHYĀYA · 79

Mārkaṇḍeya said : Varāha, the lord Hari as Aniruddha is endless wealth and power (aiśvarya). By his supreme power he holds up the Earth by the tip of his tusk. [1]

Or the lord Human-boar (Nṛvarāha) should be placed on Śeṣa. Śeṣa should be made having four hands, beautiful jewelled hoods, widened eyes due to wonder and engaged in looking at the goddess (Pṛthivī) Oh descendant of Yadu ! in his hands the plough and the mace should be placed. He should be in Añjali pose (with folded hands) and with snake ornaments.

The Lord should be on his (Śeṣa) back, in ālīdha pose. On the span (aratnī) on his left hand should be placed Vasundharā (Earth) in the form of a woman. Her two auspicious hands should be made bowing (namaskāra). [2-5]

In the hand that supports the goddess Earth the conch-shell should be there. His other hands should be holding the lotus, the disc and the club. [6]

Or his hand should be shown whirling the disc for cutting the head of Hiranyākṣa, or the lord standing in front of Hiran-yākṣa with raised spear. [7]

The learned know Hiranyākṣa to be Absence of Power and wealth incarnate. That destroyer of enemies was destroyed by Varāha through his Aiśvarya. [8]

Or Varāha should be made in the form of Human-boar (Nṛvarāha), sitting in meditation like Kapila. Or he should be made two-handed and about to carry the pinda (globe) of the earth). [9]

Or he should be made as the personification of full anger in the midst of many demons. Or he should be made in the form of the Human-boar or entirely as a boar supporting the earth [10]

Lord Varāha, the boar should be made irresistible, and upholding whole world with his supreme powers 6 King ! the power of that one, removing all the sins, is never restricted. [11]

Thus ends the Adhyāya 79 entitled making the image of Varāha, during the discourse between Mārkaṇḍeya and Vajra, in the third part of Śrī Viṣṇudharmottara.

---

## ADHYĀYA 80

Vajra said : Oh one with big hands ! Now on this occasion I wish to hear about the form of Aśva-Śira (Hayagrīva) Viṣṇu with immeasurable strength. [1]

Mārkaṇḍeya said : Lord Hayagrīva with the neck of a horse should be made, as the incarnation supporting the earth, with feet resting on the hand. He should have a smiling face and blue garments. [2]

Know the god Hayagrīva to be a form of Saṁkarsana. He should be made having eight hands. In his four hands, the learned should give the conch-shell, the disc, the club and the lotus endowed with forms (Sākāra). Other four hands should be placed on the personified Vedas. In old days the god Hayagrīva had rescued the Vedas. [3-5]

Oh chief in the family of Yadu ! Vedas were stolen by two chief demons, then the God-head, Supreme Being having the head of a horse rescued them (Vedas) from the nether world Rasātala. [6]

Thus ends the Adhyāya 80 entitled making the image of Hayagrīva, during the discourse between Mārkaṇḍeya and Vajra, in the third part of Śrī Viṣṇudharmottara.

---



## ADHYĀYA 81

Vajra said Tell me about the form of Padmanābha the lord of the worlds from whose lotus Pītāmaha-Brahmā the god of gods was born [1]

Mārkaṇḍeya said Sesā, looking like a snake, and having a head to be seen with difficulty due to the precious gems on his hoods, should be made lying in water [2]

Thereupon the god of gods Caturbhujā (having four hands) should be shown lying Oh lord of the earth ! His one leg should be placed on the lap of Lakṣmī, and the other one should be placed on Sesā's lap made of the hood His one hand should be extended upon the knee, his another hand should be placed on the navel and the third hand should be placed under the head of the Lord and his fourth hand should be holding the sprout of the Santāna (tree) Oh descendant of Yadu ! On the lotus-containing the entire world and sprung from the lake in form of navel, in the front of goddess (Lakṣmī) Brahmā should be shown Madhu and Kaiṭābha should be made clinging to the lotus-stalks [3-7]

Near the snake weapons in human shape should be placed. Oh the leader of Yadu-chief, thus I have described to you the image of that greatest god [8]

Thus ends the Adhyāya 81 entitled making the image of Padma-nābha during the discourse between Mārkaṇḍeya and Vajra, in the third part of *Srī Viṣṇudharmottara*

---

## ADHYĀYA 82

Vajra said Oh propagator of Bhṛgu race ! Kindly tell me about the image of Lakṣmī, who is the mother of all the worlds and the great souled Viṣṇu [1]

Mārkaṇḍeya said Oh King ! Near Hari, Lakṣmī with two hands should be made She should be having divine beauty, white garments and hands holding the lotuses The goddess with form matchless in this world should be adorned with all kinds of ornaments [2]

Separately, the goddess with four hands should be represented on an auspicious throne On her throne a lotus with beautiful pericarps and eight petals should be made [3]

Oh prosperous one ! Oh one with long arms ! On the pericarp the goddess should be seated like Vināyaka In her right hand an auspicious lotus with a long stalk should be given touching the end of the armlet (Keyūra) Oh King ! in her left hand should be a charming pot of nectar Oh King ! similarly other two hands should be made carrying the Bilva and the conch-shell [4 6]

On her back side there should be a pair of elephants pouring two jars Similarly on the head of the goddess a charming lotus should be placed [7]

Know that (lotus) to be good luck and the conch to be highest prosperity, the Bilva to be the entire world and the lotus in the hand of Lakṣmī is the prosperity and also the nectarine essence of the water Oh best of the twice-born ! know that the pair of the elephants is the prosperity, the conch-shell and the lotus, both two Nidhis (treasures) [8-10]

Or she should be made standing on a lotus and with hands carrying the conch-shell and the lotus That greatly fortunate one, with two hands with all beautiful limbs having the lustre of the

interior of the lotus, and adorned by all the ornaments should be standing on a lotus [11]

Above and near the head two auspicious (Vidyādharaś) angels should be shown moving near the head Their right hands should be touching the head and the left hands carrying the swords They should be engaged in looking at the goddess [12-13]

Near that goddess Rājaśrī, Svarga-Lakṣmī Brāhmi-Lakṣmī and Jaya-Lakṣmī should be made They all should be beautiful and having good ornaments [14]

Oh one with great soul ! know that the lotus on which Lakṣmī stands, is Kesava, because that mother of the universe does not live without Madhusūdana even for a moment [15]

Thus ends the Adhyāya 82, entitled making the image of Lakṣmī, during the discourse between Mārkaṇḍeya and Vajra, in the third part of Sri Viṣṇudharmottara

---

## ADHYĀYA 83

Vajra said : What kind of image of Hari, assuming the form, of Viśva-rūpa should be made ? Kindly remove my this doubt, because you are called omniscient. [1]

Mārkaṇḍeya said : In the beginning, four Vaiṣṇava faces of the god should be made. Over that, again the faces of Mahēśvara should be made. They should be devoid of Iśāna face as told by me before. Above them the Brāhmī face, as said before, should be made. [2-3]

Similarly other faces of all gods and others should be made sideways and upwards. [4]

The faces of all the living creatures, having various forms according to the category and all the glances (Dṛṣṭis) as described by the great souls in Cītra-sūtra, should be shown in different parts on his head. [5]

Similarly, he should be made devouring all the various creatures with all his faces, a causing terror to the creatures. Some faces moving upwards should be made auspicious. [6-7]

According to the capacity, the hands of that god should be made. All the hands that are shown in the science of dancing (Nṛtta-śāstra) by the great personalities should be made in the case of hands of that god. Similarly other hands should be adorned by all kinds of weapons, and carrying the sacrificial staffs. Other hands should be carrying the tools of sculpture and the implements of Arts. Remaining hands should be holding the instruments of music. [8-10]

O infallible one ! another form should be made like that of Vaikuṇṭha. Oh king, there also whole of the three worlds should be shown in his limbs through paintings according to the Śāstras.

All the colours should be shown in many heads of this great souled god having many forms. [11-13]

Thus according to the ability the lord, the chief of all the worlds should be made having entire form. It is not possible to describe completely the form of the Supreme Being, then what to do for making it ? [14]

Thus ends the Adhyāya 83, entitled making the image of Viśva-rūpa, during the discourse between Mārkaṇḍeya and Vajra in the third part of Sri Viṣṇudharmottara.

---

## ADHYĀYA 84

Mārkaṇḍeya said Hear from me, who-is telling about making the image of Aīdūka By worshipping Aīdūka the worship of the whole world is accomplished [1]

Oh the best amongst Yādavas ! Oh the tormentor of the enemies ! the learned should make Bhadra-pīṭha having four pleasing steps [2]

Oh the tormentor of enemies ! Over it another Bhadrapiṭha should be made And upon that another Bhadrapiṭha like that should be made And upon that, a learned one should make the form of a Linga There too it should be adorned by the lines of the Linga. [3-4]

In the middle of it a quadrangular fixed staff should be shown Upon that thirteen floors should be made [5]

O king ! above that similarly a shining Amalasāraka should be made, and again on that a rounded staff having a sun and moon in the middle adorned by a shining disc should be made [6]

O king ! the floors and the amalasāraka which I referred to should be known as the fourteen worlds In the Linga is god Mahesvara and the circular staff is Pīṭāmaha (Brahmā) [7-8]

The quadraneular staff is god Janārdana Similarly the three Bhadrapiṭhas should be known as the three Gunas (qualities) The worlds with movable and immovable entities are said to be the receptacle of the three qualities [9-10]

Oh king ! below the worlds, but above the Linga the Lokapālas with spears in hands should be made in four directions Oh descendant of Yadu ! All the auspicious Lokapālas-Virūdhā Dhṛtarāṣṭra, Virūpākṣa and Kubera wearing the dresses like the

sun, and armours should be made having great lustre and adorned by nice ornaments [11-12]

Know that Gaṇeśvara Virūdhā is god Sakra and know that Dhṛtarāṣṭra is Yama, the conductor of the worlds, know that king of kings Kubera is the lord of all wealth-giver [13-14]

O the chief of the Yadu-family ! thus I have described the form of Aṇḍuka, said to be conducive to the well-being of the people. Men who remain engaged in the worship of Aṇḍuka get happiness in this world and at the end secure a place in the heaven [15]

Thus ends the Adhyāya 84, entitled making the image of Aṇḍuka, during the discourse between Mārkaṇḍeya and Vajra, in the third part of Sri Viṣṇudharmottara

---

## ADHYĀYA 85

Vajra said : Oh the descendant of Bhrgu ! Kindly tell me about making the image of great-souled, eternal Lord Vāsudeva. [1]

Mārkaṇḍeya said : He has one face, four hands, a placid form, colour of a cloud full of water. He is shining with the neck with auspicious lines like the conch. He is adorned by the best ear-ornaments (Kundalas) and with the best dress. He wears the armlets and the bracelets. He is adorned by the Vanamālā, the garland of wild flowers. He wears the [Kaustubha jewel on his bosom and a crown (Kirita) on the head. [2-4]

The lotus on his head should be made having charming pericarps. He is slim. He has long arms, joined fists and fingers with copper (coloured) nails. [5]

Between his two legs the earth having the form of a woman should be made. She should be tawny like nectar and with the middle (waist) beautified by Trivali (three-folds above the navel). [6]

The feet of god Janārdana should be placed in her (goddess Earth's) hands and His feet a Tāla apart. The right feet slightly coming out. [7]

The earth should be made with glances, surprised at the sight (Darśana) of the god. The god should be made with his waist-cloth extending upto the knee and the Vanamālā should be made-reaching the knees of the god, and the sacred-thread should be extended to the navel. [8-9]

In the right hand of the god a full blown lotus should be placed and in the left hand a conch having the shape of a conch should be made. [10]

On the right, goddess Gadā in the form of a woman should be made. She should be having a thin waist and beautiful



She should be lovely, adorned with all kinds of ornaments, carrying cāmaras and looking at the god of gods. On her head the right hand of the god should be placed. [11-12]

On the left Cakra with a big belly, furnished with all kinds of ornaments and with eyes wide open in dancing should be placed. In his hands he should carry cāmara and looking at the god. On his head the left hand of the god should be placed. [13-14]

Vajra said : What is the fear of that god, that he always keeps all weapons ready. He is the soul of all and is destroyer of the fear of gods, the dwellers in heaven. [15]

Mārkaṇḍeya said : Oh descendant of Yadu ! these are not really the weapons, but they are the main elements whom Lord Hari supports. [16]

O one with long arms ! know that the conch in the hand of the god is the sky. Similarly know that the disc is the wind and the club is the lustre of the lord. The lotus placed in the middle of his feet should be known as water. Oh King ! these main elements released by Hari are soon split up, so Hari supports them. [17-18]

Viṣṇu is called Supreme Soul and the souls in the body of creatures are released from him. You see before your eyes those elements (in the form of creatures) split up by all means. But, Oh delighter of Yadu ! the elements held up by the god support the world. That their power to support should be known as the power of Viṣṇu. [19-20]

Lord Saṅkarsana should be made having the form of Vāsudeva, but Oh the best of Yadus ! he should be with a white body and a blue garment. In the place of the club he should have a mace, and in the place of the disc, the plough. They should be having the human forms furnished with beauty and with thin waist.

[21-22]

Similarly Pradyumna should also have the form of Vāsudeva, but it is commended that he should be green like the Dūrvā-sprout and with white dress. In the place of the disc there should be the bow and in the place of the club there should be an arrow. Similarly the mace and the plough should be made (having the human form.) [23-24]

The same form should be given to Aniruddha but his body should have the colour of lotus-petal and should be wearing a red cloth. In the place of the disc there should be the shield and in the place of the club there should be the sword. [25-26]

The personified shield should be having the form of the disc personified and the sword should be made like a man of high rank. Oh descendant of Yadu ! the real beautiful forms of the disc etc. should be partially shown on the heads of the disc etc. [27]

O King ! On the left hand side in the proper place, the best flags of the gods should be made as per instruction. They should be mounted on the staff and having the symbols (of each god). [28]

The door-keepers of Vāsudeva should be made having yellow colour. There are two heroes, Subhadra and Vasubhadra by name, and having (Prāsa) darts in their hands. [29]

Āsādha and Yajñatāra should be the door-keepers of Saṁkarsana. The heroes are of blue colour and they carry clubs. [30]

The door-keepers of Pradyumna are Jaya and Vijaya. Oh fortunate one ! they both are of white colour and they carry swords in their hands. [31]

The chief of gods Āmoda and Pramoda having great strength and prowess should be known as the door-keeper of Aniruddha. Oh fortunate one ! Both of them are of red colour, and carry (Śakti) spears. They should be made having good figures and wearing all ornaments. They should be having two hands with forefingers raised. Oh one with having long arms ! their glance should be directed towards the door. [32-34]

Oh descendant of Yadu ! Know that Subhadra is Sakra, Vasubhadra is (Hutāsana) Fire-god, and know that Āsāḍha is Yama, the chief of gods [35]

Know that Yaynatāra is the unrepachable god Virūpākṣa and Jaya is Varuna, the great lord of waters [36]

O delighter of Yadu ! know that Vijaya is Pavana, the Wind-god, Āmoda is Dhanada (Kubera) the wealth giver, and Pramoda is Śiva Himself [37]

They all should be made having bodies as described by Dīnganāga That is why they are described again like that by the great-souled (Sages) [38]

Oh King ! There are eight attendants of gods (Deva-ganas) I tell about them Listen [39]

It is said that Animā and Laghimā the powers of becoming as small as atom and the power of assuming excessive lightness at will, are the door-keepers of Vāsudeva Mahimā, the power of increasing size at will and Prāpti, the power of obtaining anything at will, are the door-keepers of Saṁkarsana [40]

Prākāmya, irresistible will and Iśitva, (mastery) are (the door-keepers) of Pradyumna Know that Āmoda is Vasitva, the power of control and know that Pramoda to whom all people pay obeisances, is Kāmāvasāyitā, the power of suppressing passions [41]

Thus I have told you about making the image of Catur-mūrti, the four-formed God But the god called Vaikunṭha should be made having one form [42]

lion The face on the back-side which is called prosperity (Aisvarya) should be (Raudra) terrible Other features of the four faces should be made as described. [43-45]

O delighter of Yadus ! Or Tārksya (Garuda) should be made four-armed Similarly Oh the knower of religion ! Garuda should be made with folded hands in the Anjali pose On his back he (Catur-mukha lord) is seated at-ease, and in his hand there is a lotus On the wings of Tārksya (Garuda) Gadā and Cakra should be seated, Or Śrī (Lakṣmī) sitting on the seat of Tārksya or she should be seated on the left lap (of Viṣṇu) [46-48]

Or the God seated on the body of Śeṣa serpent should be made charming The face of the lord, thus made and covered by hoods should be seen with difficulty The four hands of the Lord sitting on the hood of Śeṣa should be empty, but Cakra and Gadā with human bodies should be made near him (the lord) or Lakṣmī should be seated on the body of that Śeṣa [49-50]

Or Lord Hari should be made lying on the bedstead in form of Śeṣa When lightning appeared, He is as described by me [51]

The forms of Nṛsiṃha, Varāha, and Kapila, Viśvarūpa, Hayagrīva and Padmanābha, Brahmā, Rudra and Rāma were described by high-souled Puṣkara [52-53]

The god Vāmana should be made, having flabby limbs with narrow joints He should be carrying the staff, and ready for study He should be made as dark as Dūrvā (grass) and wearing the skin of black-antelope (54)

Similarly Trī-Vikrama should be made, having the colour of the water laden cloud [55]

He should be carrying the staff and the noose, and with the conch-shell on his lips The conch, disc, club and lotus should be made having their (natural) own forms [56]

They should not be made having the human body The rest should be as aforesaid The god should be having one raised face and expanded eyes [57]

The forms of Nara and Nārāyaṇa and that of Kṛṣṇa with Hari and the son of Varuṇa was described to you before Hamsa, Matsya and Kūrma should be made in their own forms

But Janārdana, the god of gods should be made as a horned fish [58-59]

And similarly he should be made as a female (Mohini) form adorned by all ornaments, and in her hand a pot of nectar should be made (on the extreme right hand side) and giving large gifts [60]

And Prthu should be made as a king having the characteristics of a sovereign king (Cakravartī) Bhārgava Rāma (ie Paraśurāma) should be made difficult to look at on account of his circles of matted locks [61]

He should be wearing the skin of black-antelope, and in his hand an axe should be made Rāma, the son of Dasaratha should be made having the characteristics of a king [62]

Bharata, Lakṣmana and Satrugṇa of great renowned should be all made similar (to Rāma), but devoid of crowns [63]

Vālmīki should be made fair, and almost hidden from the sight on account of circles of matted locks He is engaged in penance, calm and neither thin nor fat [64]

Dattātreya should be made completely like Vālmīki

Vyāsa is dark, calm, and lean His matted hair is yellow. On his sides sit his four disciples Sumantu, Jaimini, Paila, and Vaiśampāyana [65 66]

Yudhiṣṭhira should be marked with all the characteristics of a king. Vṛkodara (Bhīma) as hungry as a wolf should be made, devoid of beard and moustache, having very massive limbs and a thin waist He should have bent glance and contracted eyebrows and a club (in hand) [67]

Arjuna should be made dark as Dūrvā (grass) and wearing a crown (Kīrīṭa) and red armlets (Angada) He should be beautiful, adorned by all ornaments and carrying arrows and a bow [68]

Nakula and Sahadeva both should be made like two Asvinas. They should be holding swords and the shields, and not having medicinal plants in their hands [69]

Kṛṣṇā (Draupadī) should be made very beautiful and having the complexion of the blue lotus leaf [70]

But Devakī should be made as fair as the white lotus leaf

Similarly Yasodā should be having the colour of Madhūka flower The goddess, Ekānamsā who is a part of Supreme Being should be made having a lotus in her hand and standing between (Bala) Rāma and Kṛṣṇa, her left hand resting on her waist [71-72]

Bala (Rāma) should be made white, and wearing deep blue garments and Kundalas (ear-rings) He should have eyes bent and oblique due to drinking wine He should be carrying the plough-share and the pestle in his hands [73]

Kṛṣṇa should be made having the colour of blue-lotus-petal, and carrying the disc in his hand Similarly Rukminī should be made dark and carrying a blue lotus [74]

Satyabhāmā should be made beautiful and seated on Garuda And other goddesses should be made very beautiful and charming [75]

Pradyumna should be made good-looking and carrying a bow and arrow 6 king ! He should be as dark as the sprout of Dūrvā (grass), wearing white garments He is full of intoxication, Lord Aniruddha should be made carrying a sword and a shield

Sāmba should be made beautiful and particularly carrying a club in his hand [76-77]

Both Sāmba and Aniruddha should be made lotus-coloured and wearing red garments. On their sides should be placed two female attendants with swords in their hands [78]

Yuyudhāna should be tall and carrying a bow and arrows in his hand. He should be resembling the colour, the interior of the blue (Utpala) lotus, and having long arms and beautiful eyes [79]

6 King ! It is not possible to narrate in details, the manifestations of Viṣṇu, the god of gods. So these manifestations should be represented by the learned, after knowing their functions and consulting the Sāstras [80]

Thus ends the Adhyāya 85, entitled making the images of gods etc., during the discourse between Mārkaṇḍeya and Vajra, in the third part of *Srī Viṣṇudharmottara*

Here ends the *Pratimā Laksanam*

---

## ADHYĀYA : 86

Vajra said : 6 the best of Dvija (Brahmin) ! You have explained the auspicious characteristics of images (Pratimās). 6 one having limitless lustre ! Kindly tell (us) very well about the characteristics of the Temples. [1]

Mārkaṇḍeya said : The Characteristics of the temples is described on the bases of Hasta measure (taking the length of a hand as a unit). The measurement in terms of Hasta is shown in relation to the measurement of the whole construction (Saṁsthāna) [2]

I tell you about that in detail. Hear from me the characteristics of the temple which is the best and which increases the victory and health. [3]

The site platform (Jagati) should be divided according to the portion of the temple. The jagati should consist of three stages (Bhūmikās) of equal height. The length of each stage should be made half of its height. The stage (Bhūmikā) one after the other should have the shape of the Bhadrapiṭha-Shape [4-5]

Kaṣi (the hip or the waist) of the temple should be made, half of the (height of the) temple, similarly the kūṣa (the portion of the temple above the Kaṣi). The width of the flight of the steps should be one-eighth of (the measurement of) the bottom of the Kaṣi. [6]

For each Bhūmikā (stage) steps should be of equal number. The Kūṣa (portion above the kaṣi) should be divided into three parts, each having an auspicious Āmalasākṛa. [7]

6 King ! The Kūṣa should be quadrilateral and gradually elevating. The (three parts) Vicchedas (compartments) should be decorated with a row of lions. [8]



The height of the door should be one-eighth above the deity  
The height of the door should be made twice that of the width [9]

On it an elevated Candrasālā (terrace) beautifying the door should be made O king ! On the first viccheda (part) of the Kūṣa decorated by auspicious Āmalasāraka, the temple should be made with four bent (Bhagna) or unbent (na Bhagna) doors [10-11]

Similarly in the other two vicchedas of Kūṣa the temple should be done The temple should be surrounded by four separate Candrasālās on the four doors This charming temple is celebrated as Himavān [12]

The temple having a Kūṣa with two chedas is called Mālyavān and the temple with only one Kūṣa is called Sṛṅgavān [13]

The śṛṅgavān temple having only one door is called Āgāra  
Āgāra temple having two girdles (Mekhalās) is called Bhavana [14]

The temple having one Mekhalā is called Gṛha The śṛṅgavan temple having two Mekhalās is called Nisadha [15]

The same temple having only one Mekhalā becomes Nīla  
The Mālyavān temple having two Mekhalās is called Sveta The same having one Mekhalā becomes Vindhya [16]

6 King ! the temples of all the gods except the varieties of Āgāra should be made facing any auspicious direction, but the varieties of Āgāra type should be facing only East and the west directions [17-18]

6 King ! In these (Āgāra) Temples the installation of only (Śiva) Linga is praised The Temples having one Mekhalā or two Mekhalās mentioned above have divisions like Jagati and Kati  
6 King ! as before the third division Kūṣa should be made [19-20]

The Valabhi Temple built in the shape of Valabhi is beautiful It is facing all the four directions Its length is thrice its width- It has one Mekhalā and on both the sides of the Valabhi temple

there is a candraśālā. In the temple three Āmalasārakas should be made. In it one part is Mekhalā and the other part is kaṭi, and the third part is valabhī, which are all famous. [21-23]

The extent of Mekhalā should be made one-eighth part of the temple. The width of the Sopāna (Step) should be two eights (one-fourth) of the Kaṭi. In it a high gate should be made in one direction only, but this temple called Valabhī may be facing any direction according to the sweet will. [24-25]

In this temple the images of Brahmā, Viṣṇu and Maheśvara should be installed, or Ekānamśā should be installed between (Bala) Rāma and kṛṣṇa or Trilocana (three-eyed Sankara) between Ganesa and Skanda or Janārdana or Tvaṣṭā should be made between the Sun and the Moon. [26-27]

In one temple Durgā, adorned with many hands should be made; or there Lakṣmī the ornament of three worlds should be made. [28]

Or, 6 King ! there in the temple, Viṣṇu lying on the hood (of Śeṣa) should be made or the god of gods Janārdana, with his quadruple manifestations should be made. Or Dhaneśvara (Kubera) should be installed accompanied by Śakra (Indra), Kīṇāśa (Yama) and Varuna.

Other gods who are not mentioned by me, should not be made. [29-30]

The temple having four doors, each one facing one direction, is called Vṛddhida. It is praised by Brahmā. [31]

Or there the lord of worlds Hari, with his quadruple manifestations should be made.

6 King ! The auspicious temple, where there are three doors reflecting three Gunas, or where three doors thrice in height (tri-Guna) are put, is called Triguna. [32-33]

Its each door is facing one direction, and it is with the walls of Garbhagrha There in the temple Brahmā, Viṣṇu and Rudra should be seated [34]

Or, O the best of kings ! Āditya, Viṣṇu, Sun and Moon separately or Gaṇeśa, Rudra and Skanda should be seated in the temple [35]

6 King ! The temple having no Valabhi on the sides is called Valabhi, but the temple having sides is called Sikhara [36]

The temple having no Valabhi on the sides becomes Vṛtūda and Kāmada temples

The Triguna temple having no Valabhi on the sides becomes Nṛgrha (That having three doors and without Valabhi on sides becomes Nṛgrha-the house of men ) [37]

The temple, whose main door under the Valabhi in a direction is made wide, is called Turaga The temple is desirable for Sukra and Śani (Retas and Manda) [38]

It should be made for Vināyaka and Bhadrakālī also 6 King ! or it should be made for Skanda and Lakṣmī [39]

Or it should be for Nāgas and Pramathas It is not recommended for any other god

The Turaga temple, whose main door in a direction is widened and circular is called Kunjara [40]

It is recommended for the gods who are mentioned above in Turaga temple 6 one having a great fortune ! Moreover it should be made for Sakra (Indra) It is not recommended for other gods. [41]

The temple which has desired number of Garbhagrhas under Valabhi is well-known as Yathesta It has desired length It has one door and the door is of desired measurement [42]

6 King ! The same (Yathesṭa) having one Garbhagrha is called Viśāla 6 king ! in this Yathesṭa and Viśāla, Mātaraś (Mother-goddesses) should be made 6 the tiger among kings ! Grahas (Planets) or Nakṣatras (Constellations) should be installed. [43-44]

Or 6 King ! Ādityas, Vasus, Rudras, Viśvedevās, Marut-Ganas, Bhṛguś, Angiraś, Sādhyas, or two gods Aśvinaś, or eight Dik-pālaś or five Mahā-Bhūtaś (elements) theſe gods ſhould be installed in the two temples (viz Yathesṭa and Viśāla) [45-46]

When Valabhi is extended on the back of {Mālyavān, it is called Bhadra which ſhould be made for Bhadrakālī, [47]

When Valabhi is extended obliquely on the back of the Mālyavān, it is called Dvāraśāla The temple is very dear to the learned [48]

When the temple called Sveta is made like Bhadra it is called Subhadra But when Saumya is made like Dvāraśālā (Dvārapāla) it becomes Gandhamādana [49]

The Saumya and Subhadra are praised by all of them

A temple, having eight-sided Trīkūṭa (Summit), with three compartments and auspicious Āmalasāraś, and having eight-sided jagatī, with one Mekhalā and eight Garbhagrhaś, with eight doors in eight directions, it is called Kamala [50-52]

There the eight Lokapālaś ſhould be made in their reſpective directions

Or there eight Grahaś ommiting Ketu ſhould be made [53]

6 King ! there the Grahaśṭaka ſhould be made in this ſequence, Sūrya, Śukra, Kuja (Maṅgala) Rāhu, Saura (Sanī), Candra, Budha and Guru [54]

They represent eight aſpects, Bhū, Jala, Ākāśa, Vahnī, Indu, Arka, Dikṣitārka (one conſecrated for ſacrifice) and Marut

Or Jagad-guru (Guru of the Worlds) Mahādeva ſhould be made there Or Vāśudeva in his eightfold manifeſtation in creating and cauſing to go

Or in this temple Hari should be made in this way Kesava in his fourfold manifestation should be installed there in four doors in four directions And 6 best among the men<sup>1</sup> in four intermediate directions (Konas) beginning with Isāna (North-east etc Gods Asvasīrsa Varāha, Narasimha and Trivikrama should be installed [55-56]

In Arunodaya temple the jagati (Plinth) is raised without the shape of a Bhadrapiṭha, Turaga type of temple where front part without Valabhi should be made But Arunodaya temple is praise-worthy for all the gods It should be made facing the East and the west directions, it should not face anyother direction [57-59]

When this same (Arunodaya) temple is made very long, it is called Gūha When two small temples are attached to the Aruna temple facing the north and south directions and when similarly jagatis are covered with Valabhicchandaka (top-rooms) facing each other and the faces of the saubha (? sauma) doors are covered by beautiful jālakas The temple is called Garuda, which is very attractive [59-61]

In that temple the installation of Āditya is praised In the two side temples Danda and Pingalaka, or Sukra and Sanī should be made, or great king Kesava and Sankara should be made [62-63]

Or, a learned man should make in the Gāruda temple the Moon and in the side temples Sīśira and Ambupa (Varuna) should be made Or in the Gāruda Temple Kāmadeva should be made and in the two side temples two Vanamālinas should be made [64-65]

Or a learned should make the king of gods-Devarād (Indra) in the temple, and in its two side temples two Vanamālinas should be made [66]

Or in the Gāruda temple Yama should be installed and in its two side temples Mrtyu and kāla should be seated [67]

Or in the Gāruda temple Varuna should be installed, and in the two side temples Gangā and Kālindī should be made. [68]

Or in the Gāruda temple the lord of wealth—Dhanādhyaksa (Kubera) should be installed and in its two side temples Śankha and Padma (conch-shell and lotus) should be placed. (69)

Or in the Gāruda temple Brahmā should be installed and in its two side temples Keśava and Īśvara should be made. [70]

Or in the Gāruda temple Mahādeva should be installed, and in its two side temples Viṣṇu and Pītāmaha should be made, or 6 delighter of Yadu ! Vināyaka and Kumāra (Kārtikeya) should be made, or beautiful Virabhadra and Nandī should be made. [71-72]

Or in the Gāruda temple Garuda should be installed and in its two side temples Kaśyapa and Vinatā should be made. [73]

Or in the Gāruda temple Vāsudeva should be seated and in its two side temples Rudra and Pītāmaha should be made. Or O Great king ! Moon and Sun or Varuna and Anila, Laksmī and Kāla-rātri or Anala and Anila, should be made or O great King ! Tārksya (Garuda) and Ananta (Śeṣa) or Garuda and Aruna should be made. [74-76]

Or 6 the lord of the earth ' in the Gāruda temple Dharma should be made, and in its two side temples Artha and Kāma should be installed. [77]

A temple of the god should be made, having the shape of the Linga and having three Mekhalās. 6 the best of men ! in this world it is called Sarva. When it has two Mekhalās it is called Trailokya, and when it has one Mekhalā it is called Linga. When it has Kūṭa and Valabhī it is known as Sarvakūṭa. [78-79]

When the Trailokya temple has valabhī it should be known as Brahmāṇḍa, when the Linga temple is having valabhī it is called Sāra. [80]

These (above mentioned) six, Śarva and others, should be made facing East and West directions. A learned man should always install Liṅga in these temples. [81]

When the temple named Valabhi is quadrilateral without Mekhalā, door and the wall in the front and having pillars, it is called Caturasra. It should be made beautiful.

Śakra with the groups of gods, or Yama with Pitr̥s, or Mahākālā with Mātr̥s or Nṛsimha and goddess Durgā should be installed in that. 6 king ! The Nakṣatras (constellations), the Moon, the Sun, planets or Vāsukī with serpents should be made in it. [82-85]

6 King ! when it (caturasra) has a Mekhalā, it is called Samekhalā. When it has two Mekhalās it is called Dvimekhalā and if it has three Mekhalās, 6 the lord of the earth ! it is called Mekhalādhya.

All the gods mentioned above and praised by all should be made sabhāsthās (seated in the assembly). 6 the best among men, those who are not mentioned also should be made Sabhāsthās (as courtiers) [86-88]

6 lord of the earth ! When these Caturasra and the following types of temples are with doors, they are known as Dhisnya, Salya, Budha and Indu. O King one desiring prosperity should make these temples and install any deity that one desires. [89]

When they are without Bhitti (walls) and having jāla (Lattice) on four sides, they are called Chandra, Megha, Ambuda and Ākāśa. (Moon, rain, cloud and the sky.) [90]

Caturasra temple having one storey and the shape of a house, is known as Gṛha. Lakṣmī should be installed there. [91]

For all gods, the same (Gṛha temple) should be made having many storeys according to one's desire 6 best of Kings ! that desired temple is called Bahubhūmika. [92]

The temple having twelve storeys and six sides, is called Meru. It should be made with four doors for all the three gods. [93]

All the temples having eleven storeys are called Śuktimān. When it has ten storeys it is called Mandara. [94]

That with Nine storeys is known as Pāriyātra, and that with eight storeys is wellknown as Alaka [95]

That with seven storeys is Vimāna and that with six storeys is called Nandana. By five storeys it becomes Pañca-bhauma and that with four storeys is Catuskaka. [96]

That with three storeys becomes Tribhūmi and that with two storeys is called Dvibhūmika, and that with one storey is called Eka-bhūmika. [97]

The temple round in shape and having one Mekhalā round is called Samudga. When the same (Samudga) has the shape of Bhadrapiṭha and four sided Mekhalā and eight compartments with Āmalasārakas are made, the round temple is known as Nandi temple. [98-99]

The temple having a long great axis is called Guhārāja. There Bhadrakālī or Viṣṇu lying on the bed (of Śeṣa) should be installed. [100]

The Vṛtta temple (circular in shape) having one śikhara (Summit) and two Mekhalās is called Vṛsa, one having the shape of a Hamsa is (called) Hamsa and having the shape of a Ghaṭa is called Ghaṭa. [101]

The temple having the shape of a Siṁha is called a Siṁha temple and one having the shape of a Mandapa is called Mandapa. 6 the lord of the earth, there are temples (called) Dvādaśāsri, Sadaśri and Aṣṭāsri. (They are having twelve-sides, six-sides and eight sides respectively). [102]



I have described the temples similarly I have described their Āśrayas (bases) and sthitis (Positions)

The temple having five Sīkharas, four Mandapas and four doors is known as Kailāsa And one with three Mekhalās and three Kūṭas, is well known as Triākūṭa [103-104]

The temple with one Sṛṅga four Mandapas and four doors is traditionally known as Saumya The temple is very charming

6 King, there is a temple named Rājarāja It is praised as the chief temple It has one jagati which is knee-high and equal to one third of the temple similarly the kati is also one third Its sīkhara is equipped with kuhara and decorated with various figures It has one Mandapa (pavilion) Four small temples are placed at the intermediate directions which are joined on the ground through four Mandapas out of which two are at the base of the stair-case (sopāna)

And in Rājarāja temple if the four Mandapas are devoid of sīkharas and are at the base of the stair-case and if they are accompanied by eight Deva-grhas (small temples) it is called Dharanīdhara temple [106-110]

When Mandapas have Sīkharas-the same is called Vīmāna

The temple with four intermediate temples placed in between the Mandapas the Mandapas equipped with Sīkharas and Mañ-jari in the middle, is called Sura rāt due to nine Sīkharas (Viz- four of the temples four of the Mandapas and one of the main temple) [111-112]

The temple facing all the directions either square or circular in shape and having raised Mekhalās with many vāṭayanas (win-dows) many jāla gavāksas (lattice windows) is called Ānanda [113]

The temple in which Āmalasātakas are in continuous raising order from the surface of the Mekhalā and in which there are many doors and which has neither muṇḍa nor skull shaped nor śulāgra (pointed like a sula) sīkhara is called Susamah [114-115]

When it has got a number of Munḍa the same is called Prabhanjanah when it has got four Mandapas it is praised as Viśva-Karmā. [116]

The temple having four Mandapas like that of Susama type, is well known as Mahā Sumana. [117]

When the temple has the shape of a Chatra (umbrella) it is called Chatraḥ or Mrdangah, when the temple has the shape of a Mrdaṅga; when the dome like a reversed Mrdanga it is called Vajra. [118]

6 King ! The temple in which there is one kaṭi and similarly one jagati with five Śikhara in a row and five doors, is called Lokapāla. It is praised in Lokpālas. Similarly they praise another type of temple which belongs to Mahā-bhūtagana [119-120]

That temple has circular kaṭi and similarly circular Mekhalā, it is having eight sided Śikhara, and adorned with eight doors. It is well known as Dīg-bandha temple. It is for all gods.

The temple equipped with a door (? having pitcher like form) going to a mandapa having the same measurement as that of jagati, and one Śikhara, it is called Sāmānyah or ordinary.

The temple, which has a Mandapa with lattice and a Guhā on its back portion, and which has no Mekhalā is called Suguhah. When the same has Triguna shape it is called Trigunah. [121-124]

When the Himavān temple has many pillars it becomes Nandaka.

A temple having pillars and Valabhi but void of walls is called Ākāśani. There Ākāśa should be imagined.

A temple having sixteen sides is called Sodaśāsri (having sixteen-sided). [125-126]

A beautiful temple having the shape of a Śaṅkha (conch-shell) is called Śaṅkha. And O king ! the temple having a lotus like śikhara is called Vaijayanta. [127]

The temple having a Śikhara without (sides) corners is called Ambuda. The śikharas equipped with kuharas is called Mangala. [128]

Thus I have briefly described one hundred types of temples. When the direction is not mentioned they may be made facing any direction, according to the sweet-will. [129]

When the god is not mentioned, all gods can be installed (placed) in the temple. Especially in all, Viṣnudevas should be placed. [130]

The moon and the sun should not be (placed) installed together in one place. When the sun is with moon, it vanishes. It brings decay. (131).

The sun and the lord of a night (moon) should be made, facing quite opposite directions. They should face east and west directions and not facing north and south. [132]

When the two are facing east and west, 6 the knower of the religion, the moon becomes venerable (poojyah). It is auspicious. [133]

Similarly in one and the same temple two planets or Skanda and Vināyaka (Kārtikeya and Ganapati) should not be installed, Nāga and Garuda and Antaka (Yama) and Maheśwara should not be installed. [134]

Similarly Mahākāla and Nṛsiṃha, Raktā and Śuṣkā, Brahman and Rudra should not be installed in the same Veśma (apartment). Kṛatānta (Yama) or Bhadrakālī should not be installed with Kāmadeva. [135]

Similarly Varuna and Anala (Agni) should not be installed together.

Similarly when for the sake of one god, other two are worshipped. [136]

They may be placed together when there is the necessity for the religious rites of Lord Viṣnu. [137]

## ADHYĀYA 87

Mārkaṇḍeya said

Now I shall tell you about the temple named Sarvatobhadra,  
(All-auspicious)

There four souled (aspects) Hari should be made the lord of  
jagati [1]

There one beautiful four-sided jagati should be constructed.  
Or that twenty four Garbhagrhas should be constructed [2]

On the back-side, and higher than Jagati a compound wall  
should be built The whole construction should be given the shape  
of Mekhalā [3]

6 great King ! there should be only twenty four temples On  
four sides, of the Mekhalā a flight of steps should be placed [4]

The steps which are one-third of the length of the Mekhalā  
are praised 6 king, on the top of Mekhalā and at each of the  
two-sides of the flight of steps, three temples should be placed-  
(Of these three temples) the first is Garbha-mandira, which is  
without Mekhalā, in the middle of the two is a temple which is  
of Sāmānya type and without Mandapa [5-6]

On its sides two temples named Himavat should be built  
having no Mekhalā At the base of the steps two beautiful temples  
should be made on two sides [7]

These temples having no Mandapa-pavilion are called *Devakula*  
*Damśtrās* in the Sāmānya type Similarly at the corner, on the  
top of jagati a Deva-kula type temple should be placed [8]

Here the middle temple should be made having Mandapa.  
Here four Mandapas with Sikharas should be erected [9]

In the corners of the central temple and at the junctions of the Mandapas pairs of temples should be placed. [10]

Here each Mandapa should be adorned with three doors. At the fourth door there should be Deva-garbha-grha. [11]

The gate-ways of the Mandapas should be decorated with stambhas (pillars). The number of the Śikhara in this temple should be nine. [12]

Of these eight are equal in height and the ninth is higher; there the middle śikhara should be made having no śikhara (pointed pinnacle). [13]

It should be decorated with various figures. It should not be skull-shaped nor pointed like a śūla. There the remaining eight śikharas should have kuharas. [14]

And O king they (kuharas) should be adorned with Jāla and Gavākṣa. 6 King ! everywhere the śikharas should be made having auspicious Āmalasārakas, Cakras, Patākās and Dhvajās. This very lofty temple looks as if it were crowned with the sky. [15-16]

Now learn the installation of gods in this temple one by one. 6 King ! here Vāsudeva should be made facing east direction. Or it should be made facing the west. It should not be made facing other directions. 6 King ! here the direction for Vāsudeva should be east. [17-18]

According to that the other direction should be imagined. Lord Saṃkarsana (Balarāma) should be made facing south [19]

Thereafter Pradyumna should be made facing west direction. 6 King ! Aniruddha is made to face the north direction. [20]

I have spoken about the Gṛhas at the juncture (Sandhis) of the Mandapa which I described, facing different directions, Lakṣmī should be installed on the right hand side of the first Mandapa. [21]

On the left hand side of the right hand side Nidrā and on the right hand side Kāla-rātri (should be placed). On the west

of the right hand side Siddhi and on its right hand side Rati (should be placed) [22]

On the north of left hand side Kīrti and on the south Saraswati (should be installed) Similarly on the left hand side of the east Puṣṭi should be installed [23]

In the Aśānya North-east corner etc in the corner temples respectively Asvasīrsa, Varāha, Narasimha and Trivikrama should be installed [24]

In small temples and in Bandhakas Mekhalā should be made 6 the best of the learned men, there are to be placed twenty four deities [25]

6 Yādava ' they are Tārksya, Sankha, similarly Padma, Cakra and Lāṅgala (a plough), Musala, Ananta and Gadā, similarly Tāla, Trisūla and Sāranga, Sara and Makara Parasu Mudgara and Carma and 6 king Pāsa, Paṭṭisa, Nandaka and Sakti and similarly Muṣṭi, Vajra, Kaustubha and 6 Yādava, similarly Vanamālā [26-28]

Now hear from me the installation of gods in the Dvāmstrāḥ Devagrhas 6 King ! as before Indra and Agni should be installed on the right hand side [29]

Yama and Nirrti should be placed in South-west direction And in West Varuna and Anila and in the North Dhanesvara and Mahesvara should be installed [30]

Or in Damsṭrā-Devagrha eight planets Grahāṣṭaka should be installed There Āditya and Sukra should be placed in the east, Maṅgala and Rāhu (Kujā-surau) should be placed in the west [31]

Similarly 6 king, Śanaīscara (Saturn) and the moon (Sāśāṅka) should be installed in the west, Chandraputra and Brāhaspati should be installed in the North [32]

6 King ! on the Damsṭrā-Devagrha of Vāsudeva two door-keepers of Vāsudeva should be made Their names are Subhadra and Vasubhadra, and they are the masters of all the three worlds

The door-keepers of Saṁkarsana should be installed. Their names are Āsādha and Yajñatāra. [33-34]

Jaya and Vijaya should be made the door-keepers of Pradyumna, and 6 King Āmoda and Pramoda should be made the door-keepers of Aniruddha. [35]

In the Dvaṁśtrā-Devakula temple the gods mentioned before should be installed. There the installation of the door-keepers is praised in many ways. [36]

They themselves should be known as the Dikpālas and similarly Grahās. Now you listen one by one the names of the gods on the Jagati-Bandha (band). [37]

Gāyatri, four Vedas, Vaisnavi and Aparājita; Mṛtyu, Kāla, Yama, Danda, Kavaca and śara; Sāmkhya, Yoga, Pañca-rātra, Jñāna, Pāśupata, Vyāsa, Vālmiki, Mārkaṇḍa, and then Mahābhūta one after the other. [38-39]

In this kind of temple there should be a vast courtyard, beautified with natural celestial waters properly banked. [40]

Then a learned man should make four gate-keepers. The temple named Dwāraśālā is having a proper form and beautiful. [41]

Or the compound-wall (Prākāras), beautiful Garbha-guhās (inner-caves) should be made in a row. In these different incarnations of Viṣṇu having boundless splendour should be placed. [42]

6 the best of Kings ! alternatively all multitudes of gods may be installed in proper order. 6 King ! one who builds this type of temple and worships all gods according to proper rite is called a cakravartī in all the millenniums beginning with Dvāpara (i.e. Dvāpara, Tretā and Kali yuga). [43-44]

One who builds the surroundings of the temple lives in heaven as long as he wishes and then one gets sāyujya with god of gods Viṣṇu. [45]

One who worships all the gods with the paraphernalia of Gandha, Mālya, Namaskāra, Dhūpa, Dīpa and Anna in this temple even once, one gets the benefit of making the gift of all the three worlds in charity Undoubtedly one gets whatever he desires [46-47]

As soon as this very beautiful temple with its Cakra and Patākā comes in sight all the troubles disappear [48]

6 King ! 6 Yādava, if a man enters the temple his diseases unnatural death and itayas (calamities)-(such as Ativrsti etc ) undoubtedly disappear [49]

6 King ! Akāla Mṛtyu (untimely death) Yoginis, Yaksas Rāksasas, Pretās or Vināyakās have no power on them [50]

Here in this temple all the principal sāttvatas (followers of Viṣṇu) attain sāyujya (communion) with Viṣṇu All the male and female servants who live here go to heaven and remain there till the time of fourteen Indras

6 King ! the king for whom this temple is built, also dwells in Indraloka and enjoys happiness for a long time Any one who offers a Patākā has his sins swept away All his Itayas-Calamities subside and he attains excellent Punya (merit) One who completes such a temple becomes a cakravartī in the next birth [51-54]

6 the lord of the world ! all the gods are installed with rituals in the temple as described by me [55]

The water of the place always becomes a Tīrtha (sacred place)

When one goes there on a pilgrimage (Yātrā) or when a dramatic performance-yātrā is given at that sacred place, all the gods with Indra, the maker of Somarasa (Savāsavās), great omniscient sages and ancient Rājarsis (Sainly kings) with their followers, who reside in heaven and whose valour like Indra, Gandharvās, Apasarasa and the benevolent Bhūta-gaṇās personally



come to witness the great festival of gods. The man who witnesses the festival undoubtedly attains Kalyāṇa (Prosperity). [56-59]

The king, or his representatives or officers should never do any damage to the deva-dravya (the property of the god) [60]

If he does so, he falls into terrible hells along with his sons, cattle and relatives and in this world he undoubtedly loses his position. [61]

By the grace of the god of gods, the devotees of the temple prosper with their cattle, and hoards of wealth. [62]

O the moon among kings ! one should see this temple of the lord of three worlds, though it may be built by other person. By seeing it a man becomes free from all the sins and gathers Punya (merit). [63]

Thus ends the Adhyāya 87 entitled 'the characteristics of Sarvatobhadra Temple, in the discourse between Mārkaṇḍeya and Vajra, in the third part of Śrī Viṣṇudharmottara.

---

Mārkaṇḍeya said :

Now I shall tell you the general characteristics of a temple. A temple should be made as to have 64 padas. (equal parts). [1]

The door put in the middle of the temple, facing the direction evenly (Sama), is praised. The height of door is double its width. [2]

The column of all the temples (Gṛha-stambha) should be made from wood of pure tree. The door should be made of the wood of trees known as Deva-kula (family of five trees of paradise-Vir. Mandāra, Pārijāta, Santāna, Kalpa and Haricandana). The wood should not be perforated, should not exude moisture and should not be hollow. [3]

The door bent in the middle like the middle of the vajra should be carefully avoided with great efforts. It should be made auspicious and accompanied with figures on it. [4]

The image with the pedestal should be less by one eighth of the door. There the image should occupy two parts and the pedestal one part. [5]

6 one with big hands ! The learned should make the kati one eighth less than the door. The Vasudhā i.e. Jagati (platform) should be one third of the temple, so also the kaṣi and Mañjari. The praiseworthy Garbha-dvāra (the door of inner shrine) should be less by one fourth of the measurement of the main door. [6-7]

A learned man should make the wall of Garbha less by one-eighth of the wall of the temple. When it is one fourth of the height of the temple it is praised. [8]

6 King ! the Vasudhā-saṅcāra (the jagati passage) should be as a part of kaṭi. The sopāna, the flight of steps should be in the middle and less by one-eighth (of the passage) [9]

Always the number of the steps should be even. Similarly they should not be made very narrow nor very wide [10]

6 King ! The steps should be made (in such a way) that they may have less width as they rise higher from the base. On two-sides they (the flight of the steps) should be decorated with lions [11]

The temple should not be Munda (skull-shaped) or should not be pointed like a śūla nor bent (Ānata), but it should be made even beautiful and having auspicious figures [12]

The pinnacle (Śrṅga) should be white-washed with lime (Sudhā) and the ornamentations on its kaṭi (Waist part) should be variegated. At each side of the (main) doors there should be pratihāras (door-keepers), as in the case of Garbha-gṛha doors [13]

The pedestal of the god (image) should be made in the middle of the Garbha-gṛha. It should be like the Bhadrapiṭha beautiful, polished and void of indentations (ghāta vivarjitam) [14]

The image installed in this kind of temple always brings auspiciousness. 6 bravest of men, therefore one should always think to install the god with great efforts [15]

Thus ends the Adhyāya 88 entitled the characteristics of a common temple (Sāmānya Prāsāda laksanam) in the discourse between Mārkaṇḍeya and Vajra in the third part of Śrī Viṣṇudharmottara

---

## ADHYĀYA 89

Mārkaṇḍeya said

6 the knower of the religion-Dharmajña, now learn the entry in the forest (vana-praveśa) from me, who is telling it

On an auspicious day, constellation Nakṣtra and time Muhūrta-after worshipping, the sthapatī (architect) follows an astrologer-Daivajña and enters a forest. There he should examine the trees and decide which are to be cut and which should not be cut [1-2]

6 King ! He should avoid the trees which are hollows, entwined with creepers, eaten by worms, and similarly touched by fire and broken by wind [3]

Similarly the trees broken by elephants, which have the nests of birds in them, which are near Tāpasas-ascetics, which are watered with Ghaṭa-jars and the abodes of Sattvās-living things should be avoided. The trees which are crooked or dwarfish, which have many veins, which are dried up at the top and which have become old in their infancy should not be selected [4-5]

6 great King ! similarly the trees growing in a cemetery-Smaśāna, a temple, an ant-hill, lonely trees of a garden, trees indicating boundaries and trees growing on a road should be avoided with great care. Similarly Palāśa (Butea Frondosa), Kovidāra, Sālmali (Silk-cotton tree), Pippala (holy fig-tree), Vata (banyan-tree), Āmra (the mango tree), Puspaka, Kapittha (wood-apple), Vibhitaka (Terminalia Belerica), Vetasa (the cane) and the trees under which one takes rest, should be avoided [6-8]

Nandana, Syandana (Dalbergia Ougeinensis), Sāla (Shorea robusta), Simśapa (Dalbergia Sissoo), Khadira (Acacia Pennata), Dhava (Anogeissus Latifolia), Kimsuka (Butea frondosa), Padmaka

{Prunus Pudum), Haridrā (Canna Indica), Cīnaka (Panicum mihaceum), Arjuna (terminalia tomentosa), Kadamba (Anthocephalus cadamba) and Madhūka (Bassia latifolia) and similarly Añjana, Deva-Vrkṣa and jātyā (Jasminum grandiflorum) and Rakta-Candana (Ptyerocarpus Santalum)—these are the best trees. They should be known as praiseworthy. Those which are not mentioned are good. They are said to give mediocre result. [9-11]

The trees whose core is red are auspicious for kings, whose core is white are auspicious for Brahmins, whose core is yellow are auspicious for Vaiśyas and whose core is black are auspicious for śūdras. [12]

One should go to the west in the evening and should cut the tree after giving oblation to the ghosts-Bhūtas—living in the tree. [13]

6 King ! They should be offered food of Kulmāsa-ullopika and offer flowers; incense (Dhūpa) etc., and then 6 one coming from the Yadu dynasty this Mantra should be spoken. [14]

6 the living beings-Bhūtānt-ghosts living here, I bow down to you. May you be blessed. Accept this offering and change your residence. After getting your permission and worshipping Pramathēśvaras—Lords of goblins—I shall surely use this tree in a temple. [15-16]

If you can not leave this tree, you should kindly tell me clearly in the dream [17]

6 King ! 6 fortunate one ! saying this the architect and the astrologer, guarded by armed men, should sleep there. [18]

Then if one of them sees an auspicious dream, or does not see accordingly the tree may be cut without any doubt. [19]

If one of them sees an unauspicious dream, the tree should never be cut. If the tree is to be cut, a wise man after getting up should cut it, the next day. [20]

6 King ' then making a Pradaksinā, one should cut it down with a clean axe smeared with honey and ghee [21]

6 King ' the falling of the tree whose tops are towards east or north or (isāna) north-east is commended The falling of the trees, whose tops are on other directions, is censured [22]

The tree broken by wind or resulting in violence to animals should not be accepted The excellent tree which is fallen by efforts should be accepted [23]

Its front root should be marked with great efforts, the foremost part should be used for the head of the god and the root should be for the base [24]

The trees which are worshipped wrongly or which are slanting bring death The pillars made from the reversed top and root should be discarded [25]

The temple made by reversing Agra-Mula-the foremost and the bottom it decays Therefore the trees having the foremost part on the east and the north should be used for making a temple [26]

The reversing of Mahā-vamsa and Vamsa great family and ordinary family is censured The house made of Dakṣināgra turned to the South or parāgra tree causes troubles to the owner [27]

6 Knower of the religion ' Therefore with all the efforts a tree should be marked at the top and the root and then should be brought [28]

6 great king it should be carried by a cart by men or by bullocks, on an auspicious day, Nakṣatra and Muhūrta after worshipping the land [29]

A learned man should bring it nicely and sthapati will use it according to the proper requirement, purpose and lucky signs (laksanānvitam) [30]

in it. If the stone has the extremely red colour as Māṇjishṭha (Red as madder) then there is a frog in it. If the circular lines in it are of yellow colour one should know that a godhā a big lizard lives in it, and if black a serpent. If tawny a rat and if slightly red-Aruṇa-a kṛkalāsa (a lizard) should be known. [9-12]

If stone shows Guda (molasses) colour or pigeon colour then a house-lizard (Grhagodhikā) if the colour of sward water; and of ashes or Vālukā is to be avoided. [13]

In this way by the external colour the thing inside the stone, should be known and another one should be selected. [14]

When there are no outward signs for finding Sagarbhā-śūlā, they should be smeared with (certain milks) Brāhmi, Māheśvati, Śākrī, Vaisnavī and Ślaksana-peṣitā stones having tiny layers, should be smeared with the milk of the she-goat. If after one day and night the stone does not absorb it, one should know that it is sagarbhā-having living things in it. Such stone should be carefully avoided. [15-17]

Kāśiśa and Pīta-Kāśiśa stones should be smeared with the milk of a cow. When the stone smeared with it becomes variegated, it is not praiseworthy. It is said to be prāṇigarbhā. A wiseman should smear Mustaka, Karavīra, Kuṣṭha and Tālīsapa-tra stone with the milk of a woman. [18-19]

And if the smeared stone sticks (Simiśimāyate) it should be inferred that there is deadly poison, and it should not be touched with hand. [20]

and is variegated with black diamond or the black stone with red diamond creates many difficulties. In all the stones having white colour, the diamond is said to be the praise-worthy [22-24]

In all types of stones, the mixture of other colour is censured. Going on an auspicious day 6 king, a wise man should take a stone and bathe it with milk with Gavayas (auspicious things of the cow) and fragrant water and covering it with flowers and Darbha, an oblation should be given as before [25-26]

Similarly the astrologer and the architect should sleep there for a dream. If an auspicious dream is seen as before the stone should be brought [27]

If the dream is not seen or if a bad dream is seen on the next day worshipping the group of implements and then worshipping the cutter of the stone, 6 king should be carried and brought as told before in the case of the trees [28-29]

6 the best of kings, You should know with great efforts the Garbha-Vijnāna—the science of secrets of the stones and trees (for the temples) [30]

The stone brought by performing proper ceremony brings all happiness. Therefore one should do all efforts to enter the forest as told here [31]

Thus ends the Adhyāya 90 entitled the testing of the stone (śīla parīkṣā) during the discourse between Mārkaṇḍeya and Vajra in the third part of Sri Viṣṇudharmottara

---



## ADHYĀYA 91

Mārkaṇḍeya said :

Here after I shall tell you about the collection of baked bricks. White clay is auspicious for Brahmins, red for ksatriyas, yellow for Vaiśyas and black for the Antyajās-sūdras. A wise man should make one to take the clay with auspicious colour for him. [1-2]

The clay should be taken from unmixed and auspicious ground and then it should be dried. This dried clay should be mingled with water and aquatic plant-śaivāla-moss. [3]

It is said that from that loam brick should be made with a machine (yantra) which is one hand in length, half a hand in breadth and half of that (one fourth hand) in height. [4]

6 King ! then they should be baked in fire of dried wood, dried Gokarī (cow-dung) and grass. [5]

6 King ! they should be baked with mild fire and not excessive. The bricks which are not properly baked or which stick together should not be kept. [6]

The bricks which are excessively baked, break when a Rūpaka is made out of them. The bricks which are not (properly) baked are without strength. The bricks which are struck together destroy the maker. [7]

The man who puts fire in the collection of bricks-Iṣṭakā-nicaya) is considered as bad as the seller of Soma. He is known as a sinner. [8]

Therefore the fire should be kindled at the bottom (of the Nicaya) by a pure person. One desiring happiness in the present, should separate (the bricks) with efforts. [9]

6 King ! when the baked bricks become cool, they should be arranged together in appropriate forms and in proper place. [10]

6 tormentor of the enemy ! a wise man should arrange together the baked bricks in a form-Rūpaka, in a proper place. [11]

Similarly it is enjoined that the stones also should be arranged in a Rūpaka form. Similarly the (trees) wood should be arranged skillfully. [12]

A learned man should join the wood very well with iron (nails). It is enjoined that the unbaked bricks should be joined with mud. [13]

6 king ! with great efforts auspicious joint of the baked bricks and stones should be made of Vajralepa. [14]

6 King ! I have told you the making of baked bricks. It should be accompanied with lime. The limestones should be used for the temple of gods. It should not be used for domestic houses. [15]

In the third part of *Srī viṣṇudharmottara*, during the discourse between Mārkaṇḍeya and vajra, thus ends the *Adhyāya* 91 entitled the examination of the bricks (*Iṣṭakāparīkṣā*).

---

Mārkaṇḍeya said

Here after I shall tell you the procedure of making Vajralepa 6 King ! one should bring with care, Bilvaka, Kapittha, Āmra as well as the flowers of Śālmali, the seed of Sallakī, the skin of Dhanvana and the paste of Vacā. [1-2]

O best of the men they should be taken in equal quantity Eight times water should be added and boiled till it reduces to one-eighth Then the vinyāsa of sallakī the guggula of Bakula, Bhallātaka, Bilva, Kunduru, Sarja and Atasi should be added and boiled properly then it is known as Vajra-lepa [3-5]

6 King ! The mixture of Lākṣā, Kunduru, Grha-dhūma (smoke in the house), the pulp of Kapittha and Bilva, Nāgaphala, Balā, Madhūka, Kiñjāpa, Madana, Manjisthā, Āmalaka and Sarja is also renowned as Vajra-lepa [6-7]

6 King ! The mixture of the horns of bulls and the buffaloes, the hide of the goats, and the milk etc. of the buffalo and cow and the juice of the Kapittha and Nīmba is renowned as Vajra-lepa [8-9]

The mixture of eight parts of Nāga (tin), two parts of Kāmsya (bronze) and one part of Riti (rust of iron) is similarly make a Vajra-lepa

6 King ! when lime is baked (first) and then moistened and mixed with the hide of cows and rough hair it makes a vajra lepa [9-10]

6 King ! stone houses should be built using one of these varieties of Vajra-lepa [11]

6 the best of the men ! the houses made of baked bricks last long When they are joined with Vajra-lepa they are more stable [12]

6 great good king ! they last for a hundred year and 6 the knower of the religion they may last even for a million years [13]

O the tormentor of the enemies ! all of them should be plastered with lime and then it should be white washed with the lime for beauty [14]

6 the sinless one ! I have told you very well the making of Vajra-lepa It should be used for the interiors of the temples and for big buildings [15]

In the third part of Sri Viṣṇudharmottara during the discourse between Mārkaṇḍeya and Vajra thus ends the Adhyāya 92 entitled Vajra-lepana

---

## ADHYĀYA 93

Mārkaṇḍeya said

In kṛta-yuga the temple was not made on this earth, 6 king & people could see the gods before their eyes [1]

In tretā and dvāpara yugas though the people saw gods before their very eyes, they made images-Pratimās and worshipped them according to the ceremony [2]

In Tretā-Yuga the images of gods were installed in the houses Then in Dvāpara the sages Rsis-made images in the forests [3]

6 King, the siddhas always worshipped them The sages were happy to install images (in the temple) [4]

In this kali-yuga all people do this activity of installing images. In kṛta-yuga jnana (the knowledge was) supreme and in Tretā Tapah-the penance was supreme [5]

In Dvāpara similarly the same (Tapah) should be known as supreme, but in kaliyuga the cities are full of the temples [6]

6 the best of the kings the kings wishing to get Svargaloka or the heaven should make them but the king should not make them in the mutilated cities [7]

The king who is not wounded (hata) in the battle is fit to make a city The same king should mint emblems marked with his name [8]

6 the best of the Kings all the kings should build fortresses They should always be established with giving land etc in charity. [9]

He should install all the gods, otherwise he acquires sins (pāpas) In kali-yuga the worship done by him brings undesired results [10]

The doer gets undesired results even in other hundred lives. One gets good results by installing images in *krta*, *Tretā* and *Dvāpara*. [11]

As in those three yugas the Siddhas worship the gods sufficiently, there is no *siddha-pūjā* in the worship done in *kali yuga*. [12]

Therefore, in *kali-yuga* land should be procured by donation etc. In *kaliyuga* one who kills a king in the battle becomes a king, not any one else. [13]

He should install the image in the city formerly built. 6 *Yādava*; other persons also may do it by getting a permission of the king. [14]

A stable installation in the *Grhyas* is the cause of the permission of the king; the worship done by others should be done again. [15]

One should donate land etc. according to one's ability. He gets two fold results and uplifts his (*kula*) family. [16]

After worshipping with proper ceremony, if a king worships with pious-*Istāpūrta*-religion undoubtedly gets the fruits of *Rājasūya* and *Aśvamedha* sacrifices. In *krta*, *Tretā* and *Dvāpara*, 6 king the dwellers of heaven (gods) personally come to this *Nṛloka*, but they never personally come in this *kali-yuga*. [17-19]

Then (in *kali-yuga*) they come, when they are evoked by the Brahmins at the installation. Hence in this *kaliyuga*; a wise man should install gods with great care. [20]

*In this kaliyuga all the people are maintained (Pālyate) by the gods who are worshipped. When the gods are installed and worshipped they receive (the oblations) [21]*

Therefore in *kaliyuga*, it is beneficial to install with great efforts. So always the gods should be installed by donating land etc [22]

As the men go to the abode of the gods, by performing a sacrifice, 6 King; similarly they go there by installing a god. [23]

Therefore in this kali-yuga, one should install a deity, by giving much alms. They should perform auspicious installation with great efforts, donating land etc. [24]

6 King; it should be installed at a fort, in a city and in an auspicious place; and in a street where is a marked place 6 King it should not be installed elsewhere. [25]

6 King; in the village or a small village, where there is no market place a temple may be made outside the garden. It should not be made in the heart of a village. [26]

They should be built on the banks of a river, in the forests and in the parks, and on the bank of a lake, and on the peaks of mountains. [27]

They should be particularly in a beautiful cave near a mountain. The gods stay near such places. [28]

6 the best of the men gods never come near the province where there is no reservoir of water. [29]

Similarly 6 the Lord of men; a temple should be made on the left hand side of a reservoir of water, or it should be made in front of it. It should not be made in any other place. [30]

When a temple is made in an island, the water near it is praiseworthy. The land on which a temple is made, should be examined. [31]

The land which is white, red and yellow or black are beneficial to the varṇas (Brahmin, Kṣatriya, Vaiśya and śūdra) respectively. Similarly the land with kuśa, śara, kāśa, Dūrvā is beneficial. [32]

The land which tastes Madhurā, kasāya, Āmlā and Lavanā are beneficial for all the people of the varnas respectively, you have heard all before [33]

The sites which are covered with thorny trees, full of pebbles and clods (loṣṭa), which have chasms, which are uneven, difficult to approach, covered with ant-hills, full of many rat-holes covered with various kinds of ants, always broken by cart-tracks and formerly flooded with water should be avoided [34-35]

6 King! similarly the grounds which had on it the slaughter house or prison, or where the residences have been burnt by lightning or fire, or which suffers from evil eyes of those who live there, whose back is like that of a tortoise, or which is triangular in shape and which is void of turnings and the shape of a snake (Sūrpa), which is low towards the south or at the back and which had formerly taken in water, and which had many veins (Suśira) should be avoided [36-38]

The ground which after being dug cannot be refilled with the dug out earth, or in whose pit a lamp becomes faint, the garland of flowers becomes withered and water poured for filling it, does not stay should not be selected and the ground which gives out bad smell should also be carefully avoided [39-41]

The ground which is opposite of this, is preferred The ground which gives out good smell and good sound which is glossy and firm, whose earth dug out from the pit not only is capable of filling it, but also remains in excess and in whose pit the lamp does not faint and the flower put in it, does not wither and water stays for a longer time, this ground should be known as praise-worthy [42-43]

The work of examining the ground should be done on an auspicious day. If while looking for a good site one sees an auspicious thing or one hears something auspicious the ground of that site is good and oh king! it should not be examined. It is always praise-worthy and renowned [44-45]



6 the best of the King ! if one sees or hears something inauspicious. there is no need of examining it further because it is really inauspicious. [46] -

6 brave amongst the men ! one should install a temple at the site on an auspicious ground.

6 the moon amongst the kings ! if it is done so, it is, beneficial to the maker and for one own's expansion. (47)

Thus ends the Adhyāya 93 entitled "The examination of the land", during the discourse between Mārkaṇḍeya and Vajra, in the third part of Śrī Viṣṇudharmottara.

---

Mārkaṇḍeya said

After selecting the site, a temple should be made. At first a learned man should clear the ground on an auspicious day [1]

The learned man should apply Gomayas (five auspicious things obtained from the cow). Then one should worship the god of gods Vināyaka. (2)

Similarly, one should worship the tools of Viśvakarmā used for the purpose. It should be filled with the edible cereal grains—palalollūpikā Kulmāsā Odana—rice and parpaṭas Paramāṇna sweets and Puspa, Dhūpa and Anulepana.

After worshipping the astrologer, and the architect, 6 King, one should clear one's own land as far as one can see. [3-5]

Then the learned should clear the land from which śalyas are removed. After that the ground should be firmly filled with the soil. [6]

It should be again filled solidly with the soil of the same recommended colour, and from which the śalyas are removed. [7]

The site filled with soil should be made very firm and quite levelled. Then to find out very small śalyas, Salya-Parīksana the test of the śalyas should be done. [8]

6 King ! an intelligent man should do it with effort, as I tell you.

6 King ! if the soil is full of salyas, after taking of the śalyas, a learned man should nicely fill the site with good soil. Having cleaned the site in this way, the kumbha (pot) should be installed. [9-10]

On the same day on four sides, the *Silānyāsa* (laying of the foundation stone) should be done. It should be done with fire-bricks, on four directions [11]

The claybricks or wooden blocks should not be installed. On an auspicious day, auspicious *Nakṣatra* and *Muhūrta*, after worshipping the Pot-shape should make of stone slab in the temple made of stone. In other places copper pot should be placed firmly with it [12-13]

Having done sixty four round *padas* on the levelled place, 6 twice-born ' there *Devatā-nyāsa* (installation of all the gods) described in the *Vāstu-Vidyā* should be done according to the rituals [14]

Then worshipping *Srī Vāstudeva*, the worship and *Mandala* of *Vāstudeva-gana*, and god *Vināyaka* and *Viśva-Karmā* and the vessels used in it, should be performed according to the rituals with *Gandha-Puspa*, *Naivedya-Dīpa-Dhupa* [15-17]

Then one should offer *Ghee* (Purified butter) sanctified by uttering *Oṃkāra* in a sacrifice for god *Srīdhara*, *Viśnu* and then a sacrifice-*Homa*-should be made for *Brahmā*, in front of *Brahmā* and *Vāstudeva-gana*. Then putting the *Kumbha-pot-Silā-nyāsa* should be made [18-19]

6 King ' then in the north east *Aśāna* corner a stone-slab-*silā* (should be laid first and then make its *Pradakṣiṇā* [20]

On the same day *Sūtra-nyāsa* should be done *Yathā-Niṣesa* according to the fixed plan of the temple [21]

6 Lion amongst men ! After completing the lay out (*Sūtra-Vinyāsa*) nothing more should be done. If it is done it is harmful for the both [22]

Then the place of the *kumbha* and *silā* should be fixed with the astringent water of *Vaṣa* (Banyan tree) *Asvattha* (Peepal tree) and other *ausadhi* (medicinal) vegetation [23]

Thereafter smearing should be done with frequent things like candana-sandal wood etc then it should be covered with clothes and flowers [24]

Then uttering the name of each one Dhupa-Dīpa and su-naivedya should be offered in their names After that the best of Brahmins are worshipped with Dakṣiṇā [25]

Then the person knowing the name-Nāma-should worship the astrologer and the architect Thereafter the performer or the architect or the astrologer should chant this Mantra, [26]

6 Nanda, the heir of Vasistha by this worship kindly make us happy with vasus-wealth 6 Jaya the heir of Bhṛgu, kindly bring victory to our progeny [27]

6 Pūrṇa, the heir of Angīrasa ' Kindly fulfil my desires 6 Bhadrā, the heir of Kāśyapa, Kindly make my mind noble [28]

6 Charming and joyful Nanda and Vasistha having all the bīja, all jewels and medicines, please rejoice over here [29]

O Subhaga (very fortunate) suvrata (having good rite) Bhadre Kāśyapī the daughter of Prajāpati goddess in form of four sided Earth you also rejoice over here [30]

6 adorned goddess kāśyapī (the earth) ' producing prosperity in life (bhavabhūtikara), great Ācāryas are worshipping with Gandha and Mālya-fragrant substances and flower garlands you rejoice over here [31]

6 Avyanga, Aksata, Pūrṇa and the daughter of Angīrasa munī 6 Iṣṭakā (giving desired things) kindly give me my desired thing I desire prestige [32]

In the property of the lord of the country, the lord of the city and the lord of cattle, Kindly increase the people cattle, elephants horses and the wealth [33]

According to these ceremonies the levelling of the land should be done. 6 great king ! The doors should be placed and similarly the height of the doors. [34]

Similarly the height of the pillars and O the best of Yadu ! the bamboos should be fixed and the height of the Āmalasārakas and the symbols of the deity should be erected. [35]

Whatever the symbol of the weapon, and the vehicle of a god be, one of the symbols should be placed on the Āmalasāraka. [36]

When it is completed and white-washed, the drawing up of pictures should be done. The kaṣi should be nicely pictured, the back should be white-washed. [37]

The picture fulfilling the desires and giving all prosperity, should be done scientifically. There in the picture other astonishing things should be painted with efforts. [38]

Or on the temple of Viṣṇu the symbol of a Garuda should be made, and on the temple of Durgā a lion and on the temple of Hara trident should be placed. [39]

On the temple of Lakṣmī the symbol of a lotus, on the temple of Brahmā that of a Haṁsa, on the temple of Kāmadeva or cupid an alligator (Makara) and on the temple of Saṁkarṣaṇa (Bala-Rāma) a Tāla should be the symbol. [40]

On the temple of Āditya there should be a lion in a half moon and on the temple of the moon a Mṛga-deer standing in the middle of a circle should be there. [41]

On the temple of Śakra (Indra), Thunder-bolt (Vajra) and on the temple of Vaiśvata a Danda should be made. On the temple of Varuṇa Pāśa and on the temple of Dhanada (Kubera) Gaṇḍaka (Mace) should be there. [42]

be the symbol. On the temple of Agni a Jvālā-flame-is prescribed. [43]

For Vāyu, the wind god, the symbol should be Ambara-bhaṅga crumpled cloth and for Nirṛti, goddess of Death a Camel-Ustra should be the symbol, and for other gods the symbol should be their own weapon. [44]

6 King ! then Dhvaja-flag-should be placed, because demons Asuras like to stay in the flagless temple. [45]

By Dhvaja all the sins of people are destroyed therefore by all means a Dhvaja should be placed on a temple. [46]

6 King ! by building the temple in this way, there is always growth. There is no doubt about it. Therefore 6 Adinastva, (possessing goodness) by all means a temple should be made with ceremony. [47]

Thus ends the Adhyāya 94, entitled Brahma-Śilā-nyāsa-Dhvaja-Vidhi, during the discourse between Mārkaṇḍeya and Vajra, in the third part of Śrī Viṣṇudharmottara.

---

## ADHYĀYA 95

Lord Mārkaṇḍeya, having severe penance-Tapa-and a very very long life said this. King Vajra asked, "6 lord ! How one gets the knowledge of eight Śalyas (Aṣṭa-Śalya-Jñāna) !"

Lord Mārkaṇḍeya said to him :

Once upon a time a great creature Bhūta (Mahad Bhūta) arose to destroy three worlds. The gods quickly caught hold of the creature and threw him down with his head fearing that it may rise the gods sat on its limbs. Parjanya (rain god) etc. sat on the right hand side limbs, in order, on the left Nāga etc. an inverse order, Parjanya and Hutāśana on head, two Kara-grahas on the face, Yama and Kāma on eyes, on the breast (Stanayoho) Mahendra and Aditi, on ears Khyaditi, on the chest and shoulders Satya Bhṛṣa-antariksa Pavanāh, on the hand Nāgarājānah headed by Chandra-Bhallāḥ, on the other hand Sāvitr and Savitā, on the arm Rudra and Vyādhi, on the other arm Aryamā, on the arm-pit Pṛthivī-dhara, on the sides (pārśva) puspa-Vitatha and Bṛhat-Ksatā, on the other side Śosa-Śoka and Yakṣas, on the heart Brahmā on the jāṭhara-Belly Vivasvāna and Mitra, on the Medhra (Penis) two Jayendras, and on the Vṛṣana Testicles, Yama and Varuṇa, on Sṁjīa-hips-two vṛṣāsuras on two (Urus) thighs Gandharva and on (Janghās) upper part of the legs puspadantas and on the knees two Mṛga-grivās, on the legs Pitr-dauvārikās should be placed. Similarly on the North-east direction (Iśānta dīk) the head of the Vāstu-purusa and on the South-West (Naiṣṛuttī dīk) direction the feet of the Vāstu-purusa should be placed. The Śalya should be fixed on that part of the Vāstupuruṣas body, on which the Prasṅā-inquires touches, or on the limb of the Gṛhapati where there is frequent ailing. Then addressing Vāstupuruṣa, the oblation of purified butter-Gṛhta should be given one by one. Or it should be offered at the place where the

characteristics of the fire (Agni) become inauspicious, when Gṛta is being offered

Now I shall gladly tell you about the sixtyfour Pada vibhāgas of the same god Outside it on the east there is ardha-padesvara (The lord residing in the ardha-pada) Parjanya is the presiding lord of the Adhyardha Pada Parjanya, adhyardhapadesvara takes the hand Mahendra, Ravi and Satya and Vrsa are the lords of two-two padas respectively Antariksa is the presiding lord of the ardha-pada On south Pavana is the presiding lord and Puspa is the lord of ardha-pada Vitatha is the presiding lord of the adhyardhapada Bṛhat-Ksata, Yava, Bhrnga and Gandharva are the lords of two padas, Kosa is the lord of adhyardha-pada Sesa is the lord of ardha-pada and here Din-nāgarāja is the lord of ardhapada Mukhya (the main) is the lord of ardha-pada Bhallāja, Chandra etc gods are the lords of two padas Rāga is the presiding lord of adhyardha-pada Tadāsana is the lord of the ardha-pada after that from the east are the masters (Nātha) of ardha-pada (Ardha-pada-nātha). Yakṣa is the master of two padas, Aryamā is ardha-pada-nātha, Sāvitra is ardha-pada-nātha on the south, Savitā is dvīpadanātha-master of two padas, Vivasvān is ardha-pada-nātha, Jaya is ardha-pada-nātha on the west. Indra is the nātha of two padas, Mitra and Rudra are the māster-nātha of ardha-pada On the north Vyādhi is the nātha (master) of ardha-pada Mahidhara is the nātha of two padas Kāma is the ardha-pada-nātha In the middle Brahmā is the lord of four padas. In this way there are thirty-two gods outside it Inside there are thirteen In that way there are fortyfive gods

At the time of asking the question, one whose name or sound (Ruta) is heard should be considered, or from the first letter of the word asked by the person asking the question should be considered And in the group of Akāra etc horse man dog, jackal, sheep, donkey and goat should be understood In reality in the middle of ninefold divisions (Navadhā Vibhaktasya madhye) Va-kāra \* A-ka-ja-ta and Sa-ga-are the letters found amongst

\* These letters mean the group of verses beginning with the letter a, ka, ja, ta etc



the ancient (or in the directions beginning with east-Prācyādīsu). The Śalya should be placed in the direction from which the first syllable of the Vāstu is heard. In the centres devoid of the Lagna Salya becomes solid. In the sinful centres the direction is fixed with Salya, according to Rāśi for controlling Bali the Salya of the bone should be used, when strengthless sugar, burning charcoal (Angāra), wood, Tusa (Husk), ashes etc are used, the builder die under all the circumstances, when sugar, husk, keśa (Hair), burning charcoal are used as Salya calamities such as sorrow, unfortunate happenings, disease, death or theft occur. A god is not installed in the temple where there is Śalya. Therefore all efforts should be made to make a temple of Vāstu having no Salya. On the south of the temple there is Kośabhavana, treasury of the god, on its south-east corner there is the Mahānasa (kitchen). On the south there is the Snāna bhavan (bathroom). On the south-west corner there is kupya-grha. On the west corner is the water-room. On the north-west corner there is Bhāndagrha. There is Preksāgāra-auditorium in the north. On the north east corner there is the ejvā-grha worshipping chamber.

In front there is Karma-kāra-grha-the house for all the workers. All of them should be made without Śalya. Everywhere by the Dravina-Salya (substance-Śalya) there is expansion. It is learnt that way. It is said—

In Ūrdhvastha, Kendraga and Saumya, there is Salya called Dravina. There by the Kendra-rāśi the direction should be known. [1]

The Place where Usmā-warmth is found or where the earth has the shape of an umbrella, or if the ground has a peak, one should know that there is Vitta (money). [2]

If the land is possessed with bluish flies with white wings, and the land which has bad smell, under that land there is money. [3]

The place where two Puskaras are seen rising from one Nāla, people often say that under that there is much wealth. [4]

It is said that if the (Akṣirā and Kṣirina Vṛksāḥ) trees having milk or no milk are surrounded by (Tantus) fibres, also people say that there are thornless or thorny plants, there is wealth [5]

6 King ! it is said that the place where a Vandāka is found on the tree and where the Kimsuka is white there also wealth is found [6]

It is said that the place where the Himāmbhasā-waters of the snow is found, and trees do not grow or where the trees produce flowers out of season under that there is money [7]

6 the lord of Kings ! the place where the Sārangaka couple and where there is a snake with variegated head, under that there is wealth [8]

Thus ends the Adhyāya 95 entitled Salyoddhāra in the Pratisthā Kalpa, during the discourse between Mārkaṇḍeya and Vajra in the third part of Śrī Viṣṇudharmottara

---

Vajra said, 6 one from the Bhṛgu family ! At what time the installation should be done ? Of what type it becomes when done at a particular different time ? [1]

Mārkaṇdeya said

6 Yādava ! Now here I tell you about the time of the installation, when done at a particular time it becomes of a particular type. [2]

When in this world the installation is done in kṛta age it is Vaiṣṇavi always stay near. It gives money, grains, boon, and prosperity. [3]

When it is done at the age of Tridaśeśa-guru of the gods, it is Aindri. It is lustrous (Tejovati), prosperous, and controlling the ghosts [4]

Similarly when done in Āgneyakāla it brings Bhūta-dāha. The people should understand that Tvāṣṭra is always wonderful [5]

When done in Āhīrbudhnyā, it is always firm and bestows mercy on the people. When done in Pitrya-Kāla the performer is ruined and it brings death. [6]

In Vaiśva-Kāla it brings the welfare to the performer and it is desirable to the people. When done in Saumyakāla it is Saumyā, and Kāntā And it is beneficial. [7]

When done in the Aindrāgna-Kāla it is destroyed and destroys the installer. When done in Āśvina it becomes prosperous, but it is destroyed soon. [8]

When desired by the people done in Bhāgya-Kāla, it is sinful on the part of the performer. 6 the best of men ! At an inauspicious age : an installation should be done. [9]

A particular god who is the lord of the Yuga is praised That installation is full of money, grains and prosperous It brings welfare to the performer [10] -

When done in the year called Samvatsara, it is always permitted When done in Paṇḍurva time, it is called Bhutaghna and well known in this world [11]

If it is done at Idā-pūrva-Kāla it is Varada, Saumya and thought beautiful by all When done at Anu-pūrva time, it is boon-giving and full of money and grains [12]

If done at Tat-pūrva time it is destroyed and it brings destruction to the installer There also that of Sambu, Mrtyu and Yama are beneficial [13]

If done during the Uttarāyana-period it is Saumyā and it increases the wealth ' It is full of money and grains, prosperous and produces joy among the people [14]

When done during the Dakṣināyana-kāla, it increases the sins And there too when the Devesa is sleeping (after Deva Sayana Ekādaśī) it increases all the bad things [15]

6 King ' when done in Śiśira Season (winter) it becomes Drdha-firm When done in Vasanta (spring) it is Saumya It is prosperous and boon-giving [16]

When done in Grīṣma (summer) it is lustrous lovely and controls the ghosts If done in Prāṇṭ-kāla the rainy season it is destroyed along with the performer [17]

If done at Sarat-kāla-the autumn, it soon meets destruction If done in Hemanta it is boon-giving and pleasing It increases Dharma, the religion [18]

If done in Māgha month, it brings destruction of the performer In Fālguna it is Subhaga-fortunate, if done in Chaitra month it gives joy to the people, if done in Vaiśākha month it is accompanied with money [19]

In Jyestha it is permitted, if done in Āsādhā it gives prosperity to the performer, if done in Śrāvana it is without money, if done in Bhādrapada (Proṣṭhapāda) it is destroyed. [20]

If done in Āśvina and similarly in Kārtika, it is destroyed by fire. If done in Saumya it becomes fortunate and in Pausa there is the best growth. [21]

If done in Adhika-māsa it is sinful to the performer and the self, but if done in the first 1/3 part of it i.e. first five days of the dark half, it brings auspicious things. [22]

If done during the second part that is the days sixth to tenth day, it is of middle type (Madhyā) and if done in the third, one third part i.e. from the 11th to 15th day it brings destruction of the performer. If done in the bright half Śukla-Pakṣa in the first 1/3 part-i.e. from 1st to 5th it is said that it brings destruction, if done in the Second one-third part i.e. from 6th to 10th its result is mediocre and if done in the third one-third part i.e. from 11th to 15th day it brings auspicious things. It augments prosperity, wealth and grains, and is beneficial. [23-24]

If it is done during the first or second half in which there is Vṛddhi tithi, it brings auspicious things. If done at the time of Sūryod it is bright and if done at the time of moon it is also auspicious. [25]

If done on the Tuesday, it is burnt by fire and if done on the Wednesday, it gives wealth. If done on the Thursday it is always firm, bright and giving joy to the people. [26]

If the Pratiṣṭhā (installation) is done during the time when the moon and sun are in the saurā it is good. If it is done in Kṛttikā it is bright and it controls the ghosts. [27]

Or one giving honour if done after that at the time of fire, sun, bhauma-Mangala or Kumārā if is burnt by fire. [28]

If done at the time of Gangā it is not burnt by fire. If done at the Prājāpatya time, it is always firm and merciful to the people. [29]

When done at the Saumya kāla it gives boon, but it is destroyed by the rats. If done in Ādrā Naksatra it soon brings the death of the installer. [30]

If done in punarvasu it is destroyed and then repaired again. If done in Pusya it grows with wealth and fame. [31]

If done in Sārppa-kāla it brings destruction but it is beneficial to the Nāgas, if done at the Pitrya-kāla it results in the death of the installer and it is ruined. [32]

If done at the Bhāgya-kāla it is desirable to the people (Loka-gamyā) and it destroys the installer. If done at the time of Kāmadeva, it brings happiness to the installer. [33]

If done at the Āryamna, it is firm, prosperous and it brings mercy to people. If done in Hasta as permitted it is destroyed in the long run. [34]

If done in Citrā-Naksatra it is astonishing in this world and it is beneficial. If done in the Svāti-Naksatra, it is boon-giving, Saumya and bringing mercy to the people. [35]

If done at the time of Andrāgna it brings destruction to the installer, if done in Maitra-kāla it increases the friends. If done in Jyesthā it is full of lustre and it brings wealth and grains. [36]

If it is done in that way in Mūla-naksatra the ghosts take shelter in it, if done in Āpya it brings anxiety, but if done in Vaiśvadeva in brings happiness. [37]

If done in Sravana-nakṣatra it is full of wealth and corn; if done in Vāsava-kāla it is full of money, and O the best of men! if done in Varuna-kāla and Aja-kāla it is soon destroyed. [38]

If done in Āhīrbudhnya Nakṣatra (uttara-bhadra padā), it is firm and prosperous, and it gives desired objects to the installer  
 If done in Pausna and Āśvina, it destroys the disease [39]

If done in yāmya, it brings death to the installer and is beneficial to Yama, if done at the time of Vyatipāta and similarly Vaidhṛta it should be known as bringing death, and it ruins the installer  
 If done at the Sārka kāla it produces anxiety, and if done at the Saura-kāla it brings death [40-41]

If done at the Sa Bhauma time there is the danger of fire, and if done at the Satamaska time it is not firm  
 If done at the time when the Rukṣa-bear is adorned with Ketu, it meets with the burning fire [42]

If it is done at the time of rising of Ketu, a famine occurs there, if done at the rise of Bhauma (Mangala) it is burnt by the fire [43]

If done at the rise of the Saura the installer is ruined  
 If it is said that if it is done at the time of Sa-Parivesa Nakṣatra there is the danger of foreign rule [44]

It is hit by an Ulkā Meteor, with an earth-quake, it is dangerous  
 If an Ulkā falls there, it spreads disease [45]

If it is done when there are three types of calamities, it is said that it is not auspicious  
 If done at the time of Divya (celestial) it ruins the installer  
 If done at Bhauma it destroys one's own self [46]

If done in the antarīkṣa it should be known that it ruins the people  
 The bear (Rukṣa) with Vaidhṛta and Vyatipāta should be avoided  
 When done at the time of Āgaman ādrava, all the remaining faults accompany it  
 If done at the Janma-nakṣatra, it becomes beneficial [47-48]

If done in the second Nakṣatra it gives wealth, if in the third there is the danger of the enemy. In the fourth it becomes auspicious, in the fifth it increases the disease. [49]

In the sixth it increases the work, in the seventh it causes destruction. In the eighth it is boon-giving and Saumya, in the ninth it increases the wealth. (50)

It is said that if done in the tenth Nakṣatra from the birth it completes the action and in the eleventh it produces prosperity and in twelfth, it causes the danger of the enemy. [51]

It should be known that if done in the thirteenth it brings welfare, in the fourteenth it causes disease. If done in the fifteenth, it brings expansions in the sixteenth it causes death. [52]

In the seventeenth it gives prosperity, in the eighteenth it gives wealth, if done in the nineteenth it causes death of the installer. [53]

In the second from that it gives wealth, in the third it causes danger from the enemy. In the fourth it begets welfare, in the fifth it increases the disease. [54]

It should be known that in the sixth it produces wealth and it increases wealth and grain. In the seventh it is said that it gives pain; and it is said that in the eighth it gives wealth. [55]

In the ninth it gives wealth and it increases happiness and all types of good fortune. If done in the second, fourth, fifth, eighth, twelfth and ninth candra (moon), it inflicts sins on the installer. If the moon is in the Janma-nakṣatra, third, sixth, eleventh and similarly tenth, seventh, is pierced (Viddha) by grahās, and when in fifth, ninth, twelfth eighth and fourth or second it gives one fourth result according to the sequence. If on the contrary it is Vedhastha, it is said that it is auspicious though it is a (Pāpa) bad graha. [56-59]



If done in Svargya it gives Svargaloka (the heaven) if in cakra it brings sovereignty (cakrapravartini), if done in Vānaspatya it is boon giving and if in anna, it increases the grains. [70]

If done in Vāsa, it is full of clothes, if in Kāla it results in death. If done in Āgneya it brings burning, similarly in Abdaivata -Varuṇa it causes dampness (kledam) [71]

If done in (solar) Saura it becomes prosperous, and in cāndra (lunar) it gives the boon. If done in Śambhudaivatya it is ruined, if done in Go-devī (cow-goddess) it gives prosperity. [72]

It is said that if done in Vaiṣṇava it gives Puṣṭi (Nourishment) and it is worshipped in Kaumāra it results in expansion; similarly if done in Pitrya it brings destruction. [73]

It is said that if done in Vāruṇa, it causes diseases; and in Anantadaivata (Ananta-deva) time; it is auspicious. If done at the time of Pavana-deva it is not steady (calā) and if done in Yāmya it causes death. [74]

If done at the time of Vāgdevatā (Sarasvatī) it is always lovable, and at the time of Śrīrodha it is full of wealth, if done at Dhanada time it is endowed with Śrī (wealth) at Śaila-devatā it is very firm (Sudṛḍhā). [75]

If done at the time of Pṛthividevī, it is firm and gentle (Saumyā), if done at Veda devatā it becomes auspicious, and at Pauruṣa and Raucya it increases the religion very much and it brings happiness to the installer and more over it is imperative. If done on Pratipadā it is firm, full of money and prosperous. [76-77]

If done on the second day it is full of money, on the third day it is boon giving, on the fourth day it meets with destruction and only gives happiness to Yama. [78]

Similarly the installation of Vināyakadeva, (Gaṇapati) it is beneficial. If done on Pañcamī (fifth day) it is full of wealth, pleasing (kānta) and boon giving. [79]

If done in Svargya it gives Svargaloka (the heaven) if in cakra it brings sovereignty (cakrapravartini), if done in Vānaspatya it is boon giving and if in anna, it increases the grains [70]

If done in Vāsa, it is full of clothes, if in Kāṣa it results in death If done in Āgneya it brings burning, similarly in Abdaivata -Varuna it causes dampness (kledam) [71]

If done in (solar) Saura it becomes prosperous, and in cāndra (lunar) it gives the boon If done in Sambhudaivatyā it is ruined, if done in Go-devī (cow-goddess) it gives prosperity [72]

It is said that if done in Vaisnava it gives Puṣṭi (Nourishment) and it is worshipped in Kaumāra it results in expansion, similarly if done in Pitrya it brings destruction [73]

It is said that if done in Vārūna, it causes diseases, and in Anantadaivata (Ananta-deva) time, it is auspicious If done at the time of Pavana-deva it is not steady (calā) and if done in Yāmya it causes death [74]

If done at the time of Vāgdevatā (Sarasvatī) it is always lovable, and at the time of Śrīrodha it is full of wealth, if done at Dhanada time it is endowed with Śrī (wealth) at Saila-devatā it is very firm (Sudṛdhā) [75]

If done at the time of Pṛthividevī it is firm and gentle (Saumya), if done at Veda devatā it becomes auspicious, and at Paurusa and Raucya it increases the religion very much and it brings happiness to the installer and more over it is imperative If done on Pratipadā it is firm, full of money and prosperous [76-77]

If done on the second day it is full of money, on the third day it is boon giving, on the fourth day it meets with destruction and only gives happiness to Yama [78]

Similarly the installation of Vināyakadeva, (Ganapati) it is beneficial If done on Paucamī (fifth day) it is full of wealth, pleasing (kānta) and boon giving [79]

If done in Svargya it gives Svargaloka (the heaven) if in cakra it brings sovereignty (cakrapravartini), if done in Vānaspatya it is boon giving and if in anna, it increases the grains. [70]

If done in Vāsa, it is full of clothes, if in Kāla it results in death. If done in Āgneya it brings burning, similarly in Abdaivata -Varuṇa it causes dampness (kledam) [71]

If done in (solar) Saura it becomes prosperous, and in cāndra (lunar) it gives the boon. If done in Śambhudaivatya it is ruined, if done in Go-devī (cow-goddess) it gives prosperity. [72]

It is said that if done in Vaiṣṇava it gives Pusti (Nourishment) and it is worshipped in Kaumāra it results in expansion; similarly if done in Pitrya it brings destruction. [73]

It is said that if done in Vāruṇa, it causes diseases; and in Anantadaivata (Ananta-deva) time; it is auspicious. If done at the time of Pavana-deva it is not steady (calā) and if done in Yāmya it causes death. [74]

If done at the time of Vāgdevatā (Sarasvatī) it is always lovable, and at the time of Śrīrodha it is full of wealth, if done at Dhanada time it is endowed with Śrī (wealth) at Śaila-devatā it is very firm (Sudṛdhā). [75]

If done at the time of Pṛthivīdevī, it is firm and gentle (Saumyā), if done at Veda devatā it becomes auspicious, and at Paurusa and Raucya it increases the religion very much and it brings happiness to the installer and more over it is imperative. If done on Pratipadā it is firm, full of money and prosperous. [76-77]

If done on the second day it is full of money, on the third day it is boon giving, on the fourth day it meets with destruction and only gives happiness to Yama. [78]

Similarly the installation of Vināyakadeva, (Ganapati) it is beneficial. If done on Pañcamī (fifth day) it is full of wealth, pleasing (kānta) and boon giving. [79]

If done on the sixth day it is always full of wealth, on the seventh day it destroys the diseases, on the eighth day it is full of abundant grains, but if done on the ninth day it is ruined [80]

If the installation of Bhadrakālī is done on that (ninth) day, it strengthens the installer. It should be known that if similarly it is done on the tenth day it increases the religion [81]

If it is done on the eleventh day and on twelfth day it fulfills all the desires. It should be known that if it is done on the thirteenth day the result is the same, but if done on the fourteenth day it is ruined [82]

If it is done on the fifteenth day of the dark half Kṛṣṇapakṣa of the month, it brings destruction of the installer, but if done on the fifteenth day of the bright half it fulfills all the desires [83]

6 great King ' if it is done on the ūnarātra it causes the death of the installer. Similarly O King ' if it is Tryaha-Sprṣā (touching three) it should be known as sinful [84]

The installation which is done at the time when the Bhauma (Maṅgala) is in Divya-antarīkṣa and which is combined with catastrophe, should be done at the end of separation-Viprayogānta, if it is to be done [85]

If done on Kṣayā-tithi (a missing date) it brings destruction, if done on a Vṛddhi tithi (additional day) it is praised. If done on Sakunau (omens) it begets sin, and if it is catuspadī (with four legs) it is dangerous [86]

If done at Nāga (snake) it becomes Sūnya (empty) at Kṛmstughma it is auspicious, at Bava the first karana it, is firm. Similarly it should be known that in Bālava (the second of the eleven karana) it is auspicious [87]

In Kaulava it is said to be boon-giving, in Tautila it destroys the diseases, in Garādī it is the progenitor of diseases similarly in Vanijī it is nourishing [88]

In Viṣṭī it causes death and the installer commits sin and if done at the rising of Janmarāśī it ruins the installer immediately. [89]

On the second it becomes the cause of the loss of money, on the third it gives prosperity to the installer, on the fourth it causes the ruin of the house and on the fifth it produces disease [90]

If done on the sixth it causes the destruction of the enemy, on the seventh it destroys the wealth, on the eighth it causes death. It should be known that if done on the ninth it destroys the religion [91]

If done on the tenth it increases business, in Lābha it gives some advantage, if done in the twelfth it increases the expenditure. Therefore the installation is to be done in an auspicious way [92]

It is the best if it is done at the time of (Janma Lagna-Udaya), rising at the Lagna of birth. It gives wealth and grains. In all other places the Janma-rāśi-phala should be mentioned [93]

6 King ! if it is done at the rise of Mesa (the ram) it soon destroys, if done at the rise of the bull, it is said to be firm as well as full of wealth and corn [94]

If done in Mithuna-rāśī it is very much loved by the people (Loka-Kāntā) and very auspicious. If done in Kultra (cancer-zodiac) it is soon destroyed, but if done in Simba (the lion) it becomes firm [95]

If done in Kanyā-rāśī (the Virgo-zodiac) it is loved by the people, if done in Tulā it is unstable, if done in Vṛścika, (the scorpion) it is said to be steady and if done in Dhanur-dhara it brings welfare. [96]

If done in Makara, (crocodile) it is soon ruined, if done in Kumbha Lagna (the pitcher) it becomes firm. If done in Mīna, (the fish) it brings good things to the installer, if done in Kalpa it remains empty (Śūnya) [97]

If done in Sūrya-Horā it is fiery, but it is said that if done in Soma (the moon) it is gentle, if done in the Dreskāna of Pāpa-graha it is said that it ruins the installer. [98]

If done at the time of Saumya-graha it is auspicious and it brings prosperity to the installer, the phala (result) is according to the navāṁśa of the Lagna. [99]

6 the best of men ! the result of Dvādaśāṁśa the twelfth degree should be known as same, but if done at thirtieth aṁśa of Bhauma (maṅgala) and Saura, it should be known that it ruins the installer. [100]

6 King ! if it is done, at the Sita-Jivendu-Putras it brings welfare of the installer, but if the Aṁśa is auspicious, in Pāpa-lagna also the result is good. [101]

It should be known that in a very good Lagna also the Pāpāṁśa produces sin to the men. If it is done when Bhāskara, (the sun) is Lagnastha, it is auspicious (Śaṅkarā) for the installer. [102]

If it is in second place there is loss of money, in third it brings money. If done when it is in the fourth it decreases life and in the fifth the son dies. [103]

If in sixth it destroys the enemy, in the seventh it causes poverty, when the sun is in the eighth place it causes death, and in the ninth religion is suppressed. (104)

In the tenth, there is the increase in the number of sons, if done in Lābha it is profitable, if done in Dvādaśa, the twelfth it is full of expenditure and poverty. [105]

6 the best amongst the men ! if it is done when the moon is in the Lagna, it should be known as very firm, if the moon is in the second place it is full of money and in the third it is advantageous. [106]

In the fourth it is beneficial to Bandhus (the relatives-brothers), and in the fifth it increases the sons, in the sixth it destroys the enemies, and in the seventh it brings wealth. [107]

It is said that if in eighth it is accompanied with death, in the tenth it gives good results of the actions, and in Lābha it gives benefits. [108]

6 King ! if done in Vyaya it is full of expenditure. Now learn from me the result of the installation, when Ardhabimba, half of disc of the moon is decreased gradually in sequence. [109]

6 one with long hands ! when the moon is in the Lagna, it should be known that it will be ruined soon, if in second it brings poverty and in the third it it accompanied with money. [110]

If it is done when the moon is in the fourth many bad things happen, if it is in the fifth it causes the death of the son. If it is in the sixth the enemies are ruined and if in the seventh the wife dies. [111]

It is said that, if done when in the eighth it causes death, when in the ninth it kills the religion, if done in the tenth it brings wealth, and if done in Lābha it is profitable. [112]

If done in Vyaya it is always expensive, similarly it brings poverty. If Bhauma is in its Lagna, it causes death, and if in Dhana it produces poverty. [113]

If he does it when it is in the third place, it spreads brilliant fame in all the three worlds. When in the fourth, it results in the destruction of Bandhu (the relatives-brothers) and if done in Suta, it kills sons. [114]

In the sixth it destroys the enemies; if done in the seventh it is destroyed in the fire, in eighth it causes death of the installer, if done in the ninth it causes downfall of the country. [115]

In the tenth, the objectives and actions are realised, and if in Lābha it is profitable. If done in Vyayaga, it causes the separation from wealth, wife and children. [116]

If Budha is in its Lagna, it is accompanied with wealth similarly in the second also the result is the same In the third it is said to be boon-giving and in the fourth it brings wealth [117]

It should be known that when in fifth it gives fame In the sixth it ruins the enemies If in the seventh it gives happiness, similarly when in the eighth it should be known that it gives pleasure [118]

6 King ' if done when in the ninth it gives happiness when in tenth it increases the labour If done in Vyaya, it should be known as steady advantageous and full of money [119]

When Jiva is Lagnastha it is full of wealth, in the second also it is the same If done in the third it is steady and in the fourth it is combined with wealth [120]

It is said that if in the fifth it gives happiness, in the sixth it destroys the enemies If done in the seventh it gives kingdom to the installer and when in the eighth it gives prosperity [121]

If done in the ninth it should be known as giving fame, if done in the tenth it gives prosperity If done when it is in Lābha it should be known as profitable in vyaya (expenditure) also it is advantageous [122]

If it is done when Sukra is in its Lagna the installation is steady It fulfills all the desires When it is in Dhana it gives wealth when in the third it increases the number of the brothers (relatives) [123]

When it is in the fourth place it should be known as giving good luck and when it is in the fifth it increases the number of the sons When in the sixth it is respectable and in seventh it increases wealth [124]

It should be known that when in eighth it gives happiness, and when in the ninth it gives happiness and wealth, and in the tenth it is loved by the people similarly when in Yuga it destroys the enemies [125]



When it is Vyayastha, it should be known that it brings wealth and similarly expenditure When in Lagna it brings death, when in Saura it brings poverty When in the second and third it brings forth the wealth, and when in the fourth it causes death of the doer When in the house of son (Sutagā) it destroys the sons, and when in the house of the enemy (Aṅgā) it destroys the enemies [126-127]

When it is (Jāyāstha) in the house of the wife it destroys the wife, and when in the house of death, (Mrtyugrhopage), it brings death, when in the house of Dharma it causes loss of Dharma, and when in the house of Karma, it increases activities [128]

When it is in Lābha it brings profit of the land and when in Vyaya there is expenditure The void centre (Sūnyam kendram) should be avoided, and it should be done in the auspicious centre [129]

Thus the astrologer should carefully find out the auspicious time, with the shadow and water (chāyāmbubhiḥ), and every effort should be made carefully [130]

Then on an auspicious day and the auspicious time written the Yantra, (Pūrvam Yantrastham Tat-Kālam) the architect himself should install the image in the pit of the Piṭhika, the pedestal [131]

Then and then only the name of the image should be given. When the image is installed at the end of giving its name, it becomes a Vaiṣṇavī Pratimā [132]

The names of the females (goddesses) (?) should end with Keśavi, that of the Brāhmarā should end in Nātha, it is said that the names of Hara (Śiva) should end in Isvara and the names of the Sun-god should end in Mihira [133]

It is said that the names of the images of other gods should end in the name of the particular god In the Adhiraṅga a second minute (Sūksma) image should be made [134]

It should be made of clay and painted with painting Its Adhivāsana, dwelling should be made in a sacred place [135]

The Adhivāsana should be done for one year, or for six months, or for a fortnight, or for twelve nights, or for a week, or for three days or for one day and one night according to the Adhivāsana It should be done with great songs, dances and decorations [136-137]

The Adhivāsana should be made by announcing one's own name and every day it should be accompanied with distribution of food and the fire worship [138]

Then the installation should be made suitable to the time of the year When done in an auspicious time, it brings supreme prosperity [139]

6 King ' 6 great king ' when it is done at the auspicious time, it brings prosperity to the King, the people, the installer and similarly to the astrologer and the priest [140]

The installation properly done by the persons knowing sāstra at an auspicious time, and with all good qualities (Sulaksanā) it brings happiness to the people, it is commandable and pleasing due to boon [141]

In the third part of Śrī Viṣṇudharmottara during the discourse between Mārkaṇḍeya and Vajra, thus ends the Adhyāya 96 entitled "The characteristics of installation of the image showing the time "

---

## ADHYĀYA 97

Vajra said 6 Lord, by what procedure the installation is done ?

Mārkaṇḍeya said Now, in the installation of the god-there are sixteen Rtvijas-priests

They are the astrologer, the architect, (Kalpakah), the performer, (Vācakah) the reciter, Ardhabāhu knowing the Yajurveda, Hotā-one who gives oblations and who knows Yajurveda and guards the substances, the knower of Rgveda, the knower of Yajurveda the knower of Sāmaveda, and the knower of Atharvaveda These four, holding the four Kalasas (pitchers) one of them holds the image and the other is the expert of doing the rituals of the gods The third one safe guards the mantras and the substances These the holder of the Kalasas should be helped by Sakti All these Rtvijas-Priests should not be without a limb, Akapilā (with tawny hair) ā-kekarā (squint eyed) and having more limbs They should be having firm faith in their own Sāstras, gentle and should not be the son of a widow, who has remarried Then on an auspicious day, the Yajamāna (the host should be initiated by the Rtvijas, who are nicely bathed, whose (body) limbs are smeared, who are wearing flower garlands, living oblation with pious hands and singing with rich voice He (the host) should have taken bath and should have put on rich garments At his place smeared with cow-dung the Brāhmanas should tie the Kankana with white string Having tied the Siddhārtha-Kavacāh with white cloth, the Pratisara Kankana (wrist bracelet) should be tied on the right hand Since then drinks and wine sex-enjoyment, anger, envy, pride, and uncivilised things should be abandoned till the time of the installation and one week after that And there should be-

Installation should be done on the seventh day from the day of the initiation Till then the host should have self-control. [1]

He should observe Brahmacharya, he should eat the oblation, he should win anger, he should not have envy 6 King of Kings, he should sleep on ground, and similarly he should bathe every day [2]

In the third part of Sri Viṣṇudharmottara during the discourse between Mārkaṇḍeya and Vajra, thus ends the Adhyāya 97 entitled Dīkṣā (initiation) at the rituals of installation

---

## ADHYĀYA 98

Mārkaṇḍeya said Now begins the characteristics of the temple Or in front on a very pious part of the land (Sthandīlā-trayam) three altars should be prepared with the clay of the said colour and the sand Then the three altars should be smeared with the cow-dung, not fallen (on the ground) In the middle of the land the perfume should be sprinkled On its right hand side there should be the altar of the sacrifice On its north there should be the altar of the sacrifice On the Adhivāsana-Sthandīlā-the altar of the Adhivāsana (Preliminary consecration-Pratiṣṭhā-of an image), four Toranas, arched doors should be made All the altars should be four sided, four hands high and one third of the arched-doors in width Two altars should be adorned by the top arches reaching all sides (of the altars) Bringing praiseworthy other trees for the arch door (Torana), by the rituals described for Vana-Praveśa-entering the forest, they should be put at the altar The Torana should be made from two woods or from the wood, that is not bent All the Toranas should be of equal measure At the first it should be made on the west of the Adhivāsana The front Kalpaka should not be the master

The Sāttvata should be in the front, on the south of the Kalpaka On his south the priest knowing Rgveda (Rgvedavit) should be there in the front On the left of the Kalpaka in the front host should be there On his left, in the front, the Ardhabāhu priest knowing Yajurveda (Yajurvedavit) should be sitting on the altar and facing the south On the altar the priest knowing the Sāmaveda (Sāmavedavit) should be on the east on the altar facing the west On his right there should be the (Vamśavādaka) the flute player On his south there should be the Vācaka the reciter On his north the singer The musical instrument players and the dancers (Vādanaka-Nartaka) should be at the back On the south of the

altar the knower of the Atharvaveda (Atharvavedavit) should sit facing the north Hotā, the priest giving oblation should sit facing the front at the Homa (Sthandila) the altar for the sacrifice, on the west of the Āgāra-place Near the Caturasra there should be Āgāras, measuring a hand, and having Mekhalās On its north there are the guard of the mantras and the guard of the substances—Mantra-rakṣitā and Dravyarakṣitā—On the Ijyā Sthandila, the altar for the sacrifice the Sāttvatas made for Ijyā should be there On its south the guards of the mantra and the guards of the substances should sit facing north Else-where the Sāmvatsara should sit observing the time with great concentration There is no rule for the architect. Then the Kalasas made of gold silver copper and clay or Akālamula and filled firmly, with the waters of sacred places all the vegetations, all the fragrant things all the seeds all the jewels, gold, sandal and fruits and smeared halfway upto the mouth, and whose neck is tied with a flower-garland should be placed before the Kalpaka Before placing the Kalasa, in the middle of the altar a lotus with eight petals should be drawn Then the beginning of the rituals should be done Sasiraskā Gāyatrī with Pranava in beginning should be chanted Omkāra, Namaskāra and the Karmā rambha beginning of the ritual is auspicious Then sometimes stotra is sung Then with Raksoghna-Mantras the siddhārthaka (Sarsava) white mustard should be laid in all the directions and the corners After that beginning from the east the Toranas should be laid in a wooden beam dug twelve Angulas (about a feet) deep The Toranas are the four Yugas (ages) On the east is Krta Yuga, on the south is Tretā, on the west is Dvāpara and on north (Uttara) is Kali Yuga Thus laying the Toranas all the four Toranas should be wrapped with fresh fragrant Darbha, dried leaves and the flower garland Then on the Toranas flags should be placed On the east should be Garuda with yellow flag, on the south Tāla with blue flag, on the west the Makara with white flag and on the north Rśya with the red flag On the two sides of Garuda there should be Gadā and Cakra—the mace and the wheel, on the sides of Tāla should be Hala and Musala—the

plough and the club, on the sides of Makara Dhanu and Bāna—the bow and arrow, and on the sides of Rśya there should be sword and the shield. In the middle of the Toranas in the area of the fire there should be a chatra-umbrella. On the southwest corner should be Vajayanti Patākā (banner) on the north-west there should be a flag, on the north-east should be a Danda (a stick). On the altar there should be a vitāna (a canopy). On every Torana there should be a bell and a mirror. On Iyyā-sthandila—the altar of the sacrifice there should be a canopy. There on the east should be painted Pratihāras—door keepers Subhadra and Bhadra. On the south there should be painted Āsādha and Yajna-tāta. On the west Jaya and Vijaya and on the north Moda and Pramoda. After doing that Dhruva and Dyau the pole-star and the earth should be illustrated, and Māthura Mantra should be chanted. Then the water of the Kalāśa should be sprinkled by the host and the priest and the Bhoga-things to be offered as sacrifice. Beginning with medicinal herbs from the north-east direction on the timber four arrows with the feather and the sharp end of an arrow (phala) should be carved. Their names are Kandarpa, Saumana, Durdhara, and Śikhara, Indra, Yama, Varuna and Dhanada are their four Lokapālas. At the Niveśana, time of their laying Kāṇḍāt-Kāṇḍāt should be spoken. Then five coloured sūtra-thread should be tied from one section to other saying Kāṇḍāt-kāṇḍa. "The direction should be surrounded with the Pañca-sūtra with five colours is the Samsāra-sūtra made of Pañca-mahābhūta (five chief elements). The blue represents Prthvī (the earth), white the water, red the fire, yellow the air, and the black the sky. While tying it saying "Dūsyā-dusyā" is the mantra, saying, Indrāṇyā-Kīrtitam. The Sūtra is sung by Indrāṇī—the wife of Indra. Thereafter four filled pitchers should be placed on the Kāṇḍa-portions, root, in the space between the altars and four directions. These four should be believed to be the seas. There in the north-east direction the first pitcher (Kumbha) should be installed. Then other should be laid in order. Their names are Sahasravārya, Vimala, Satadhāra and Pramāṇḍana. Gold, Candana, flowers, vegetations and fruits.

should be put in them. The first should be chanted saying 'Śanna Āpa'. The second, saying 'Śanna-Devī', the third saying 'Āpohistha and the fourth saying Idamāpaḥ Pravahata'. Then in the east a vessel full of Lājā (fried grain) should be placed; on south a vessel of Tila, on the west Siddhārtha-Pātra-the vessel of Siddhārtha, on the north the vessel of the Aksata-rice. On every vessel Ābrahman-Brāhmana, should be spoken. Then on the four corners, between the pitchers four lamps should be placed. Beginning from Isāna they are Vedas, Rg, Yajur, Sāma and Atharva. At their Niveśana 'Tejosi Śukram' should be said. Then, again Siddhārtha white mustard-Sarsava should be strewn with 'Raksoghna' mantras. "Ye devāḥ purassadam" should be chanted, and the advent of the Varāha, the bear incarnation" should be read; Śrī-Sūkta should be sung. Then with that Pañcagavya (the five sacred things of the cow) the place should be purified. And the Toranas also for the purification of the image (arcā) it should be applied. Only that is done, in the Brhat-snapana (great-bath) anything else is not done).

Now the Arghya-

6 the best of the kings when Torana-Vinyāsa laying of the Torana is done like this all the obstacles are cut down and the highest prosperity is produced. [1]

In the third part of Śrī Viṣṇudharmottara during the discourse between Mārkaṇḍeya and Vajra thus ends the Adhyāya 98 entitled 'Placing the Toranas in the rituals of installations

---



Mārkaṇḍeya said Now making of Panca Gavya is described. There the milk of the brown cow, the curd of the black cow, the ghrta (purified butter) of the Nīla-cow, the cow-dung of the white cow the urine of the reddish cow should be taken chanting the Gāyatrī Mantra While chanting 'Gandha-dvāra' the Gomaya should be taken chanting 'Āpyāyasva' the milk chanting, 'Dadhikrāvna' the curd chanting, 'Ghrtavati Bhuvanānām' the ghee (purified butter) chanting, 'Devasyatva' Kusodakam (the water of the kuśa) darbha-grass, should be taken and mixed while chanting 'Aghmarsana' mantra and Gāyatrī mantra should be chanted Then with that Pancagavya the temple should be purified The Toranas and the Arcā (Saucārtha) best for purifying should be fixed In the great bath (sprinkling) the same may be used or the other may be imagined Now the preparation of the Arghya (oblation) to god It should be made in a silver vessel from Sankha-the concha Bilva, Lotus, Uśra, the roots of Darbha grass, Dūrvā, Kṣīra (milk) Aksata (rice) Siddhārthaka (white mustard the Sarsava) and from the whole rice (Tandulā) It should be floated in the water The Aksamantra Ratha - - -" etc should be chanted Purifying substances Drupadam Pavitram (Kusa-grass) and Sankha Mani Śrī-Sūkta and Kāṇḍāt-Kāṇḍa - - - etc should be chanted Then in an auspicious sound, nicely smeared with sandal pulp etc In nicely worshipped vessel (Svarcīta) the Pādya the water for washing feet-should be prepared "

6 King ! it should be prepared by chanting three Rcs beginning with 'Hiranya-Varne', or by three mantras 'Āpo hi s̥tha' etc or by Sanno devī' etc [1]

And there the Vācaka-announcer should tell Tīrtha-māhātmya muttamam (the best greatness of the sacred place) with holy Brahma-Sukra Sūtra [2]

In the third part of Śrī Viṣṇudharmottara, during the discourse between Mārkaṇḍeya and Vajra, thus ends the Adhyāya 99 entitled "The procedure of preparing Arghya, Pādya and Pañca gavya for the rituals of the installation.

---

## ADHYĀYA 100

Mārkaṇḍeya said Now (I tell you how) Arcā-Sauca the paste for sanctifying the image is prepared The Sauca should be Mr̥m̥maya or citra-Karma-Kṛta In both śauca Darbha should be used and adhvāsana should be done The name of the Sauca should be given from the material used It should be prepared in the beginning. Then it should be prepared with water and with Gāyatrī Second is prepared with clay chanting 'Ākrāmya' etc This is another mantra .

6 the earth ! which is trodden by the horses, by the chariots and by Viṣṇu, kindly remove the sin of my bad deeds that I might have done [1]

6 earth ! you were lifted by the Varāha-the Boar incarnation and by Kṛṣṇa with hundred hands, you give me the desired thing and fulfill my all desires [2]

The third is prepared from the Bhasma-ashes chanting "Bhūtistvam"-etc The fourth with cowdung chanting 'Iha Gāvah' etc The fifth is made of Gaura-Sarsapas, chanting Viṣṇoḥ Pṛṣṭhamasī etc, the sixth by Bṛhat-Sāmnā tretāgni-bhasma, the seventh by Pañcagavya chanting 'Śākvarena' etc, the eighth from Kuṣṭha chanting "Manasaḥ Kāmamāḥkūti" etc the ninth with the water of gold chanting "Hiranya-Varna" etc, the tenth with Darbha-Piṇḍala chanting "Tarasamardī" etc, the eleventh with the sacred clay of the Tīrtha-sacred place, the twelfth with the clay of a river, the thirteenth from the summits of the mountains, the fourteenth from the clay dug out with the horns of the bull, the fifteenth with the clay trodden by and raised by the tail of a horse, the sixteenth with the clay from the Vālmikāgra-the top of a white anthill chanting "Kūsmāṇḍa" etc, the seventeenth with the clay of a sacred place, chanting the mantra "Pṛthivīdevī" etc, the eighteenth with the clay of a lake chanting "Brahmaja-

jñāna etc, the nineteenth with the curd chanting 'Dadhi-Krāvna' etc the twentieth with Ghrta (purified butter) chanting 'Ghrta-vata' etc , the twenty-first with jewels chanting "Aghamarsana" etc, Thus purifying one-self with these twentyone Saucas, the Parama-pāvana- best purifying mantras should be chanted

The Aghamarsana made by gods instantly purifies

These things are the purifier-Kūsmānda the goddess Durgā and Sarasvatī, cāndrāyana vrata, a bull, the path of the chariot of Vāsudeva, Purusa-Sūkta, or Sṛī Sūkta, Apsaram, and the Abhi-jñā and similarly the sacred life history of a Vaiṣṇava [1-2]

6 King ' after doing purification with the sounds of musical instruments (Vādītras) mixed with Jaya-Sabda (the word victory) and similarly with the dances of the beautiful ladies, in the Arcā of gods Adhivāsana should be done in the way I shall tell you now. [3]

In the third part of Sṛī Viṣṇudharmottara during the discourse between Mārkaṇḍeya and Vajra thus ends the Adhyāya 100 entitled "Arcā-Sauca" (Purification of the image)

---

Mārkaṇḍeya said Now after the Arcā-Sauca (smearing purification of the image) then the purified (Pavitraka) image should do the Adhivāsana (causing a divinity to dwell in an image) A bed having the head towards south or east should be placed, with "Kamala-Karnikāyām dhruvā dyau" mantra Then it should be covered with five bed-sheets of five colours, and "Suddhāvatya" should be chanted Then the cover sheet and the Gandopadhāna-the pillows should be placed chanting. "Yuvā Suvāsā" etc, Then a Garbhamaya Ananta Nāga, with seven heads should be made and he should be put in bed Then the soul (jīva) should be evoked, and Śiva-Saṅkalpa" etc should be chanted Then invoking of Ananta should be done Then after the sacrificial thread with arghya (oblation), sipping the pādya (water for washing feet) then anointing, garland, dīpa and dhūpa and Madhuparka every one should be adored with sāvitra one by one Then the adoring snakes "Namostu Sarpebhyah" etc and "Yoge Yoga" mantra should be chanted or the Māhātmya (greatness) of Ananta should be said Then chanting "Dhruvā dyauh" mantra Śrī-Bhagavad-arcā and Pavitraka should be placed. Then jīva should be evoked, and "Śiva-saṅkalpa" should be chanted Then the Lord should be evoked Then all should be worshipped with placing the knees on the earth and utter Āgatah Bhagavāna (God please come) Then should be worshipped with the sound of śaṅkha, Paṭaha, Bherī and Jaya-(Conch-shell, drums, bugals and victory) Thereafter each lord should be adorned with Arghya, Pādya, Ācamantiya, Anulepana, Mālya, Dhupa, dīpa, madhuparka, Prāpanaka and Mātrā-dāna with sāvitra Then "Svasti na Indra" etc should be chanted After that chanting 'Yuvā Suvāsā' etc. the honourable lord should be covered with two clothes and flowers should be strewn on chanting "Yuñjate mana" etc The siddhārtha -white mustard-should be strewn chanting, "Bodhasca mā prati-

bodhaśca", "Prādurbhāvān" etc. should be spoken. Adhivāsana should be done in this way. When the lord is made to rest adhivāsita—having put the Vēdi, the altar, on the Arcāsthandila (the altar of Arcā) the Āsanāni Pādapiṭhāni (the seats and the foot-rests) and the altars and the Āsanas should be purified by Arcā-Sauca Vidyāna (the procedure of Arcā-Śauca). Then Sāttvatas should be worshipped with Śankara-gītokta-vidhi. Simultaneously at the time of oblation Hotā should purify the homa, vēdi and āsanas of the place of sacrifice according to the rules.

When the adhivāsana is done every day Ijyāhoma should be done.

Till the installation is complete the worship is done with singing and dancing. It is Adhivāsana, which I have illustrated to you ! [1]

In the third part of Śrī Viṣṇudharmottara, during the discourse between Mārkaṇḍeya and Vajra, thus ends the Adhyāya 101 entitled "Adhivāsana" requesting a divinity to dwell in an image.

---

## ADHYĀYA : 102

Markandeya said :

I invoke the Jiva in form of Bija, the seed of the Lord who lies in everything. He dwells in body in five ways, and again he is in five forms [1]

In the Vāyavya or air form he always dwells in five ways. Similarly he dwells in five ways in Āgneya fire-form. [2]

I invoke the lord who dwells in vāruna water-form in five ways. He is again there in five ways in the form of the Bhūta-creature [3]

I invoke Paramātmā, who is very fierce and the lord of the worlds-Jagadīśvara, who lies in everything, who holds everything, who is the master of all and who is invincible [4]

I invoke the lord who is the master who is very minute, Varada-(giving boon), and Kestrajña, who is the lord whom all the worlds bowed down in past and will bow down in future. [5]

I invoke the lord who is the support of all the good qualities who is the birth place of the world, and greater than the greatest. 6 jiva deva-the god in the form of jiva (the soul) I pray you come and personally enter in this Arcā-Pratimā [6]

6 faultless, 6 the lord of all the gods make it sajīva-(living). This is Arghya, Pādya and Dhūpa, kindly accept them. [7]

In the third part of Śrī Viṣṇudharmottara, during the discourse between Mārkaṇḍeya and Vajra, thus ends the Adhyāya 102 entitled "Jīvāvāhana-the evoking of the soul."

---

Vajra said 6 the best amongst Bhrgus ! kindly tell me the invocation of the gods, by which mantras invoked gods stay near [1]

Mārkaṇḍeya said 6 the best of Yādava ! I tell you the invocations of gods Some are avoided and some are told again [2]

At the end of all invocations half the verse (one line) Idama-  
rghyam ca pādyam ca dhūpoyam pratigṛhyatām (here is the Arghya  
oblation pādyā—the water for washing feet and dhūpa fragrant  
incense) Kindly accept them [3]

I invoke two gods Nāsatyas, the sons of the sun 6 having  
great luck, 6 both the Asvins giving boon kindly come [4]

I shall invoke eight Vasu gods giving boon 6 Vasu gods,  
who destroy the sin and give boons kindly come. [5]

I shall invoke the Visve devāḥ gods, who have wonderful  
lustre 6 mighty all Visve devās giving boons kindly come [6]

I invoke the Angirasa gods having wonderful lustre 6 Angi-  
rasa gods having great might and valour (Parākrama) kindly  
come [7]

I shall invoke the Rudras having three eyes and the bulls as  
vehicle 6 auspicious Rudras giving boons to all the three worlds,  
kindly come [8]

I shall invoke the Ādityās who have shining lustre and who  
give boons 6 all the suns giving boons and having shining halo,  
kindly come [9]

I shall invoke Bhrgu gods shining with the lustre of the  
penance (Tapa) 6 Bhrgu gods giving boons and having shining  
lustre, kindly come [10]



I shall invoke the Maruta gods having great lustre 6 Maruta gods ' The lords of the worlds, and the giver of boons, kindly come [11]

I shall invoke all the Divaukasah (gods living in the heaven) 6 all the gods desirous of Mantra and Pūjā (worship), kindly come [12]

I shall invoke the Dantyas-(demons) having great might and valour 6 my religious minded demons, the followers of the lord of gods ' kindly come [13]

I shall invoke the Gandharvas having beauty and money 6 Gandharvas giving boons and taking any desired form, kindly come [14]

I shall invoke all the Yaksas with the Dhanādhyaṁśa (the treasurer of gods-Kubera) 6 my Yaksas wellknown in the three worlds, and giver of the boons, kindly come [15]

Similarly I shall invoke the Rāksasas having various weapons 6 brave Rāksasas, the followers of the lord of gods kindly come [16]

Similarly, I shall invoke the group of Vidyādhara 6 different Vidyādhara moving in the sky, please come [17]

Similarly I shall invoke the kinnaras who are the singer of the gods 6 Kinnaras having charming voice and beautiful eyes all of you, kindly come [18]

I shall invoke the Nāgas, serpent-demons moving in the regions of serpents 6 my serpents giving boon and wellknown in the three worlds, kindly come [19]

Similarly I shall invoke the auspicious Apsarās 6 my very lucky and lustrous damsels of the gods, kindly come [20]

I shall invoke the wives of Tridasa-gods You all giving boons and having the hot lustre of sun-dial having the rays of gold, Kindly come [21]

Similarly I shall invoke the boon giving mothers of the gods  
You all auspicious and giving boons and happiness, and having  
nice garments, kindly come [22]

I shall invoke the Pitrs-ancestors having minute forms 6 you  
all Pitrs living in a group, kindly come separately [23]

I shall invoke very mighty and invincible suparnās-(Garudas)  
6 Suparnās shining with the lustre of Visnu kindly come [24]

I shall invoke all the Prajāpatīs who give boons Let all the Praj-  
ādhyaśās the maintainers of the three worlds, kindly come [25]

I shall invoke Devendras, the chief of gods of the world 6  
my Devanātha giving boons and taking the desired form, kindly  
come, [26]

I shall invoke the Manus who is lord over the world 6 all  
Manus ' whose impurities are destroyed by penance, kindly  
come [27]

I shall invoke the medical herbs who are auspicious and who  
maintain all the creatures 6 the medical herbs who are auspici-  
ous and fulfilling desired things of all, kindly come [28]

I shall invoke the sages whose lustre is brightened by Tapa-  
penance 6 all my sages who are siddhas and having bright lustre,  
kindly come [29]

I shall invoke the Sailān (mountains) along with all the medi-  
cines 6 all my mountains holding this earth, and the lord of the  
non-moving things, kindly come [30]

I shall invoke the trees having different forms 6 all the trees  
having speed of mind and wind, Kindly come [31]

Similarly I shall invoke the Pātālas-(under worlds where the  
senses go 6 Pātālas the praised places of Daityas-the demons,  
you all kindly come [32]

I shall invoke all the islands, the sustainers of all the wonderful things. 6 the islands, the dwelling place of the people and beloved of the world, kindly come. [33]

I shall invoke the beautiful worlds which have become the living places of all 6 all the worlds loved by all, kindly come. [34]

Similarly I shall invoke the seas, loved by the world. 6 Seas, sustainer of the Rasas and loved by the world, kindly come [35]

I shall invoke the rains, upon which all the creatures depend. 6 the rains, charming to all, you come here. [36]

Similarly I shall invoke all the four seas. 6 all the seas holding the water, kindly come soon to me. [37]

I shall invoke the rivers who are the mothers of the world and bestower of the boon 6 you all the rivers auspicious and remover of all the sins, kindly come. [38]

I shall invoke all the group of clouds. 6 the clouds with great fortune, you all kindly come soon to me. [39]

I shall invoke the Piśācas-(goblins) who go every where, 6 the Piśācas who can take any form you all kindly come to my place. [40]

I shall invoke the associates of Skanda-(Kārtikeya) 6 the associates of Skanda-having different forms, kindly come. [41]

Similarly, I shall invoke the associates of the gods. 6 the associates of the gods having various forms, kindly come to my place. [42]

Similarly I shall invoke all the associates of Hara-(Śiva). 6 you associates of Śiva-Śankara, having various forms, kindly come. [43]

Similarly I shall invoke the Mātṛs the mothers of the world. 6 you auspicious goddess Mātṛs, bestowers of the boons, and going every where, kindly come. [44]

I shall invoke the Grahas-planets, who are the masters of all the worlds 6 planets shining and the leaders of the world, you all kindly come [45]

Similarly I shall invoke the Naksatras-(constellations) the bestowers of the boons 6 Naksatras the leaders of the world, kindly you all come [46]

I shall invoke all the very beautiful directions, east and others 6 you all the direction bringing happiness to all the creatures, you all kindly come [47]

I shall invoke all the divine auspicious Vithis-(orbits)-having nine planets 6 you all Vithis adorned with grahas and Naksatras you all kindly come [48]

I shall invoke the Muhūrtas-auspicious times having minute form 6 you Muhurtas, auspicious parts of Kāla-the time, you come soon [49]

I shall invoke six seasons which are lords of this world, 6 you all seasons the initiator of Kāla-cakra (the wheel of Time), you come [50]

Similarly I shall invoke Panca-Samvatsarān (five years) 6 you all years the initiator of kālacakra, come [51]

I shall invoke four yugas(ages) having bright lustre 6 you ages having four images you all kindly come [52]

I shall invoke fourteen Manus, 6 Manvantaras living till the life-time of Tridasa-gods, kindly come [53]

I shall invoke kāla, the time god who has auspicious parts 6 lord Kāla, the lord of the gods, Janārdana, kindly come [54]

I shall invoke the Vedās having the form of sacrifice 6 Veda gods, bestower of boons and having many forms, Kindly come [55]

I shall invoke the Graha-(planets) particularly in the place of all Vidyās-(the learning) You all come here for the benefit of the people [56]

I shall invoke the (hundreds of) weapons which are worth looking and shining. 6 the weapons, the best adoration of armies, kindly come soon. [57]

I shall invoke the missiles, which are capable of going in all the three worlds. 6 missiles, spreading the bridge of religion You all kindly come here. [58]

I shall invoke Veda-Śāstras in many ways. 6 the Veda-Śāstras ready to protect the world, kindly come [59]

I shall invoke, the conveyances of Tridaśa \* gods. you all kindly come with Tridaśa-conveyances. [60]

I shall invoke the Nāgas, very mighty sons of gods 6 you best Nāgas brought near by gods, kindly come very quickly. [61]

I shall invoke the treasures-(Nidhis) beginning with Śankha and Padma-(the conch and the lotus). 6 you treasures having the same attitude to all people, kindly come. [62]

6 the lord of the Yadu dynasty if one god is to be invoked from the whole group, the proper invocation Mantra for that one should be done here. [63]

In the third part of Śrī Viṣṇudharmottara during the discourse between Mārkaṇḍeya and Vajra, thus ends the Adhyāya 103 entitled "The invocation of a group of gods in the rituals of installation".

---

\* 3×10 (=30) (in round number for 3×11 deities, 12 Ādityas, 8 Vasus, 11 Rudras and 2 Aśvins. cf R,V. ix 92, 24)

---

## ADHYĀYA : 104

Markandeya said :

I invoke god Lord Brahmā, the cause of the creation, maintenance and the destruction of this world. [1]

(I invoke) the four Vedas having four mouths who is the lord of four castes the shelter of four Āśramas, the bestower of boons and Bhūtabhāvana (causing-the welfare of living beings). [2]

(I invoke) the lord of this world Padma-Yoni-(Brahmā)-born from the lotus, from whom this world was born, Yajña-sacrifice was born, he was born of himself. He is the lord of this world, the sustainer of the sacrifices and invincible. [3]

(I invoke) the supreme god-Head who is the lord of the sacrifices, the incarnation of the sacrifice, and the only cause of the three worlds and who is omnipresent, gentle and the bestower of boons. [4]

(I invoke) Hum who is the master of all the creatures born in past and yet to be born, who is eternal and known by yoga, O Lord Brahman, kindly come for the expansion of the host. [5]

I invoke the god of gods, god Hutāśana. (the fire). Here is Arghya, here is Pādyā and here is Dhūpa. Kindly accept them. [6]

I invoke the lord who is the cause of the creation, maintenance and destruction of this world, the image of god, its support and the mouth of gods. [7]

I invoke Vibhāvasu having the flag in the form of smoke-(Dhūmaketu) who has the reddish brown eyes and reddish brown Jaṭā- (the matted hair), who moves in the vehicle of the parrots and who is adorned with all the ornaments. [8]

(I invoke) Him who can go every where, who is the bestower of boons, who lives in the stomach (Jathara) of the creatures and who is the image of lustre and invincible and who has seven tongues and great strength [9]

I invoke the Jāta-Vedas (all-possessor) Bhānu who is the indescribable part of Viṣṇu, who had seven flames and who is Acyuta-(imperishable) and seven fire woods of seven sages [10]

6 you purifier and kind one, giving strength and increasing of the prosperity of [the devotees, Kindly strengthen the Yājaka and the Yajamāna-the sacrificer and the host in every way [11]

Here is Arghya and here is Pādya and Dhūpa kindly accept them

6 the best of the Kings! now I shall tell (you) about the invocation of the other gods [12]

At the end of the invocation of all (the gods) this sloka is to be recited "kindly enter in this Arcā-(image) nicely made by me with devotion [13]

This is Arghya, this is Pādya and this is incense (Dhūpa). Kindly accept them Now I shall invoke Dhruva who is the lord of the group of all gods, and by whom this Bhacakra is bound and spun with the cord of wind 6 Dhruva who is the lord of gods and who is Kesava whose Vikrama (valour) is un-imaginable [14-15]

I shall invoke the sky the master of the group of all planets, and before whom all the worlds bow down, and which is adorned by hundreds of Vimānas-aerial cars [16]

6 supportless gentle lord sky, the third pada-foot-step of great souled Viṣṇu the god of gods, kindly come to me [17]

I shall invoke the endless, vast upward direction which is not understood, very deep and adorned by hundreds of aerial-cars [18]

I invoke the downward direction which is protected by Sesa, and which is endless, vast, spotless and doing good to others

O unknowable, supportless, very fortunate goddess without the rays of sun or moon, and worshipped by the Siddhas, kindly come here [19-20]

O great mighty, under direction which is very deep, vast, huge and adorned by many places, where multitudes of Nāgas, Daityas and serpents dwell, and which is full of many jewels and having many forms kindly come to me. [21-22]

Now I shall invoke Divākara-the sun god having thousand rays and who is invincible and the incarnation of light and who bestows boons, and removes the fear of the devotees O god the lord of the world and the master of Rgveda, Sāmaveda, and Yajurveda, kindly come [23]

I invoke Lord Āditya, the lamp of the three worlds who destroys all the diseases and who sleeps in the waters [24]

I invoke god Varuna, who is like smooth Vaidūrya-emerald-(gem) and having great splendour O the god of waters and lord of group of sea-monsters (yādogana), Maheśvara and always served by the groups of Nāgas, Daityas and serpents, kindly come here [25-26]

I invoke the moon god having cold rays, who is the lord of nectar, master of the vegetation and the head of Dviyas and delightful to eyes O moon god, having a hare-marked and the spot like a deer, kindly come [27]

Now I shall invoke Lord Bhauma-(Mars) who is the incarnation of light, who is very difficult to be pleased and who is merciful to the devotees and always worshipped by all nakshatras who is the image of auspiciousness, unpredicable crooked and having red light O Lord Bhauma having light like a burning



charcoal, kindly come. Everything good or bad on this earth is in your hands. [28-30]

I shall invoke Skanda, having six heads, who bestows boons, and who destroys the armies of the enemies of gods, and increases the joy of Pārvatī. 6 god Kārtikeya, the lord of this world and having the peacock as the carrier, O Kumāra whose thief was Mahiṣāsura, kindly come today. [30-31]

I shall invoke Budha impartor of Knowledge the lord of this world, and belonging to the moon the Chief of the planets, the image of lustre and very difficult to please. O Budha, wishing to conquer the world and Janārdana, with great strength and great lustre and strong-armed, kindly come. [32-33]

I shall invoke Visnu, who holds Śankha, Cakra and Gadā (the conch shell, the wheel and the club) who is as dark as the Atasi flower, who wears yellow garments and who is infallible. 6 the lord of gods, of immeasurable Nārāyaṇa the creator of mankind and holding great Śārṅga bow, kindly come. [34-36]

I shall invoke god Śakra (Indra) the lord of all the gods, having huge hands, holding Vajra in the hand and busy, in the welfare of the cows and the Brahmins. 6 god having a thousand eyes, O the destroyer of the armies of the enemies of gods, O moving on Airāvata elephant, O delighter of the heart of Śaci, kindly come. [36-37-38]

I shall invoke Jiva who is the priest of the lord of gods, and Brhaspati, expert in Veda and Vedāṅga and having large sentences. 6 fortunate Jiva living on this earth, kindly come, the increase of crop is in your hands, and you increase the prosperity. [38-39-40]

I shall invoke goddess Pārvatī, Umā bestower of boon who is the beloved wife of Hara, (Śankara) who has beautiful limbs and who increases the prosperity. 6 goddess, the mother of the world and the delighter of Menā's heart, 6 pious, gentle and always loving the devotees and giving boons, kindly come. [40-41-42]

I shall invoke Sukra, (venus) the lord of this world, and born in Bhṛgu family, who is eternal and the head of all the wealth, and with shining lustre due to penance. 6 fortunate lord Śukra giving boon, and always the controller of the years, kindly come for sixteen kinds of arcā-worship. [42-43-44]

I shall invoke the god Prajādhyakṣa having no sins, who is merciful to the devotees, and the creator of the people. 6 Prajādhyakṣa, creating people, kindly come, in your hands are the increase or decrease of the people. [45-46]

I shall invoke Sauri (Saturn) who moves very slowly and who is infallible and invincible ascetic-(Tapasvī) removing the fears of the devotees. 6 god having sharp rays and showing likes or dislikes kindly come. You are unknowable and auspicious and inauspicious things on this earth and pertaining to the king are in your hands. [46-47-48]

I shall invoke god Gaṇeśa having the head of an elephant, and who is the controller of hurdles, destroyers of hurdles and dear to the heart of Pārvatī. O god Gaṇādhyakṣa the head of Ganas, having a long belly and huge hands, kindly come. 6 the lord of all the people, the achievements of the works lie in your hands. [48-49-50]

I shall invoke Rāhu, the king of the demons who became a planet and who is brave, who got a boon from Keśava, and who burnt his sins with Penance. 6 the best of demons, bestower of the boons and having unimaginable valour, the image of the darkness, invincible and having the garments of inverted sky, Kindly come. [50-51-52]

I invoke god Viśvakarmā, who is infallible and the establisher of all the Śilpa (sculpture) of all the gods. 6 the best of gods, always establishing the sculpture, and unthinkable one, kindly come. O the lord of all, the results of all are in your hands. [52-53-54]

I shall invoke Ketu, the banner of all gods He knows the sacred scriptures, knows all religions and gives fearlessness to the devotee [55]

6 Dhūmaketu, (the comet) having the lustre like the fire whose flames are terrible and spread out and the destroyer of the sins if worshipped, kindly come here [56]

I shall invoke auspicious Kṛttikā worshipped by the gods 6 ordinary auspicious goddess, the eldest daughter of Dakṣa, kindly come [57]

I invoke Rohiṇī the dear wife of the moon, O Rohiṇī, knowing religion, bestower of boons and beautiful due to fixed actions kindly come [58]

I invoke Ilvīlā, the dear wife of the moon O goddess Ilvīlā, bestower of boons and beautiful with gentle actions, kindly come. [59]

I shall invoke Rudra having three eyes, and a trident in the hand O Śaṅkara, the soul of everyone and the lord of great Ganas kindly come [60]

I shall invoke Ārdrā Nakṣatra (constellation) called Bāhu 6 Ārdrā, having all beautiful limbs and terrible as Rudra, kindly come [61]

I shall invoke Aditi, who has burnt the sins by Tapa (penance) 6 the mother of Ādityas 6 goddess knowing religion and observing great Vratas (vow), kindly come [62]

I shall invoke the star Punarvasu, knowing religion 6 Punarvasu fulfilling Cara-Karma, the work of Mars and action of Astrology (Cara-Karma-Prasādhaka), kindly come here [63]

I shall invoke Pūṣya constellation called Kṣīpra 6 fortunate Pūṣya kindly come and increase the Pōṣa (nourishment) everywhere [64]

I shall invoke the serpents who can move in endless three worlds 6 serpents ! kindly come from every where Let your form be gentle [65]

I invoke Āslesā, who increases the Śrī of the devotees, O terrible and victory giving, kindly come here [66]

I shall invoke Pitṛs having material form 6 imperishable Pitṛs enjoying the oblations of Sudhā-nectar, kindly come soon

I shall invoke Maghā, which is terrible constellation due to Anjāsā (velocity) 6 fortunate goddess, cutting all the sins, kindly come to me [67-68]

I shall invoke Bhaga, who increases the goodluck of the devotees 6 the best god, inconceivable lord Bhaga, kindly come [69]

I shall invoke the best Pūrva-Phālguna 6 fortunate god, fulfilling the acts of planets, kindly come [70]

I shall invoke the Aryamn-Āditya who is the treasure of lustre 6 Aryama, destroying the sins of devotees, kindly come here [71]

I shall invoke the auspicious best Uttarā Phālguna 6 fortunate immovable goddess having beautiful limbs, kindly come [72]

I shall invoke Hasta (constellation) of the Sun family which is quick due to velocity 6 Sāvitra, knowing religion and destroying the sins of devotees kindly come [73]

I shall invoke god Tvastā, having bright lustre 6 lord Tvastā ready to maintain people, kindly come to me [74]

I shall invoke attractive Citrā, who has variegated beauty O Citrā who bestows boons and fulfills gentle works, kindly come [75]

I shall invoke Vāyu the wind who can go everywhere and who has shining lustre. 6 god Vāyu dear to all the creatures and the world, kindly come. [76]

I shall invoke Svāti, whose light increases day by day, 6 goddess Svāti very nice in the work of moving, kindly come here. [77]

I shall invoke Indra and Agni together, who have bright lustre. 6 Indra the lord of the world kindly come, and, 6 Agni giving victory come here. [78]

I invoke the best Viśākhā, who has terrible light. 6 auspicious and common goddess Viśākhā, you kindly come here. [79]

I shall invoke god Mitra having shining rays of light. 6 fortunate Mitra ! kindly come and destroy the sins of the devotees. [80]

I shall invoke the best Anurādhā giving boons. O Anurādhā adorned with gentle works, kindly come. [81]

I have described the invocation of Śakra. Now O king hear that of Jyesthā. I shall invoke constellation, which has the power of Śakra. 6 terrible Jyesthā having beautiful eyes, you come. [82-83]

I shall invoke god Nīrti, before whom the brave bow down. 6 god having ugly eyes, and great strength and valour, kindly come. [83-84]

I shall invoke Mūla constellation which is terrible and vast. 6 Mūla having great luck and giving fearlessness to the devotees, kindly come. [84-85]

I shall invoke waters (Āpah), which are auspicious bestowing boons and going everywhere. 6 (Āpah) waters called Pūrvāṣādhā terrible and giving boons. [85-86]

I shall invoke the best which is called Abhijit. 6 highly honourable and the first one (Dhiṣṇya-varisṭhādyā), completing the work very quickly, kindly come. [87]

I shall invoke the best Sravana fulfilling every desire. 6 Aśvattha doing the cara-Karma (moving action), kindly come. [88]

I shall invoke the Saśivallabha (dear to the moon), which is the most honourable (Dhiṣṇya) 6 Dhaniṣṭha performing moving action you come here. [89]

I shall invoke the auspicious best named Śatabhiṣā O Śatabhiṣā nice at moving action, kindly come. [90]

I invoke Rudra, unborn who has not got one leg, and who bestows boons. O Rudra having trident as the supreme weapon and bestowing boons, kindly come. [91]

I shall invoke the best Pūrvabhadrapadā. 6 Pūrvabhadra-padā, performing terrific works, kindly come. [92]

I invoke Āhīrbudhnya Rudra who is very fortunate. 6 Āhīrbudhnya adorned with big matted hair kindly come. [93]

I shall invoke Dhruva, that is (Bhādrapadauttara) 'at the north of Bhādrapada. 6 Bhādrapada-uttara, having very great luck, kindly come. [94]

I invoke the god Pūṣana, who destroys sins. 6 Pūṣan destroying all the sins, kindly come here nicely. [95]

I shall invoke the best constellation Revatī which looks very beautiful. O Revatī knowing religion and performing the mild deeds, kindly come. [96]

I shall quickly invoke the constellation called Aśvini. 6 fortunate Aśvini bestower of boons and desired things, kindly come. [97]

I shall invoke Yama-rāja, the king of death, who is Dharma-rāja the king of religion and infallible. 6 the best of religious persons Vaivasvata having huge hands, kindly come. [98]

I shall invoke the terrible constellation named Bharani O Bharani having good luck and beautiful look, kindly come [99]

I shall invoke Prāci, who is the ornament of the sunrise O goddess Pūrva bestowing boon and performing good deeds kindly come [100]

I shall invoke the south-east direction giving boon O south-east beloved of Agni (the fire) giving boon, kindly come [101]

I shall invoke the clever south direction O south direction very clever in doing all the deeds you come here [102]

I invoke auspicious south-west direction 6 goddess Nairṛti continuously increasing prosperity, kindly come [103]

I invoke Vārūṇī (west) direction always giving boon O goddess Pāścīma (west) the beloved of Varuna bestowing boon kindly come [104]

I shall invoke the Vāyavya, or Pāścimottarā direction 6 Vāyavya (Pāścimottarā) North-west direction bestowing boon kindly come [105]

I invoke god lord Vaiśravaṇa who gives wealth O king of kings, the lord of all the sacrifices, kindly come [106]

I shall invoke the uttara-direction who is gentle and who is protected by Dhanada (wealth giver) 6 Uttara giving fruits of all religions, kindly come [107]

I invoke the Prāg-uttara (North-east) direction with its lord 6 fortunate goddess continuously protected by Siva, kindly come [108]

I shall invoke all the seas in the full pitchers 6 four seas the lord of jewels, kindly come here [109]

Let the sea full of waves and ripples come to the full pitcher in the east, in the north-east direction [110]

6 the eastern sea, the abode of the sea-monsters (Nīlaya Yādasām), and full of hundreds of waves and the halo round the rising sun, kindly come soon [111]

And in the Āgneya (pitcher) in the south has come the auspicious reservoir of water on rightside which is the full of the multitude of lustre of jewels [112]

6 the Southern sea, the abode of the sea-monsters and washing the toes of feet of firm summit of Trīkūṭa mountain-by the waves, kindly come [113]

Let the western sea, whose great waters are adorned by the heap of jewels and huge flames, kindly come into the pitcher at the south-west corner pitcher. [114]

6 western sea, adorned by the waves, and very difficult to be looked at due to the disc of the setting sun reflecting in it, kindly come soon [115]

6 lord North sea, which looks like the Kṣīrodadhī (The sea of milk)-due to the reflection of the peaks of the snow-covered mountain, kindly come into the pitcher in the North-west direction [116]

6 very fortunate North-sea having very holy water in it, kindly quickly come here for the prosperity of the host [117]

To the invited gods one should bow putting the heads on the ground and greet by salute then the mantra should be chanted. [118]

Due to your mercy I shall try to worship you as far as possible, so kindly give me Permission [119]

Who can worship you according to the proper procedure ? Without worshipping you who can get great result ? [120]



Then the devotees should do homage according to the ability. I shall bestow them boons if they have taken permission and deserve [121]

6 Dīkṣālas having bright lustre presiding over your own direction kindly remove all the obstacles that arise [122]

This terrible leaders of the trouble makers and the Pisācas hating the sacrifice, are scattered by me with Siddhārthakas, the white mustard (Sarsava) like Vajra Let them go away in other directions [123]

In the third part of Sri Viṣṇudharmottara, during the discourse between Mārkaṇḍeya and Vajra, thus ends the Adhyāya 104 entitled-Deva-Diśām-Āvāhanam-the invocation of gods in different directions

---

## ADHYĀYA 105

Mārkaṇḍeya said :

I shall invoke beautiful Lokās-persons having the form of Haṁsa-the swan. 6 lords living in the form of carriers, kindly come. [1]

I shall invoke the Bull having four legs and the hump. 6 the bull having great luck, O the image of religion bestowing boons kindly come. [2]

I shall invoke Śūla-the trident—who is the support of good qualities and observing great vow 6 fortunate Śūla, the killer of groups of Demon-kings, kindly come. [3]

I shall invoke the god lord Nandiśvara. 6 lord Nandi, to whom all people bow down, kindly come. [4]

I invoke Virabhadra bestowing boons and having great strength. 6 Virabhadra, the lord of great Ganas, kindly come today. [5]

I shall invoke lord Jvara having three legs and three hands. 6 greatly fortunate Jvara, bright with a thousand rays, kindly come. [6]

I shall invoke goddess Bhadrā-Kālī giving happiness. 6 Durgā bestowing boons and worshipped by all the worlds, kindly come. [7]

I shall invoke goddess Paulomī-Śacī bestowing boons. 6 wife of Śakra (Indra), bestowing boons and taking desired form, kindly come. [8]

Similarly I shall invoke the Nāga (elephant) named Airāvata. 6 fortunate elephant of Indra, bringing victory, kindly come. [9]

I shall invoke Vajra which can pierce everything and can come soon 6 Vajra destroying all wicked [persons, Kindly come soon [10]

I shall invoke the horses having the beautiful form of Chanda (metre) 6 horses moving in the sky, today come to me [11]

I shall invoke him who is called Danda (the staff) and having excellent strength 6 Danda having great strength and valour, kindly come soon [12]

I shall invoke Pingala having good great strength 6 Pingala having great strength and the witness of the world kindly come [13]

I shall invoke the flag-simha, having lustre like the sun 6 Dharma descended from Sun, 6 infallible, you quickly come [14]

I shall invoke the goddess Niksubhā taking desired form 6 Niksubhā worshipped by all people, kindly come [15]

I shall invoke Rājñī the beautiful wife of the Sun 6 Rājñī bestower of boons, holding the world and worshipped by all, kindly come [16]

I shall invoke Suvarcasā the wife of the Sun 6 Suvarcasā the wife of the sun, and having lustre, kindly come [17]

I shall invoke chāyā, the wife of the sun having great lustre O goddess Chāyā, thinking what to do and what not to do kindly come [18]

I shall invoke ten horses of the Moon 6 the horses of moon taking desired form, kindly all of you come soon [19]

I shall invoke Kāntī the dear wife of gods-(Trīdaśa) 6 Kāntī auspicious dear wife of the moon, kindly come soon [20]

I shall invoke Sobhā desired by the lords of this world 6 Sobhā the only beautiful woman of all the worlds, kindly come soon [21]

I shall invoke Dina (the day), the destroyer of all darkness,  
O Dina (day) showing whole the world, you kindly come soon.  
[22]

I shall invoke Rātri (the night) bringing happiness to all  
creatures. 6 goddess Rātri bestower of boons upon all the  
creatures, you kindly come. [23]

I shall invoke Sandhyā, the goddess whom the Brahmins  
worship. 6 Sandhyā, bestower of boons and worshipped by all  
creatures, kindly come. [24]

I shall invoke Svāhā-the goddess worshipped by Brahmins.  
O fortunate Svāhā bestower of boon and taking desired form,  
kindly come. [25]

I shall invoke the Vedās taking the form of Śuka 6 Vedās  
living as Dhūmra-ketu (one whose flag is the smoke), kindly come  
in the form of the Carrier (Vāhanatvena). [26]

I shall invoke the buffalo (Mahisa), having great strength and  
valour. 6 killer of all wicked persons, you kindly come here  
quickly. [27]

I shall invoke Danda, worshipped everywhere by those who  
are hit by him. 6 fortunate Danda destroying all bad spirits, kindly  
come. [28]

I shall invoke goddess Dhūmrornā having beautiful eyes. 6  
goddess Dhūmrornā, worshipped by all the worlds kindly come.  
[29]

I shall invoke Kāla, who is worshipped every where by those  
who are hit by him. 6 greatly fortunate kāla controlling all the  
creatures kindly come. [30]

I shall invoke goddess Mrtyu-the death-who takes away  
everything. 6 goddess Mrtyu, going every where and taking desired  
form, you kindly come. [31]

I shall invoke Citragupta, bestowing boon and giving happiness 6 Citragupta, seeing every one equally, kindly come [32]

I shall invoke Virūpākṣa, having great strength 6 Virūpākṣa, the lord of the Nisācara-gana-(the group of Rāksasas moving at night), kindly come [33]

I shall invoke Uṣṭra (the camel) who is well known as Mahāmoha 6 Uṣṭra having a huge body, a huge neck and great speed, kindly come [34]

I shall invoke Gaurī, the beautiful lady of the lord water 6 great goddess Gaurī, bestowing boons and taking desired form, kindly come [35]

I shall invoke the Hansās, the swans highly worshipped by the sea 6 Hansas, bestowing boons, skygoing and grazing only the juice of plants) [36]

I shall invoke pāśa ready to attract all. 6 Pāśa controlling all creatures and fortunate one, kindly come [37]

I shall invoke Gaṅgā, the destroyer of all sins 6 Gaṅgā whose waters are like nectar you come soon [38]

I shall invoke Yamunā, the younger sister of Yama O goddess Yamunā destroying all sins kindly come [39]

I shall invoke Sivā the lustrous wife of Vāyu (the wind) 6 very fortunate goddess Sivā bestowing boons, and taking desired form kindly come [40]

I shall invoke Rddhi who is alluring people 6 Rddhi bestowing boon and taking desired form, come soon [41]

I shall invoke Sīrikā that is very broad 6 Sīrikā giving pleasure to all the creatures, you kindly come [42]

I shall invoke Nara, the carrier of the king of men (Kubera) 6 Nara, whose leader is the king kindly come soon [43]

I shall invoke Śaṅkha (the conch shell), the best of the treasures. 6 Śaṅkha dear to the lord of Dhana-(the wealth), kindly come soon. [44]

I shall invoke Padma the best of treasures. 6 Padma, producing great prosperity, kindly come soon. [45]

I shall invoke Pārvati, the beloved wife of Hara-(Śiva). 6 goddess bestower of all desired things and boons, kindly come soon. [46]

I shall invoke Jayanta the son of Sakra-(Indra), 6 Jayanta the destroyer of all demons, kindly come soon [47]

I shall invoke the lord Puskara, producing wealth and bestowing boons. 6 Puskara bringing out all knowledge, kindly come. [48]

I shall invoke Jyotsnā (the moon light), the only beautiful lady of the three worlds. 6 Jyotsnā bestowing boon and giving happiness to all creatures, kindly come. [49]

Similarly I shall invoke Nala-kūbara. 6 fortunate son of Kubera giving wealth, kindly come. [50]

I shall equally invoke Purojava. 6 fortunate sons of Vāyu having great strength, kindly come. [51]

Similarly, I shall invoke Revanta who is unconquered. O son of the Sun, the bestower of welfare (Kalyāṇa) to the devotees, kindly come. [52]

I shall invoke Dharma-religion, bringing happiness to all worlds. 6 fortunate Dharma, maintaining the worlds, kindly come. [53]

I shall invoke Artha bringing happiness to all the worlds. 6 fortunate Artha, destroyer of all obstacles, kindly come. [54]

I shall invoke Kāma, the result of all deeds. 6 Kāma living in the hearts of all creatures, kindly come soon. [55]

I shall invoke goddess Ratī dear to all the worlds 6 goddess Ratī always victorious and bestowing boons kindly come [56]

I shall invoke Nidrā the sleep, giving happiness to whole the world O Nidrā, bewildering three worlds and giving boon kindly come [57]

I shall invoke the great goddess Sarasvatī bestowing boons O goddess giving all desired things and boons come soon [58]

Similarly I shall invoke lord Dhanvantarī-(the physician of gods) 6 Dhanvantarī, removing all dangers kindly come [59]

I shall invoke Uccaiśravā who is groom O king of horses, sprung from Kṣīra-sāgara kindly come [60]

Whoever is invoked, their mantras should be chanted 6 two Aśvina gods (Aśvinau) holding Darbha grass in hand who is alert, bowing down I carefully worship you [61]

Thus I have told you about a group of invocations which are very auspicious, holy and removing sins

The gods born in the best families when invoked surely come near [62]

In the third part of Sri Viṣṇudharmottara during the discourse between Mārkaṇdeya and Vajra, thus ends the Adhyāya 105 entitled "Lokādyāvāhana-Varnana the description of invoking the various gods beginning with the world (Loka) etc

---

Markandeya said

6 son of Yadu family, in the invocation which I tell you at the end of them, 6 with huge hands the mantra of each of them should be chanted [1]

Here is Arghya, here is Pādya, this is Dhūpa, (incense) kindly accept them and arrange for the welfare of the Yājaka and Yajamāna-(the performer of the sacrifice and the host) [2]

I invoke Lord Vāsudeva, the lord of this world, having the lustre like the cloud full of nectar and having the garments like lightning [3]

I invoke the lord (Brahmā) who has four heads and huge hands, who holds four vedas, who hides four Āśramas and similarly holds four Varnas (castes) [4]

(I invoke) the lord who has four Yugas (ages), four banners, who takes four forms whose body is having four feet, and who is the lord, who thinks in four ways [5]

(I invoke) the lord of gods, who creates the creatures born from the womb, born from the eggs, born of the sweat and born by division [6]

I invoke the All pervading lord (Vibhu), who can go anywhere, who bestows boons, and who is eternal, very minute, yet very huge, unborn, Ātmaśtha living in the self, living outside, living in a distance and living near [7]

(I invoke) the lord of the worlds, who is the resort of qualities, without qualities, beyond qualities and higher qualities, with qualities, and who is unconquerable and a soul devoid of all qualities [8]



I shall invoke the god Pradyumna who is never defeated, who is as dark as the sprouts of Dūrvā grass and whose garments are like the rays of moon [18]

(I invoke him) who is Kāmadeva, the god of love, who fulfills desires, and who is calm, beautiful and of best art, and who in the body of all living things can be understood by mind [19]

6 Pradyumna, the lord of gods and spreading light on the movable and immovable, 6 the incarnation of light, invincible and having the light of crores of suns, kindly come [20]

6 Killer of the groups of enemies of gods, whose middle or the end is not known, and by whose arrows discharged from the bow all the three worlds are struck, kindly come [21]

I shall invoke lord Anuruddha, the master of the worlds who is like the tip of the petal of the lotus, and who is adorned by red garments [22]

(I invoke him) whose road is not obstructed anywhere, who is like burning fire, who is the action of the supreme Isāna and the cause of the causes of the world [23]

6 Anuruddha who is spread in all the moving and non-moving objects, who is like the sky and who has torn off the enemies of the gods, kindly come [24]

6 Mahā-Carma, the maintainer of the world, the image of the lustre, completely covered by carma, the shield or skin and having the valour of the Ādityas of this world, (kindly come) [25]

I shall invoke the Ananta, who is endless and having bright light, who is the lord of the Nāgas, Sesa who holds the globe of this world [26]

6 one holding Lāṅgala (a plough) whose hand is shining with Musala (club) and who is adorned with a very tall palm tree and its mark, (kindly come) [27]

6 greatly fortunate Ananta called Sesa, and holding the earth who looks like hundred moons and is having the garment like the sky, kindly come [28]

You are the only creator of the creatures and you are the supporter of all the things 6 the lord of the worlds, all the three worlds are upheld by you [29]

I shall invoke Lakṣmī resting on the chest of Viṣṇu and who is having lotus-like face, lotus like hands and the garments like the moon [30]

(I invoke Lakṣmī) the goddess who is working for the benefit of the whole world, who bestows the boons, takes desired form, goes every where, mother of all, and the goddess of all the three worlds [31]

6 Lakṣmī, irresistible darling of Hari (Viṣṇu), having large eyes, creating the creatures and worshipped by all, kindly come [32]

6 Auspicious one, having the best complexion, all the three worlds live where you live You give all the Bhogas (enjoyments) to the prosperous person whom you remember [33]

I shall invoke Tārksya (Garuda), whose speed is like mind or wind, and by the wind of whose wings all the three worlds shaken [34]

6 Garuda like the heap of burning fire, 6 infallible, who removes deadly poison and the darkness of a person, kindly come here [35]

I shall invoke Tāla, the palm tree who is the banner of Saṅkarsana. 6 Lord Tāla, the lord of the whole world kindly, come to me [36]

I shall invoke Jhasa, (large fish), who is the banner of Kāma, the god of love, and who bestows boons 6 the lord of all the worlds and the leader of crocodiles, kindly come here [37]

I shall invoke Ṛṣya (white footed antelope) very mighty king of the deer (Mrgarāja) 6 very fortunate Ṛṣya, the incarnation of action and very difficult to be pleased, kindly come [38]

I shall invoke Nṛsiṃha having the form of knowledge, and having a ferocious face due to terrible canine teeth, and having fierce eyes [39]

(I shall invoke him) whose anger is like that of a thousand Yamas the god of death, and whose parākrama (valour) is like a thousand Indras, who is hundred times fair than the giver of the wealth (kubera) and who can run swifter than the mind [40]

(I invoke him) whose tongue is like the lightning, whose mouth is wide open and whose face has crooked eye-brows On whose face has the multitude of the flames of fire in rows, and whose face is difficult to see [41]

6 Nṛsiṃha, having great strength and valour, who attacked on the life of the great king of Demon, by the sharp nails like Vajra (steel) kindly come here to-day. [42]

6 one whose mane (Kesara) is very clear due to the destruction of the elephant in the form of the darkness of ignorance, O great controller, whose valour is unimaginable and as terrible as the wind, kindly come [43]

I shall invoke the god having the tawny body (Kāpilim tanum) who is the reservoir of light, who is never conquered and who is the son of the sea the Vādava-(submarine-fire), (or who is the son of Sagara) [44]

6 Lord Kapila and others who are eternal, who are the establisher of Sāṅkhya-mārga (the Sāṅkhya-sect) and in whose meditation there are different multitudes kindly come to me [45]

I shall invoke Nṛ-Varāha (the Incarnation of manboar) Who has lifted the whole world as if in play as dark as the (Bhinnā-Añjana) powdered black shoot [46]

(I shall invoke him) who is the sun destroying the poverty, and the darkness of great ignorance, and who removed the terror of the devotees and killed the leader of the demons [47]

6 Nṛvarāha, the killer of Hiraṇyākṣa, who put his great lotus feet on the hood of the Sesā, kindly come [48]

6 one born from the sound of the Conch-shell, the controller and the leader of the gods, kindly protect me I shall invoke Varāha, the most arrogant one, who lighted all the three worlds by the ends of tusks like the crescent moon, and who has the body that intended to see the world with eyes widened with astonishment [49-50]

O Lord Varāha, having immeasurable valour who has the end of the tusks like the crescent moon, and who has lifted the world very easily, and who has killed all the kings of Demons looking with a miserable sight, kindly come [51-52]

I shall invoke Dharma, the god of religion, who brings happiness to all the creatures, who is difficult to be understood, having many doors, the incarnate of the result and difficult to be achieved 6 Dharma, the supporter of three worlds and pacifying all the sins and the destroyer of all the obstacles, kindly come to me [52-53-54]

I shall invoke Rudra the incarnation of light who is very difficult to be achieved, very sound wealth and the destroyer of all 6 Lord Rudra, very difficult to be seen due to the circles of matted hair, and who has burnt whole of the world with the light of the third eye, kindly come [55-56]

I shall invoke Brahmā having bright light, four faces, and four hands and who is transcendental to the qualities-Guṇātīta, who has the best qualities 6 the god of gods, Grandfather, the lord of gods, the head of all the worlds, and the cause of all causes of the world, kindly come here [56-58]

I shall invoke the Earth carrying all the creatures, on which all the creatures live, and who is (also called) Kṣiti, Kṣoni and

Sarasvati. 6 goddess Vasudhā, bestower of boons and creator of all creatures 6 fortunate one, the resort of all, having gods and remover of the danger, kindly come to me. [58-60]

I shall invoke Śankha (conch-shell) the incarnation of the sky and who is endless, the birth place of sound, supportless, and the resort of all the worlds. 6 the best of conch-shells pāñcajanya having great sound, and who has completely destroyed the group of great Demons, kindly come. [60-62]

I shall invoke the lotus which is the resort of all the worlds, the incarnation of water, gentle and called Pundarika. 6 fortunate Padma, Brahmā born from the lotus, the lord of all that is created in past and will be created in future, in the form of the world, kindly come. [62-64]

I shall invoke Cakra, the wheel, circular upto the edge, and who is endless, the incarnation of Vāyu (the wind) and having the navel of the steel (Vajra-nābha) and having wide eyes. I invoke Sudarśana cakra who is Kāla-cakra, (the circle of time), Jagat-cakra (the circle of worlds), Dharma-cakra (the circle of religion), which is eternal, constantly moving and the god satisfied with the blood of the demons. 6 Cakra who has great valour of striking the group of the enemies, and the sun destroying the darkness of terror of the heart of the lord of gods, kindly come. [64-67]

I shall invoke invincible club (Gadā) who is the incarnation of lustre, Gāyatrī the mother of gods and terrible Kāla-rātri (the night of death) 6 Kaumodakī club of Viṣṇu, the destroyer of all the demons, and called Gabharī and nicely worshipped, kindly come. [67-69]

I shall invoke Lāṅgala, (the plough), called Sāmprata. 6 Lāṅgala dragging and killing Demons, kindly come here today. [69-70]

I shall invoke Lord Musala (the mace) called Saunanda. 6 Musala (mace) killing the enemies of Gods kindly come here. [70-71]

I shall invoke the bow Śārngā, the killer of the enemies. 6 bow bestowing boons and dear to the gods and demons, kindly come. [71-72]

I shall invoke the arrow, Mohana enchanting the enemies. 6 the lord of the three worlds, who pierced the army of the enemy, and who can pierce the world, kindly come. [72-73]

I shall invoke Carma, (the shield) which is wellknown as āvarana. (hiding). 6 great shield called the covering of all, kindly come. [73-74]

I shall invoke the sword named Nandaka. 6 sword the killer of all the families of the lords of Demons kindly come to me. [74-75]

I shall invoke Vana-mālā (the garland made from the flowers of forest), which brings happiness. 6 Vanamālā binding all the three worlds, kindly come. [75-76]

I shall invoke Kaustubha Mani (jewel) worn on the body of Keśava. 6 Kaustubha springing from the shining Marti (rays of light), kindly come. [76-77]

I shall invoke Hari having the head of a horse. Hari who is like hundred moons and assigned for uplifting Vedas. 6 Haya-grīva, holding Śankha, Cakra and Gadā- (the conch-shell, the disc and the club)-6 lord who consoled Padmaja Brahmā born from the lotus, unhappy by the theft of Vedas, kindly come. [78-79]

I shall invoke R̥gveda decorated by Padas (the words) 6 R̥gveda the incarnation of Brahmā, bestower of boons, kindly come. [79-80]

I shall invoke Yajurveda which is very dear. 6 Yajurveda, the leader of the group of the king of gods, kindly come. [80-81]

I shall invoke the auspicious god Atharvaveda. 6 Atharva Veda doing all the deeds and infallible one, kindly come here. [81-82]

I shall invoke god Bhogī, the enjoyer who is seated on Bhogāsana (seat of enjoyment) 6 Bhogī sitting on Bhogāsana the spiritual master of the world kindly come [82-83]

I shall invoke god lord Bhogī resting on Bhogāsana Who is accompanied with Lakṣmī, bestower of boons observer of the world and infallible 6 Pundarikākṣa O Bhogī intending Bhoga, O Acyuta infallible, Lord of three worlds, O Govind the killer of Madhu and Kaiṣabha demons, kindly come [83-85]

I shall invoke Lord Viṣṇu having three strides (Trivikrama) who is transcendental to the whole world, and who has stepped all the three worlds 6 Trivikrama having joyful wide eyes, looking at the humble Demons and the king of gods, kindly come [86-87]

I shall invoke god Lord Viśva-rūpa-dhara, who is omnipresent who is the god sustaining all who completely kills enemies, who creates by his sweet-will all the creatures in many ways, and who sustains this whole world by his body 6 Viśva-rūpa adorned with all the weapons, and whose body is adorned with different kinds of ornaments, and taking different Varnas O sustainer of the world kindly come [87-90]

6 god in whose body all the worlds rest, and who is the cause of causes of the world, 6 unthinkable taking various varnas, and whose body is shown by Māyā, kindly come [90-91]

I shall invoke god Matsya moving in the sea 6 Matsya deva, the sustainer of the lives of the world, O infallible, kindly come [91-92]

I shall invoke Hamsa-(the swan), the lord giving knowledge I shall invoke the lord who is the destroyer of all ignorance 6 Hamsa destroyer of all ignorance Kindly come soon [92-93]

I shall invoke Kūrma-(the Tortoise) who held Mandara-mountain, O Lord Kūrma creator of Śyāma (dark-colour) infallible, kindly come [94]

I shall invoke the lord who took the form of a woman O lord taking the form of woman-(Mohinī-svarūpa) giving the nectar (soma) to the gods, kindly come [95]

I shall invoke god Nara, who did penance (Tapasī nīṣṭhita) 6 very fortunate Nara incarnation of religion, the lord of the world, kindly come [96]

Similarly I shall invoke Lord Nārāyaṇa 6 Nārāyaṇa destroyer of the pride of the enemies, kindly come [97]

I shall invoke Hari, the lord of gods, having the lustre of the gold. 6 lord Hari, destroyer of the pride of the enemies, kindly come [98]

I shall invoke Kṛṣṇa who is like the cloud full of water 6 very fortunate lord, the lord of gods, dear to the world, kindly come [99]

I shall invoke god Dattātreya, having great penance 6 Dattātreya, ready to save the vedas, kindly come here [100]

I shall invoke Vālmīki the reservoir of penance 6 Vālmīki describing one's own deeds, O infallible kindly come here [101]

I shall invoke (Paraśu)Rāma, who killed the circle of Kṣatriya 6 Bhārgava, my lord, very difficult to look at due to matted hair kindly come [102]

I shall invoke the axe-(Paraśu) with bright lustre 6 Paraśu who made this earth light (reduced in weight), kindly come soon [103]

I shall invoke Pṛthu, the great cakravartī-monarch O Pṛthu, the lord of this earth, having great strength, kindly come [104]

I shall invoke Rāma, who controlled Rākṣasas 6 Rāma the bridge of religion, invincible one, kindly come soon [105]

I shall invoke lord Pradyumna in the form of Bharata 6 Bharata who controlled Gandharvas, kindly come here [106]



I shall invoke Lakṣmana the killer of the enemies. O Lakṣmana the stealer of the missiles of Meghanāda, kindly come here. [107]

I shall invoke Satrugṇa, having shining lustre. 6 Śatrugṇa, killer of Lavana and destroyer of enemies, kindly come here. [108]

I shall invoke Vyāsa, Veda-Vyāsa the spiritual master of the world. 6 Veda-Vyāsa showing all religion, kindly come here. [109]

I shall invoke Yudhiṣṭhira the son of Dharma. 6 Yudhiṣṭhira, holding all the best religion, kindly come here. [110]

I shall invoke Bṛhma, the thorn to the Demons. 6 Bṛhmasena, the killer of the enemies and the remover of the darkness, kindly come here. [111]

I shall invoke Pārtha, who slayed the enemies. 6 Arjuna who removed the burden of this earth, kindly come soon. [112]

I shall invoke Nakula who had matchless beauty on this earth. 6 Nakula carrying the sword and shield and who is infallible, kindly come here. [113]

I shall invoke Sahadeva who liked the battle. 6 Sahadeva having beauty and money, kindly come here. [114]

I shall invoke Kṛṣṇā-Draupadī, the charming celestial beauty (Svarga-Lakṣmī). 6 Yājñaseni who lightened the burden of the earth, kindly come. [115]

I shall invoke Sītā, the celebrated wife of Rāma. 6 goddess Sītā born from the earth, kindly come. [116]

I shall invoke Devakī the mother of Kṛṣṇa. O Devakī the mother of gods and dear to the world, kindly come. [117]

I shall invoke Yaśodā dear to the world. 6 Yaśodā who reared up Janārdana (Kṛṣṇa) kindly come. [118]

I shall invoke the goddess wellknown as the Ekānamśā 6 Ekānamśā, who became ready to protect Kṛṣṇa kindly come [119]

I shall invoke goddess Rukmiṇī, the dear wife of Kṛṣṇa 6 Rukmiṇī, the only beautiful woman of the world kindly come here [120]

I shall invoke charming goddess Satyabhāmā 6 goddess Satyabhāmā the darling of Keśava, kindly come [121]

I shall invoke all the auspicious wives of Kṛṣṇa O all the goddesses headed by Gāndhārī, kindly come here [121]

I shall invoke (Bala) Rāma, whose eyes are moving due to Mada (pride or wine) and who wears one Kundaḷa (earring), and who is intoxicated (Matta) and is adorned with Vanamālā (the garland made from the forest flowers) [123]

O very fortunate (Bala) Rāma dear son of Revatī infallible one who killed Pralamba demon and who dragged the waters of Yamunā with the edge of his plough kindly come [124]

I shall invoke kṛṣṇā having the complexion of the cloud full of water, and who destroyed Cānura's pride of strength and who killed the demon Kamsa [125]

6 Kṛṣṇa, who defeated the best Demons reduced the burden of this earth and held Govardhana mountain, kindly come [126]

I shall invoke Pradyumna like the colour of Makara (the crocodile) (or who is Makaradhvaja-the god of love) who took away the life of Sambara the enemy of gods, and who is the dear lord of Ratī (the wife of cupid) [127]

6 Pradyumna the destroyer of the armies of the enemies and who adorned the surface of this earth, with the heads of the king of the Demons, cut off by the arrows, come here [128]

I shall invoke Aniruddha, the master of the world, who was like the sub-marine fire (Vadavānala) to the great army of Bānāsura [129]

6 Aniruddha, having great strength and valour, having a sword in the hand, O very fortunate one rejoicing the heart of Uśā, kindly come [130]

I shall invoke Sāmba having great strength and carrying a club in his hand 6 Sāmba having great strength who killed the Demons completely, kindly come [131]

I shall invoke Yuyudhāna having excellent strength 6 Yuyudhāna having long hands, killer of the enemies kindly come [132]

I shall invoke Saubhadra who is never defeated and Vasubhadra who knows religion, both of them wearing Nīlāmbara-blue garments [133]

They are the two door keepers of Vāsudeva (Kṛṣṇa) They both have huge hands, beautiful eyes and great strength and valour They are like the river of the melted gold [134]

6 Subhadra kindly come with a group of servants and ganas always sit on the left side of the eastern door [135]

Similarly I shall invoke Āsādhā having great strength and Yajñatāta who knows religion, both of them wearing yellow garments [136]

They are the door-keepers of Saṅkarṣaṇa They are like blue clouds and carrying clubs They are beautiful and charming [137]

6 Āsādhā you come here with the group of your assistants and sit on the left side of the Southern door [138]

6 Vajña-tāta you come with the group of the assistants and sit on the right hand side of the door [139]

I shall invoke Jaya, infallible and having bright lustre and I shall invoke Vijaya, huge one, both wearing pinkish garments [140]

Both of them are like the rays of moon and carrying swords They are the door-keepers of Pradyumna They are Kāmadevas-gods of love having very good lustre [141]

6 Jaya kindly come soon and always sit with your groups of assistants on the left hand side of the western gate [142]

6 Vijaya kindly come with the group of assistants and be on the right hand side [143]

Similarly I shall invoke Āmoda, loved by the world and Pramoda having great valour, both of them wearing white garments [144]

They are the door-keepers of Aniruddha. They are like Sindura or Aruna They have immense strength, carry Sakti in their hands, and they have great strength and valour [145]

O Āmoda kindly come soon and with the group of assistants sit on the right hand side of the door [146]

I shall invoke all the Ganas-groups of Vāsudeva who are having the shape of Vāsudeva and valour like Vāsudeva [147]

6 the Ganas of Pradyumna the lords of this world who have the shape of Pradyumna and the valour of Pradyumna, kindly come soon [148]

6 the Ganas of Vāsudeva, O brave lords of this world, the masters of all having all the powers (Saktis), and fulfilling all the desires, kindly come soon [149]

I shall invoke all the Ganas of Aniruddha, who have the shape like Aniruddha and the valour like Aniruddha [150]

6 the brave Ganas of Aniruddha, the lords of this world, the masters of all, having all the powers and fulfilling all the desires [151]

When the invocation of incarnation of Viṣṇu having immeasurable lustre, is not done, the invocation of Lord Vāsudeva who can go anywhere, and who having great soul should be done or the invocation of Viśvarūpa told to you, should be done [152-153]

The Mantras which are told for invocation should be known as the Mantras for Vibodhana (awakening) also So the lord of Yadu family the learned should use them in Āvāhana as well as Vibodhana [154]

In the third part of Sṛī Viṣṇudharmottara, during the discourse between Mārkaṇḍeya and Vajra thus ends the Adhyāya 106 entitled the invocation of all the remaining gods

---

Mārkandeya said 6 brave king ' the mantra for chief gods, Vibodhana (awakening) is not told. I shall tell you about Vibodhana (awakening) of Vāsudeva [1]

I shall awaken Vāsudeva who is unborn and all pervading, not having beginning, middle or end, yet having great strength and valour [2]

(I shall awaken him)-who is endless, the lord who can go everywhere, and greater than the greatest, minute than the minutest and living at a distant place as well as coming near. [3]

I shall awaken Nārāyaṇa, who can not be understood very easily, who holds Sāranga bow, who is infallible and as dark as the Atasi-flower, who wears yellow garments [4]

He is enlightened, having eyes like lotus, and kind to the persons who seek shelter 6 Lord who showed mercy on the wounded Nāga, (the elephant) drowned in the lake of this world and who cut the front portion of the irresistible (Durdhara) to hold (crocodile) in the form of a bad dream He has closed eyes due to great yoga-nidrā (the sleep of Yoga). [5-6]

6 Acyuta-infallible-whose bed is so wide to reach the hood of Sesa serpent, and upon whom is made a canopy of the rays of the jewel on his (śeṣa's) hood. [7]

6 Lord who looks beautiful as Lakṣmī massages two feet like lotus, who killed great Demon, and who did welfare of all three worlds [8]

6 Acyuta-infallible-resting on the Dugdha-Ambhodhi (the sea of milk) like the web of moon rays, and destroyer of the fear of the devotees about falling in the śvabhra (hole) of hell [9]

6 Janārdana ' who gives the support of his hands to them devotees), and who is a great ship to cross the sea of this material world (Samsāra) [10]

6 lord with great strength, who destroys the dense clouds of sins by taking only the name, and who fulfills all the desires only by prayers [11]

6 lord, who walked on the upper pavilion-Mandapas-of this Brahmānda-universe by only three strides and who easily lifted this earth on his tusks like the crescent moon [12]

6 greatly fortunate one showing the sinless path to all the three worlds ' these gods led by Indra and the sages awaken you [13]

6 Lord Acyuta-infallible the best of gods ' the auspicious Brahmā, having four mouths is awakening, you, by the speech coming out from the Vedas [14]

6 Lord of the three worlds ' the killer of the enemies of the group of gods, kindly leave the sleep now, and be the destroyer of the heap of my sins 6 lord, who does your keen devotion, progresses extremely by its divine power [15]

In the third part of Śrī Viṣṇudharmottara, during the discourse between Mārkaṇḍeya and Vajra, thus ends the Adhyāya 107 entitled "Vāsudeva Vibodhana"—The awakening of Vāsudeva

---

## ADHYĀYA 108

Vajra said 6 lord, the best of Bhrgus the images of all the gods are made from five elements (Pancabhūta yuta) and for them you told the procedure of invoking which was thought proper When invoked they come to the desiring people [1-2]

The gods have Mahimā—the power of being great and Laghimā the power of being small, take resort of Lord Viṣṇu dwelling in everything is bigger than the biggest, he is very minute than the minutest He is omnipresent and full in the world There is no world where Janārdana is not present [3 4]

6 very fortunate one everything that exists and does not exist is filled with the great soul It is said that he saturated with great powers of senses is omnipresent When he is in everything why should invocation be done Kindly remove my this doubt, because it is said that you know everything [5-6]

Mārkaṇḍeya said 6 Vajra ! as all the gods have the images made of substances Lord Madhu-nisūdana (the slayer of Madhu demon) is also like that when he is manifested [7]

All the images when carved are made from five elements 6 the best of Yadus they all have the beginning the middle and the end [8]

When Viṣṇu is manifested he is like the group of other gods. It is certain that when he is invoked he resides in it [9]

The gods have two types of images, Parā—the transcendental and Aparā—that which is not transcendental (i.e. worldly) The image of the Parā form is Pauruṣī Mūrti (divine personality) which is devoid of five elements [10]



That image of the Supreme Lord is omnipresent. There is nothing in this world where that personality does not exist. [11]

O King ! He has no beginning, middle or the end. Similarly he has the powers of all senses and mind. [12]

O King ! he possesses the same all mightiness when he is manifested. That power is shown to them who desire, not to those who do not desire. [13]

6 one of Yadu family, 6 king ! the almightiness that he possesses, when he is endless personality, the same almightiness is naturally possessed by Him always and everywhere. [14]

The invocation of the lord of this world, the supreme personality of god-head, (who is eternal and who lives everywhere), is done only for the satisfaction of mind. So it is proper if He is invoked though he is in vicinity. [15-16]

The invocation of the omnipresent Personality is only for one's own satisfaction, similarly O greatly fortunate one the Arcā (worship) is also for the sake of one's own satisfaction. [17]

What has the eternally satisfied one to do with the (Arcā) worship ? It is only for the satisfaction of the pious faith. That is why He receives it (worship) from him. [18]

Know that when god is worshipped by the learned, the worshipper, one who makes him worship and the sentiment with which he is worshipped—all these permeated by him. [19]

Know that the worshipping is done only for the sake of love of the doer. Similarly one should know oneself who belongs to Him who is omnipresent. [20]

6 one of the Yadu family, the Arcā (worship) etc. of the eternally satisfied is showing favour to the devotees and for one's own activity. [21]

6 king ! as the bodiless soul resides in the body, similarly that one (god) is invoked for the fixing concentration of the devotion. [22]

6 great king ! it is very difficult to concentrate on the formless thing, but concentration on Sākāra, (a thing with form) has power to give happiness [23]

6 the tiger amongst kings ! therefore I have related according to Sāstras, the Ākāra (form)-image of the lord when manifested. [24]

The man experiences the sentiment by which he sees a thing. 6 one of Yadu family, similarly the Bhāvanā-sentiment should be done in an Arcā (worship.) [25]

6 greatly fortunate, at first having concentration on a Sākāra Image (with form), then O best of men, one can concentrate on a formless one [26]

6 one of the Yadu family ! in that way his invocation and worship is carefully done to the enlightened only for favouring one's self. [27]

Eternally satisfied one does not wish to have offering for his own satisfaction, but 6 great king he wishes to get it only for obliging the devotee. [28]

6 one having long arms ! you should know that both of them- Jñāna-mārga and Kriyā-mārga (Path of knowledge and action)-when done without desiring of fruits, lead one to salvation (Moksa). [29]

6 Vajra when the act is done with some desire it is for bondage, when it is done without any desire 't is for Moksa-salvation. [30]

6 king ! when invoked with mantra, gods surely come there. 6 Vajra the learned have shown the invocation of Visnu, the best of god, only for one's own satisfaction. [31]

In the third part of Śrī Viśnudharmottara, during the discourse between Mārkaṇḍeya and Vajra, thus ends the Adhyāya 108 entitled 'the reason of invocation' (Āhāvana prayojana).

---

Vajra said 6 lord ' kindly describe the procedure of the sacrifice

Lord Mārkaṇḍeya told him After making lord to rest, (Adhivāsita), the fire having lit, bringing Ghee (purified butter) (Vilīnena utplutena) merging and drenching chanting (Raksoghna-mantra) the mantra for protection before giving oblation of ghee speaking the names of the gods in fourth vibhakti and uttering Svāhā at the end with yava-Tila-Siddhārtha (Barley, sesame and white mustard (Sarsava) ghee should be offered eight times or twenty eight times or one hundred and eight times The sacrifice should be done speaking Om namo Bhagavate Vāsudevāya Om namo bhagavate Sankarsanāya Om namo Bhagavate Pradyumnāya Om namo bhagavate Aniruddhāya Om namo bhagavate Purusāya Om namo bhagavate Satyāya Om namo bhagavate Acutāya Om namah Śrīyaḥ Om namah Kāla-rātryaḥ Om namo Rātryaḥ Om namah Śṛṣṭyaḥ Om namo Garudāya, Om namastālāya Om namo Makarāya Om namo Rsyāya Om namo'nantāya Om namah Kaustubhāya Om namo Vanamālāyaḥ Om namah Pṛthivyāḥ Om namah Sankhāya Om namah Padmāya Om namo Gadāyaḥ Om namascakrāya Om namo Halāya Om namo Musalāya Om namascāpāya Om namś carmane Om namah Khadgāya Om namah Subhadrāya Om namo Vasubhadrāya Om namah Āsādhāya Om namo Yajñatātāya Om namo Jayāya Om namo Vijayāya Om namo Āmodāya Om namah Pramodāya

Then Vyāhṛti Homa (the sacrifice for Vyāhṛti) should be done Then Gāyatri-Homa should be done Then 'Tad-viṣṇoḥ Paramam padam' etc should be chanted Then with Vaisnava-Gāyatri, and then 'Yunjate mana' etc mantras should be cha-

nted. Then with Purusa sūkta, then 'Ratho Akṣesu etc. four Ṛk should be chanted. Then with Camak satka and then doing Samvatsara-devatā homa with ghee, the latter portion of the rite should be finished with the verse :

*This sacrifice is praised at the time of installation of Viṣṇu. For other gods oblation of Tālīṅga etc. should be offered. [1]*

In the third part of Śrī Viṣṇudharmottara during the discourse between Mārkaṇḍeya and Vajra thus ends Adhyāya 109 entitled the procedure of Vaisṇava Homa.

---

## ADHYĀYA 110

Mārkaṇḍeya said Now on the day of installation the lord should be awakened with conch-shell drum and with musical instruments Vibodhana mantra-awakening mantra should be chanted Then the Kalpaka, Mūrtidhara the first carrying the image and with raised hands, the priest holding the Kalasa-pitcher and the architect should enter the Devāgāra-(the chamber of god) while chanting the "Yasceha bhagavanniti bhagavanniti mantra Then all the herbs mixed with Pancagavya (five things of cows) all the fragrant things, all the gems and gold should be dug in the pīṇikā (pedestal of the image) There the Mantra O blessed one "Bhāsaḥ" "Trisuparnah" "Bhārundam" "Mṛtyulāṅgalm" "Svasti na Indrah" "Dvādasādhyātman" and "Ātma-Vyubham" are chanted Then at the fixed time of the year the lord should be placed on a very levelled and good looking pedestal with the mantras "Dhruvā dyau-" and "Nīścalamanen" (fixed mind) The name of the lord should be spoken and the installation of Sāma should be said All the people should do lājā kusum-(Barley and the flowers) and loudly shout the word Jaya-(Victory), musical instrument should be played and chant 'Om namo bhagavate Vāsudevāya' etc And should speak Brahma-sūkta" Itvādhānam (the putting of life) should be done with "Agnerāyurasi" etc mantra and the Kalpaka and the holder of the Kalasa-pitcher should speak-

Om, 6 lord here is installed, and let this installation be a nice one And kindly stay here for the prosperity of the host [1]

Let there be always prosperity to the bi-ped men, let there be prosperity on four legged animals Let all the people be prospered and let there be prosperity of the kings [2]

6 Lord, I bow down to you ! you should always protect this host (Yajamāna) with servants, his sons, cattles and relatives, And this place-country also. [3]

In the third part of Śrī Viṣṇudharmottara during the discourse between Mārkaṇḍeya and Vajra, thus ends the Adhyāya 110 entitled the installation (Pratiṣṭhādhyāya).

---

etc. bath with all the clays with "Aśvagrānta" etc, the bath with Āmalaka (Amblic myrobalan) with "Bhārunda" etc, bath with water of Rodhra tree-with "Vikarnena" etc bath with Kāleyaka (black Sandal wood) with "Jyestha Sāmna"-bath with Bijapūraka (citron tree) with "Brhatsāmna" bath with Varnaka-snāniya (coloured substances) with "Kṛsnājīnena" etc, bath with Tagara-plant-with "Agnerāyurasi" etc, bath with Priyangu herb with "Sṛt-sūkta", bath with Siddhārthaka (white mustard) Sarasava-with "Viśno rarāṣam" etc, bath with Kusta herb-with Kuṣṭha-maninā" etc, bath with the water of kuśa with śirinbhūtena etc., bath with all herbs with "Yā osdhaya" etc, bath with seeds-bija with "Ā brahman brāhmano" etc. bath with flowers with "Puspavati", bath with foliage of herbs with "Vanaspathi Vidvāṅga" etc bath with fruits with "Puspavati" etc, bath with gems with "Āśuh Sāsāna" etc, bath with fragrant substances with "Gandha-dvāra" etc, bath with the herbs for washing the head should be done with "Om-kāra-namaskāra Pavitrāḥ The kalaśa-dāna should be thus-Kuṣṭha, Sarodhra, Mustā, Vacā, Sarsapāh, Jayanti, Vijayanti, Viśnu-kṛāntā, Punarnavā, Brāhmi, Tagara, Balā, Atibalā, Nabalā, Nāgabalā, Tvakpatram (The inner bark leaves of Nāgabalā), Agurubāluka, Harenuka, Lavangam, Agurum, Tagaram, Usiram, Nālikā-cūrakam and two Haridrā The Kalaśa-pot of a bath is prepared in this way Right in the beginning of it, a Sāttvata-Vaiṣṇava-should give twelve Adhyātma Mṛt-pinda-divine lump of soil, knowing it by Omkāra, Namaskāra and Pavitrās. There after a Sāmavit (the Scholar of Sāma-veda) should chant Mahāvāmadeva, lakṣa and then with Sākvara-bhārunda and Brhatsāma The Atharvavid (the scholar of Atharvaveda) should offer Atharva śīraḥ pratyangiraḥ Śaṅkha-manī-prāna-Sūkta and Manī pratisaramanī Rgvedavid should be given with Gāyatrī-Sāvitrī-Gosūkta, Sūrya-sūkta-Navo-navo" "Purusasūkta and Sṛisūkta Yajurvedavid should be given Kṛsnājīna (black hide of the deer), six camakas (sūkta)-(satka) sad Rtukūsmānda (pumpkins of six seasons) and Rudra-dravina Then with Sva-śakti (own ability) thousand pots or eight hundred pots, or five or four hundred, or one hundred and eight or twenty eight, or eight Kalaśa-pots,



Markandeya—Now one should begin great bath Brhat-snapanam—of the Lord for installation Then Gāyatrī should be chanted A Patat-graham (receiving pot) should be offered saying "Ise tveti" etc, two wooden slippers-(Pādukā) (should be offered while) chanting Var-snava Gāyatrī, the clay while chanting "Bhūmyā vrtvāya no 'sī", Arhanam-(adoration) with, "Śanna āpa" etc, the dental herb-brush with "Devebhyo Vanaspata" iti, the tongue-cleaner with "Yāmā likha" etc, Ācamana (water) with "Apo hi stha" etc, the Arghya homage with a vessel The bathing-cloth (Snāna Sāṣakam) with "Yuvā Suvāsā" etc, The seat with "Dhruvā dyauh" etc, the foot rest with "Pratiśṭhā (Sāmnā)" the song of installation the seed-vessel (Bija-pātra) with "Kanikrad" etc, the lamp with "Tejo'si Sukram" etc, the mirror with "Mukhādindra" etc Similarly the face cream-mukhālepaḥ, with rodhram, tvak, Kolamajjā, vacā, kuśham, Nilotpala, Kumkumam" etc, the oil with 'Sahasra-sīrṣā', Udvartanam with 'Bhadram Karmen" etc the camasā Snāna-bath "Supratika etc the Nispunsanasnāna—with "Rsabha" etc, the ghrtasnāna (bath with purified butter) with "Ghrtavati" etc, the curd bath with "Dadhī-Krāvna" etc, milkbath with "Payasvati" etc, cow dung bath with "Gandhadvāra" etc, bath with cow urine with Gāyatrī The bath with five sacred things of the cow with "Aghamarsana the bath with Nispunsana with "Dhruvā dyaurni dhruvam, honey-bath with 'Madhu vātā rutāyata" etc bath with sugarcane-juice with 'Supratikena" etc, the bath with molasses-water, with "Bhauma" etc, the sugar water with "Atharva-śīrṣā, bath with the clay of both banks of river with "Vāmadevena" etc, the bath of clay from Sangama (the sacred place where two rivers meet) with "Sāntā dyauh" etc bath with the clay of a lake with "Prāna-sūkta", bath with Varā-hoddhṛtamrdā (the clay raised by a boar), with vārāhena etc with the clay from the tusks of an elephant, with "Vāmadevena" etc, the bath with the clay from the horns of a bull with "Vrsabhena"

etc. bath with all the clays with "Aśvagrānta" etc, the bath with Āmalaka (Amblic myrobalan) with "Bhārunda" etc, bath with water of Rodhra tree-with "Vikarnena" etc bath with Kāleyaka (black Sandal wood) with "Jyestha Sāmna"-bath with Bijapūraka (citron tree) with "Brhatsāmna" bath with Varnaka-snāniya (coloured substances) with "Kṛsnājīnena" etc., bath with Tagara-plant-with "Agnerāyurasi" etc, bath with Priyangu herb with "Sṛi-sūkta", bath with Siddhārthaka (white mustard) Sarasava-with "Viśno rarātam" etc, bath with Kuṣṭha herb-with Kuṣṭha-maninā' etc, bath with the water of kuśa with śirinbhītena etc., bath with all herbs with "Yā osdhaya" etc, bath with seeds-bīja with "Ā brahman brāhmano" etc bath with flowers with "Puspavati", bath with foliage of herbs with "Vanaspate Vidvaṅga" etc bath with fruits with "Puspavati" etc, bath with gems with "Āsuh Sīśāna" etc, bath with fragrant substances with "Gandha-dvāra" etc, bath with the herbs for washing the head should be done with "Om-kāra-namaskāra Pavitraiḥ. The kalāśa-dāna should be thus-Kuṣṭha, Sarodhra, Mustā, Vacā, Sarsapāh, Jayanti, Vijayanti, Viśnu-kṛāntā, Punarnavā, Brāhmi, Tagara, Balā, Atibalā, Nabalā, Nāgabalā, Tvakpatram (The inner bark leaves of Nāgabalā), Agurubālukam, Harenukam, Lavangam, Agurum, Tagaram, Usiram, Nālikā-cūrakam and two Haridrā The Kalāśa-pot of a bath is prepared in this way Right in the beginning of it, a Sāttvata-Vaiṣṇava-should give twelve Adhyātma Mṛt-pinda-divine lump of soil, knowing it by Omkāra, Namaskāra and Pavitrās There after a Sāmavit (the Scholar of Sāma-veda) should chant Mahāvāmadeva, Iakṣa and then with Sākvara-bhārunda and Brhatsāma The Atharvavid (the scholar of Atharvaveda) should offer Atharva śīraḥ pratyangirah Sāṅkha-manī-prāna-Sūkta and Manī pratisaramanī Rgvedavid should be given with Gāyatrī-Sāvitrī-Gosūkta, Sūrya-sūkta-Navo-navo" "Purusasūkta and Sṛisūkta. Yajurvedavid should be given Kṛsnājīna (black hide of the deer), six camakas (sūkta)-(satka) sad R̥tukūsmānda (pumpkins of six seasons) and Rudra-dravina Then with Sva-śakti (own ability) thousand pots or eight hundred pots, or five or four hundred, or one hundred and eight or twenty eight, or eight Kalāśa-pots,

worshipped by one's self and filled with a group of herbs should be given with the big sound of Sankha-conch-shell, musical instruments, and with "be victorious" words of the bards-possessing good fortune and with bowing down Then the upakalasa (subsidiary pots) should be placed with 'Pavitra' on the altar Ghṛtāpekṣa should be shown with the Ghṛtavatī etc Sikkhandodgrahana, Śāṭaka (cloth for absorbing the water of hair) should be given with mantra "Sahasra-Sīrsa" etc Prati-nirvasana-śāṭaka-(the garment for changing dress) should be given with mantra "Yuvā Suvāsa" etc Ācamanīya should be offered with mantra 'Idamāpah' etc and with 'Pravāhata' etc Then one should bow down with knees, hands and the head

The man who does this Brhat-snapana (great bath) of Hari, becomes free from all the sins and lives in Viṣṇuloka (the world of Viṣṇu) [1]

The desirable and best great bath giving peace, and strength should not be done only in installation, but should be done always [2]

6 great King ' this great bath of the lord of lords should be done when there are calamities from the heaven, sky and the earth arise [3]

There is no calamity in this world, which can not be subsided by this The person desiring health, desiring money, one desiring liberation from bondage, and the person desiring all good luck and peace should do this Brhat-snapana By that a student gets Vidyā-(knowledge), one desiring son gets many sons and if a man desires by heart he gets prominent woman and one desiring nothing gets the ultimate position of Viṣṇu [4-6]

In the third part of Sri Viṣṇudharmottara during the discourse between Mārkaṇḍeya and Vajra, thus ends Adhyāya 111 entitled "Brhat-snapana" great bath of Sri Viṣṇu

## ADHYĀYA 112

Mārkaṇḍeya said : Om Śrī Bhagavant, when Lord bathed, one should be worshipped with Bhoga-(offering), Candana, Bakula, Niryāsa, Jātiphala, Mṛgamada (Musk) and Karpūra (camphor) should be offered separately or in a smearing paste. The lord should be smeared with the mantra 'Gandhadvāra' etc. The fan should be offered with the mantra "Vāyuragregā" etc. He should be fanned with the mantra "Vāta ā Vātu Bhesajam" etc. The cāmara should be offered with the mantra Sāvitrāṇi Śāvitrasya" etc. The bījas (seeds) should be offered with Viṣṇugāyatrī. The lord should be covered with very costly garments chanting the mantra "yuvā Suvāsa" etc. He should be worshipped with ornaments not used before or not having blue or golden colour. He should be offered Kaṅkata (comb) with mantra 'Kaṅkato na Kaṅkata" etc. You are not dūśya and adūśya, bad and good-with Pratiśamkhyā, lord should be worshipped with Āñjana prepared from Anjanamanī, and with Ātmavyūha and with Kūrcaprasāda and with flowers woven as garlands and not woven (separate), while chanting the mantra "Puspavati" etc. He should be offered the cloth garland-Paṭavāsa-with the mantra "Prajāpate na hi tvadetānyanya" etc. He should be worshipped with a Dīpa-lamp while chanting "Agnimūrdha" etc., with Dhūpa-incense "Dhūrasi Dhūrvam iti" and umbrella while chanting "Abhi tvā sūra nonuma" etc. He should be worshipped by offering two upāna-(shoes) while chanting Viṣṇu-gāyatrī and yāna (vehicle) while chanting "Idam Viṣṇur-Vicakrame". With the same mantra Pravahana-a carriage Dhvaja-(a flag) while chanting "Ketum Kṛnvan" etc. and Patākā-etc. should be offered with the same mantra. Then Śrī Bhagavāna (lord) should be worshipped with stotra-prayers. There after all the offerings should be given while chanting "Agnirmūrdha" etc. Then the lord should be worshipped with Tantrivādyas

(stringed musical instruments) and there with the sounds of Sankha-Paṭaha-Bherī (the conch shell, drum-and bugles) or with auspicious songs

One who worships nicely Janārdana (Kṛṣṇa) with offerings-bhogas (objects of enjoyment i.e. food etc.) according to this rituals, gets all the desired things and goes to Viṣṇuloka [1]

In the third part of *Srī Viṣṇudharmottara* during the discourse between Mārkaṇḍeya and Vajra, thus ends the Adhyāya 112 entitled Bhoga-dāna (offering Bhoga)

---

Mārkaṇḍeya said . Now the Lord should be worshipped with Madhuparka while chanting "Hiranya-varṇa" etc. Curds should be offered chanting "Dadhikrāvṇa" etc., Ghṛta-(purified butter) with "Ghṛtavatī" etc., Madhu-(honey) while chanting "Madhu vāṇī riāyate" etc., Submission should be done with Sāvitra, having mixed with three golden things. Tarpana-(libations) should be offered with the mantra "Āpo hi śtha" etc, Nispuṇsanam with mantra "Vāta ā vātu Bheṣajam" etc. the Ācamaniyam-(drinking water) with "Sanna āpa" etc. mantra. A best should be offered with Asṭaka vidhi-(ritual), or Mātrā should be offered chanting "Hiranya varṇa" etc with the same mantra Bimba, Śaṅkha, Padma (Bimba fruit, conch-shell and lotus) etc. should be offered.

6 sinless one ! I have related nice Madhuparka ritual, 6 great  
ling ! doing this one can go to Viṣṇuloka-the world of Viṣṇu).  
[1]

In the third part of Sri Viṣṇudharmottara, during the discourse between, Mārkaṇḍeya and Vajra, thus ends Adhyāya 113 entitled Madhuparka rituals.

---

## ADHYĀYA 114

Mārkaṇḍeya said The arhaṇa-(homage) should be given while chanting "Hiranya-varṇa" etc Then with food, manifesting, good behaviour Sāvadamśa (stimulant) fruits should be offered with Sāvitra The Lord should be worshipped offering drinking water making sweets according to the ability made fragrant "Āpo hi sṛṣṭa" etc And Tarpana-(offering) Nispumsana while chanting, 'Vāta ā Vātu bhesajam,' etc , and then śanna āpa etc. and sipping water offering Mātrā-again with the same procedure while chanting, "Agnirmūrdha" etc and with Samvibhāgārthiya annayajña should be offered to god Then tāmbūla-Betel leaf should be offered with 'Mukhādindra' etc with that mantra, fragrant Mukhavāsa (cloves etc ) and Darpana (mirror) should be offered Again the lord should be nicely worshipped with songs, instrumental music and dancing

By worshipping the eternal god of gods, with Annayajña a man gets of the desired things and goes to Viśnuloka-the world of Viṣṇu [1]

In the third part of Śrī Viṣṇudharmottara, during the discourse between Mārkaṇḍeya and Vajra, thus ends the Adhyāya 114 entitled 'Ijyādhyāya' (making offerings to god).

---

Mārkaṇḍeya said Then the Sāttvata should do the sacrifice (Ijyā) with the procedure described in the Sankara-gītā (the song of Saṅkara) The Kārīṇaḥ those who get it performed—should be worshipped with Bhoga (offerings) In front of the god himself each of the Rtvijas should be offered much gold, Vāsah (garment), cow and a kāmśya (Vessel) full of ghrta (purified butter milk) and they should be worshipped according to one's capacity. Then dinner should be given to the Brahmins When they are taking dinner, the praises of the greatness of the lord— (Sṛi Bhagavān-māhātmya) should be told Then the Yajamāna (the host) should eat the Haviśya (the remaining of the sacrifice) After that one should stay in the temple of the god taking part in songs, dances, instrumental music and listening the (sacred) books

Performing the installation a Sārangiṇa-narah (man with bow and arrows) according to this procedure, gets all the desired things and goes to Viśnuloka. [1]

In the third part of Sṛi Viśnudharmottara during the discourse between Mārkaṇḍeya and Vajra, thus ends the Adhyāya 115 entitled (Sāttvatejyādhāya)—the worship of the Sāttvatas

---



## ADHYĀYA 116

Mārkandeya said For a week one should daily worship the lord with the rituals of vedic sacrifice and the Homa sacrifice described by the sāttvatas Then on the seventh day performing the great bath (Brhat-snapana) the Kalpakaḥ (performer) with a Kalasa (pot) in his hand should sprinkle water on the Torana While chanting, 'Yā Osadhaya' etc He should be worshipped with anulepana (ointment) while chanting 'Gandha-dvārena' etc, with flowers while chanting 'Puspavati' etc with Dīpa (lamp) while chanting 'Agnirmūrdhā' etc, with Dhūpa (incense) while chanting, "Dhūraṣi" etc, with Naivedya (food offering) while chanting "Sāvitrāṇi Sāvitrasya" etc Then first from the north, then from the east, then from the south and then from the west the Torana decorating garlands should be raised up with Śrī Viṣṇugāyatrī All the Rtvijas carrying the Toranas decorating garlands should sit on the back of the elephant, on the back of the horse, on the chariot, on the bullock-carts or in the Sibikā- (palanquin) and go to the river, and throw them (the decorative garlands) in the river while chanting the mantra "Svast na Indra" etc, should go to the temple chanting "Bhadram Karṇe" etc, enter it while chanting Yasceha Bhagavāna" etc, then the lord should be followed with all the Bhoga-vidhi—the procedure of the offering and the procedure of the installation Then the Dikṣā-kankana (the bracelet of the initiation) of the Yajamāna (host) should be untied with the mantra "Bhuktavatsu Vipresu muñcāmi" etc Protection should be done with 'Kavaca' (armour) Every month for the seven days the said procedure, except taking off decorative garlands, should be done Till the end of the year daily these rites giving all desired things should be done

6 the best of the kings ' I have narrated to you this procedure of the installation It should be known that it removes all the sins, gives long life and makes invincible [1]

Establishing the Śāraṅgīnāḥ narah (man with Śāraṅga i.e. Viṣṇu) with this procedure, gets all the desired things and goes to the world of Viṣṇu [2]

All the herbs and sacred trees and everything which are made sacred in the installation-reside in the world of Viṣṇu [3]

6 King ! the persons who witness the installation or who congratulate the devotees, obtain Svarga (heaven) [4]

And everyday one should worship the lord of the gods according to the procedure narrated by the Sāttvatas, and should wish to get the eternal place [5]

In the third part of Śrī Viṣṇudharmottara, during the discourse between Mārkaṇḍeya and Vajra thus ends the Adhyāya 116 entitled "Toranocchrāya-Vidhi" the procedure of abandoning the Torana-the decorative garlands

---

Kūṭāgāra, other persons should offer only flower garlands; should sing prayers (songs of praise). The Bandi-gaṇaḥ (bards) and pāṣhakāḥ (persons chanting auspicious mantras) should be in front of it. The king, followed by the Caturanga-bala (some sections of the army) playing musical instruments, should follow. The officers of the city (Nagarādhikṛto) or their representatives sitting on the back of the elephants should follow with Sāmvaś-saras-(astrologers) and observe the Nimitṭāni (omens). If the flag is broken without wind, it indicates the death of the king; the breaking of chatra (umbrella) or breaking of cakṛa (the disc) indicates the destruction of the janapada (community). By breaking of lāṣṭ-pole of the chariot the death of the wife of the king, by cutting of the rope the trouble to the children, the calamity to horses and Dānta (restrained men) trouble to the Janapada-(community) are indicated. By the cutting of Māṭṛkā's trouble to king's mother, by breaking and falling of Arcā-(image) the destruction of the people, and by falling of the entire kūṭāgāra-(apartment) the destruction of the nation with the government are indicated; if the musical instruments produce bad-tunes it indicates the coming of the rule of the enemy. By the fall of the Gavya-yellow pigment etc. in the flag, the danger of war, and by the apr̥ṣṭha-janapada (untouched community) the danger of famine are indicated. When the children do auspicious or un-auspicious thing, the result is also of the same kind. It should be known that the man who experiences happiness or pain on that day, gets the same during that year. Therefore the citizen and the people should have Svāśita and Suvāśāḥ (good food and clothing and good garments). In this way moving in the city, knowing the signs of inference great festival of the Arcā-image should be done. From the next day till that day if one can afford

Markandeya said Now the procedure of Deva-yātrā (the procession of the god) is narrated The procession of the god should be arranged on the Tithi (date) mentioned as the fixed date of the particular god The procession of the god, whose Tithi (date) is not known-should be arranged on Purnimā (full-moon-day). For Śrī-Bhagavāna Vāsudeva (Lord Kṛṣṇa) all the dates are good His date is not mentioned Before that white-washing the temple and drawing nice pictures, on an auspicious day Vināyaka-pūjanam-the (worship of Vināyaka) should be done, on the second day the worship of Grahakṣa-ग्रहक्ष- (of the planet), on the third day the worship of Nāga-the serpent, on the fourth day the worship of Pramatha, on the fifth day the worship of the Brahmin and the alms to poor and orphan- (Dīnānātha-dānam) and on the sixth day Snapana (bathing) should be done Then after taking great bath, all the (Nāgara) citizens wearing very white clothes and washing their legs should go to the near lake, river or stream which is nearest to the city While making loud sound of the musical instrument and dancing nicely from that Udaka-kalasān (the water-pitchers), put on the back of an elephant or covered with an auspicious cloth, should be brought to the temple Having brought it the lord should be bathed, should be worshipped with the ritual of offering (Bhoga-vidhi), according to the procedure narrated in the Pratisthā The lord should be worshipped with dances, instrumental music and songs Then on the day of Yātrā-procession a small image called Arcā-Pratimā should be covered with various garments, should be firmly put in the beautiful kūṭāgāra-upper apartment-of the chariot with small bells (Sakṃkīṇī) and adorned with gems, garlands and Patākās-banners It should be drawn by horses or by Dānta and Vyāyata puruṣāḥ (restrained and disciplined men) The citizens and the people wearing nice garments and having only cāpa (bows and arrows) in their hands should go before the

Kūṭāgāra, other persons should offer only flower garlands; should sing prayers (songs of praise). The Bandi-ganah (bards) and pāṭhakāḥ (persons chanting auspicious mantras) should be in front of it. The king, followed by the Caturanga-bala (four sections of the army) playing musical instruments, should follow. The officers of the city (Nagarādhikṛto) or their representatives sitting on the back of the elephants should follow with Sāmvat-saras-(astrologers) and observe the Nimitāṇi (omens). If the flag is broken without wind, it indicates the death of the king; the breaking of chatra (umbrella) or breaking of cakra (the disc) indicates the destruction of the janapada (community). By breaking of Isā-pole of the chariot the death of the wife of the king, by cutting of the rope the trouble to the children, the calamity to horses and Dānta (restrained men) trouble to the Janapada-(community) are indicated. By the cutting of Mātṛkāś trouble to king's mother, by breaking and falling of Arcā-(image) the destruction of the people, and by falling of the entire kūṭāgāra-(top apartment) the destruction of the nation with the government are indicated; if the musical instruments produce bad-tunes it indicates the coming of the rule of the enemy. By the fall of the Gavya-yellow pigment etc. in the flag, the danger of war, and by the aprstha-janapada (untouched community) the danger of famine are indicated. When the children do auspicious or un-auspicious thing, the result is also of the same kind. It should be known that the man who experiences happiness or pain on that day, gets the same during that year. Therefore the citizen and the people should have Svāśita and Suvāsāḥ (good food and clothing and good garments). In this way moving in the city, knowing the signs of inference great festival of the Arcā-image should be done. From the next day till that day if one can afford every day the shows of Naṭa-Nartaka, Nartakī, Malla, Aindra-jālikās (players, dancers, courtizens, wrestlers and magicians) should be arranged and money should be given. At the time of the show the spectators should be honoured with garlands, betel-leaf, scented cream or ointment (Anulepana) etc. for invisible spectators (spirits) on (four) directions and corners of the stage, food

with water fruits flowers (Pallollāpikāmodakāni) flesh sweets indicating joy should be strewn It should be said that the spectators who had come might get śreya (welfare) And it should be said that the spectators who had come might see the next-ensuing Yātrā (procession) The Yātrā procession should be nicely carried out with this procedure to pacify the calamities indicated by the omens

One who carries the Yātrā (procession) in the temple according to this procedure gets all the desired things and goes to the world of Viṣṇu [1]

This act of Yātrā is praised as giving wealth fame long life and victory to the king and it gives welfare to the citizens [2]

6 King ! this work of Yātrā (procession) giving victory to people should be done for the satisfaction of gods and for the welfare of the city [3]

It is said to remove Atiṛṣṭi-excessive rains and to destroy famine, and similarly it destroys the diseases of the citizens [4]

It should be known as the subsider of (calamities) (iti) and it is said to be the producer of all the good luck. It is called the utmost auspiciousness and the accomplishment (Prasādhā) of all the deeds [5]

It destroys the calamities caused by gods sky and on earth (Divya-antarikṣa-bhaumānām utpātānām) 6 King always in a temple this Yātrā-karma (the ceremony of the procession) should be done by the king desiring victory every year [6]

In the third part of Sri Viṣṇudharmottara during the discourse between Mārkaṇḍeya and Vajra thus ends the Adhyaya 117 entitled Yatra-Vidhi the procedure of the procession

Vajra said . Which bodies of Viṣṇu, a devotee should worship, for which desire ? You know everything, so kindly remove my this doubt [1]

Mārkaṇḍeya said One should worship the god having four forms and fulfilling all desires A man desiring religion (Dharma kāma) should always worship Anuruddha [2]

Similarly one desiring wealth Arthakāma should worship Saṃkarsana, 6 King ! one desirous of love (kāmakāma) should worship lord Pradyumna [3]

One desirous of liberation (Moksakāma) should worship Vāsudeva the lord of the worlds Similarly O King ! One desiring a son (Putra kāma) should worship Padmanābha. [4]

Similarly one desiring Vidyā (knowledge) should worship god Asva-sirah (having the head of a horse) But one desiring of bhogas (enjoyments) should worship Bhoga sāyi (lord Viṣṇu) resting on the hood (of sesa) [5]

One desirous of some position or place should worship Lord Viṣṇu resting on the hood of the snake, and a man desirous of grains should always worship the Fish (Incarnation of the Lord) [6]

Similarly one desirous of health should worship the Kūrmārūpa (Tortoise Incarnation), and a man desirous of knowledge should always worship Hamsa or Nṛsimha (swan or Man-lion) Incarnation [7]

One desirous of learning should worship Vyāsa or Vālmiki, and for the knowledge of Sāṃkhya Kapila should be worshipped [8]

One desirous of prosperity should worship Varāha or Nṛa-  
rāha (the Boar or Man-boar Incarnation), and one desiring victory  
in Vyavahāra (business), battle and gambling should worship  
different gods [9]

Similarly one desirous of religion should worship Yudhiṣṭhira  
(Dharma) and Brahmā and one desiring the destruction of the  
enemies should worship Mahādeva (Sankara) [10]

For the desire of fulfilling the vow, (Pratiṣṭhā Pāranecchayā)  
one should worship Bhārgava Rāma-Parasurāma or Rāma, the  
son of Dasaratha who was the tiger amongst the kings [11]

6 great king ! one desirous of wealth Sri-Kāmah should  
worship (Sri Sahāya) the companion of Sri (Lakṣmī) and one  
desirous of strength should worship lord Bala-bhadra. [12]

One should worship the same lord, who takes for fulfilment  
of the work of Agriculture desired form and who fulfills all the  
desires Due to his all mightiness he fulfills all the desires [13]

A nirāśisah (non-blessed, wretched) worshipping the Purāṇa-  
Vāsudeva, the lord of gods, who is to be praised (Varenya) goes  
as the hero amongst men and obtains the place which is described  
[14]

In the third part of Sri Viṣṇudharmottara during the dis-  
course between Mārkaṇḍeya and Vajra, thus ends the Adhyāya  
118 entitled "Prādurbhāva-Pūjana -worship of the incarnations

Here ends the Third Part of Sri Viṣṇudharmottara

---